

The Portugues Asia :

OR, THE *Spanish*  
HISTORY  
OF THE

Discovery and Conquest

OF

INDIA

BY THE

PORTUGUES;

CONTAINING

All their Discoveries from the Coast of  
*Africk*, to the farthest Parts of *China* and  
*Japan*; all their Battels by Sea and Land,  
Sieges and other Memorable Actions; a  
Description of those Countries, and many  
Particulars of the Religion, Government  
and Customs of the Natives, &c.

In Three Tomes.

Written in Spanish by *Manuel de Faria y Sousa*,  
Knight, Of the Order of Christ.

Translated into English by Capt. *John Stevens*.

*Tome the Second.*

LONDON, Printed for C. Brome, at the Sign of  
the Gun, at the West-End of St. Pauls. 1695.

---

---

DEDICATED

TO HER

MOST SACRED

MAJESTY,

CATHERINE,

QUEEN DOWAGER

O F

ENGLAND, &c.



A 2

THE





T H E

P R E F A C E .

**W**Hen Almighty G O D, the only Founder of Empires, is so pleased with a People, as to possess them of a New one, He generally Endows the first Founders with a wonderful proportion of Heroick Virtues, as *Sincerity, Magnanimity, Valour, Majesty,* and an almost more than *Mortal Staidness*: The solid Foundations to support the greatest Monarchies. Such Founders rarely exceeded Three in Number. Let the Learned (by the help of

*The Preface.*

this not yet Vulgar Remark )  
seek Foreign Examples ; it shall be  
my Care only to shew those of  
my own Country. The King-  
dom of *Portugal* was founded by  
Three Heroes , ( *HENRY* ,  
*ALFONSO* , and *SANCHO* )  
most visibly adorned with all  
those Virtues which merit to  
erect Imperial Thrones , and  
from them to Command many  
Kings, many Princes, and many  
Nations. Their Successors began  
to decline. The Dominion, the  
same Distributer of Power was  
pleased to give them in *Asia*, was  
also founded on Three, as appears  
in the beginning of this Work :  
They were *DUARTE PACHECO* ,  
*D. FRANCISCO DE ALMEYDA* ,  
and *ALFONSO DE ALBUQUER-*  
*QUE*. Scarce had they one Suc-  
cessor who did not manifestly de-  
cline, or at least had a mixture of  
*Valour*

*The Preface.*

*Valour and Timorousness, of Moderation and Covetousness, with that unhappy distinction, that still the Timorousness and Avarice were most predominant. No Living Creature puts away his Young Ones, till they can shift for themselves: So Almighty G O D, when He crects Monarchies, cherishes them with particular Care, till they gather strength, and then (tho' He does not wholly abandon) puts them into the hands of Men, that they may perceive the difference between the Divine and Human Care. Let an unbiassed Judgment here reflect upon the Exploits of the Portugueses in gaining this Asiatick Crown, and it will appear that only PACHECO could have forged it with that fiery Heart, which melted the Arms and Riches of the obstinate Zamori; That only*

*The Preface.*

*ALMEYDA* could have filed and polished it, by applying his own and his Son's Sword, which brought it into form by humbling the *Turkish* Pride; And that only the Great *ALBUQUERQUE*, giving the finishing strokes, could have set in it the most Precious Jewels of *Goa, Malaca* and *Ormuz*. For they so far removed from their Country, that they had not only lost sight, but even the hopes and memory of it, entering with a few indifferent Vessels and a most inconsiderable number of Men, where scarce a Tree offered them a secure shade, amidst Numerous and well Armed Squadrons and Castles, and through showers of heavy Ball and poisoned Arrows; by the force of their Swords opened deep Trenches, raised high Walls, and secured to themselves famous Cities  
and

*The Preface.*

and large Countries. Let those who have since acted less, having so good a ground to perform much more, not take it ill if we say, *That the Bounds of our Dominions in India, are almost reduced to what they were in the Beginning.* It is true, some of the Successors (a few among so many) added something to the Foundation; but it was an inconsiderable Copy of the Great Original. It is also true, others valiantly defended that Foundation, but it was an indispensable Duty. Let not timorous Spirits call this a *Rash Judgment*, which the Brave will only style *Unbiassed*; or say, *We endeavour to lessen the Merits of Hero's*; our only Design, is to shew the Ways and Means the Giver of Crowns takes to frame and deliver them to Mortals; and how far less capable they are to Maintain,

*The Preface.*

tain, than He to Form them. The Divine Providence gave a sufficient Demonstration hereof in the erecting this Empire, and they no less in diminishing of it. Hereof we have seen much already, and shall see yet more; yet not without singular Acts of Valour: That it may be manifest the Cause of our Ruin is, *That the Souls are not always the same; for the Hearts always are.*

---

---

T H E  
CONTENTS.

---

T O M. I. P A R T I.

C H A P. I.

**T**HE Government of the Vice-Roy  
P. Garcia de Noronha, from the  
Year 1538, till the Year 1540,  
in the Reign of King John the Third,  
Page 1

C H A P. II.

Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy,  
D. Garcia de Noronha, p. 8

C H A P. III.

The Government of D. Stephen de Gama,  
from the Year 1540, till the Year 1542,  
in the Reign of King John the Third,  
p. 16  
C H A P.

# The Contents.

## CHAP. IV.

*Goes on with the Government of D. Stephen de Gama,* P.24

## CHAP. V.

*Sundry Exploits of Captain Antony Faria, from the Tear 1540, till that of 1542, during the Government of D. Stephen de Gama,* P.31

## CHAP. VI.

*Continues the Exploits of Antony de Faria,* P.37

## CHAP. VII.

*Continues still the Exploits of Antony de Faria, in the Government of D. Stephen de Gama, and the Tear 1642,* P.44

## CHAP. VIII.

*Concludes with the Actions of Antony de Faria,* P.47

## CHAP. IX.

*Continues the Government of D. Stephen de Gama, and contains the Actions of his Brother D. Christopher in Ethiopia,* P.54

CHAP

# The Contents.

## CHAP. X.

*The End of the Government of D. Stephen  
de Gama, p. 63*

## CHAP. XI.

*The Government of Martin Alfonso de  
Souza, from the Year 1542, till the  
Year 1545, in the Reign of King John  
the Third, p. 67*

## CHAP. XII.

*Continues the Government of Martin Al-  
fonso de Souza, p. 76*

## CHAP. XIII.

*Continues the Government of Martin Al-  
fonso de Souza, p. 81*

## CHAP. XIV.

*The End of the Government of Martin  
Alfonso de Souza, and of the First  
Part of this Tome, p. 86*

TOM.

The Contents.

T O M. II. P A R T II.

C H A P. I.

**T**HE Government of D. John de Castro, from the Year 1545, till the Year 1548, in the Reign of King John the Third, P.95

C H A P. II.

Continues the Government of D. John de Castro, and Siege of Diu, p.103

C H A P. III.

Continues the Siege of Diu, the Governour D. John de Castro comes in Person to its Relief, p.109

C H A P. IV.

Continues the Government of D. John de Castro, and Reign of King John the Third, p.117

C H A P. V.

The End of the Government D. John de Castro, p.125

C H A P.

# The Contents.

## CHAP. VI.

*The Government of Garcia de Sá, from the Year 1548, till the Year 1549, in the Reign of King John the Third,*  
P. 132

## CHAP. VII.

*The Government of George Cabral, from the Year 1549, till the Year 1550, in the Reign of King John the Third,*  
P. 140

## CHAP. VIII.

*Continues the Government of George Cabral,*  
P. 143

## CHAP. IX.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Alfonso de Noronha, from the Year 1550, till 1555, in the Reign of King John the Third,*  
P. 150

## CHAP. X.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy, D. Alfonso de Noronha,*  
P. 163

## CHAP. XI.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Peter de Mascarenhas, from the Year 1554, till 1555, King John the Third still Reigning,*  
P. 174

CHAP.

# The Contents.

## CHAP. XII.

*The Government of Francis Barreto, from the Tear 1555, till 1558, in the Reign of King John the Third,* p.178

## CHAP. XIII.

*The End of the Government of Francis Barreto,* p.186

## CHAP. XIV.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Constantin de Braganza, from the Tear 1558, till 1561, in the Reign of King Sebastian,* p.190

## CHAP. XV.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy D. Constantin, in the Reign of King Sebastian,* p.198

## CHAP. XVI.

*The End of the Government of the Vice-Roy D. Constantin,* p.207

## CHAP. XVII.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Francis Coutinho, Count de Redondo, from the Tear 1561, till 1564, in the Reign of King Sebastian,* p.215

CHAP.

# The Contents.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*The Government of John de Mendoza,  
for six Months of the Year 1564, in  
the Reign of King Sebastian,* p.222

---

## TOM. II. PART III.

### CHAP. I.

**T**HE Government of the Vice-Roy  
D. Anton. de Noronha, from the  
Year 1564, till 1568, in the Reign of  
King Sebastian, p.241

### CHAP. II.

*Continues the Government of D. Anton. de  
Noronha,* 245

### CHAP. III.

*Continues the Government of D. Anton. de  
Noronha, in the Reign of King Seba-  
stian,* p.253

### CHAP. IV.

*The End of the Government of the Vice-  
Roy D. Anton. de Noronha,* p.260

# The Contents.

## CHAP. V.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Luis de Ataide, Count de Atouguia; from the Tear 1568, till 1571, in the Reign of King Sebastian,* p.267

## CHAP. VI.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy D.Luis de Ataide,* p.273

## CHAP. VII.

*The dangerous Sieges of Goa and Chaul; and first of the foremost, continuing the Government of D. Luis de Ataide, and Reign of King Sebastian,* p.281

## CHAP. VIII.

*Continues the Siege of Goa, and Govern-ment of D. Luis de Ataide,* p.289

## CHAP. IX.

*The Siege of Chaul,* p.296

## CHAP. X.

*Continues the Siege of Chaul,* p.304

CHAP.

# The Contents.

## CHAP. XI.

*The Proceedings of Zamori upon this Oc-  
casion, and during the Government of  
D. Luis de Ataide,* p. 313

## CHAP. XII.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Antony  
de Noronha, from the Tear 1571 till  
1573, in the Reign of King Sebastian,*  
p. 319

## CHAP. XIII.

*The Siege of Malaca, with other Occur-  
rences, and End of the Government of  
D. Antony de Noronha,* p. 325

## CHAP. XIV.

*The Government of Antony Moniz Bar-  
reto; from the Tear 1573 till 1576,  
in the Reign of King Sebastian,* p. 331

## CHAP. XV.

*The Government of Francis Barreto in  
Monomotapa, beginning in the Tear  
1569, in the Reign of King Sebastian,*  
p. 340

## CHAP. XVI.

*Continues the Government of Francis Bar-  
reto, in Monomotapa,* p. 349

# The Contents.

## CH A P. XVII.

*The Government of Vasco Fernandez Homem in Monomotapa, in the Reign of King Sebastian,* P.354

## CH A P. XVIII.

*Of the Vice-Roy Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora, and the Government of D. James de Meneſes, from the Tear 1576 till 1578, in the Reign of King Sebastian,* P.358

## CH A P. XIX.

*The Count D. Luis de Ataide is the ſecond time Vice-Roy of India; he ſet out in the Tear 1577, and Governs till 1581, and is the laſt ſent out by King Sebastian,* p.361

## CH A P. XX.

*The Government of Ferdinand Tellez de Meneſes, who was named by the Governours of Portugal, upon the Deceafe of the Cardinal King Henry, in the Tear 1581,* P.367

# The Contents.

## T O M. II. P A R T IV.

### C H A P. I.

**O***F the Gods, Superstitions and Opinions of the Asiaticks, particularly the Indians, and among them the Malabars,* P.375

### C H A P. II.

*The Metamorphoses, or Transformations,* P.383

### C H A P. III.

*Other Metamorphoses, and the Consequences of them; of the God Brama, and the Foundation of Pagods; an Account of the famousest of them,* P.387

### C H A P. IV.

*A Continuation of the same Matter,* p.392

### C H A P. V.

*Of the Offices, Rites, Ceremonies, Burials, and other things,* P.398

### C H A P. VI.

*Continues the same Subject,* P.405

C H A P.

# The Contents.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the Empire of Æthiopia, and first of the Kingdoms and Provinces into which it is divided; of the progress of Christianity therein, and of the Product of the Land,*

P.412

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the Laws, Customs and Religion of the Empire of Ethiopia,*

P.421

## CHAP. IX.

*Of the Nature of the Country of Ethiopia, of its Towns and Kings it has had, and of the entrance and expulsion of our Doctrine,*

P.431

## CHAP. X.

*The Islands of Japan,*

P.435

## CHAP. XI.

*A further Account of Japan,*

441

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the Great Empire of China, and first of its Situation, division into Provinces, of its Product, Arts and Commerce,*

P.448

CHAP.

# The Contents.

## CHAP. XIII.

*Of the Provinces into which China is divided,* p.453

## CHAP. XIV.

*Of the People of China, their Customs, Inclinations and Studies,* p.463

## CHAP. XV.

*A Continuation of the same Subject,* p.472

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the Marriages, Burials, Ceremonies, Sacrifices, and Belief of the Chineses,* p.481

## CHAP. XVII.

*Of the Original of the Kingdom of China, the Palace and Government of it,* p.490

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Of the Royal Marriages, Nobility, Counsels, and Government of China in Peace and War,* p.494

## CHAP. XIX.

*The Division of the Dominions the Portuguese do, or have possessed in those Parts, commonly comprehended under the*

## The Contents.

*the General Name of India: Some Remarks on the Customs and Religion of those People, with some Account of the Christians of St. Thomas, and of the Island of Ceylon,* P.499

### CHAP. XX.

*Of the Memory there is of the Preaching the Gospel of Christ in all Asia, and its Islands, particularly by the Apostle Saint Thomas in those Parts mentioned in this History, and of the Extirpation and Reparation of the same,* P.513

THE

T H E

Portugues A S I A.

T O M. II. P A R T I.

C H A P. I.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Garcia de Noronha, from the Tear 1538, till the Tear 1540, in the Reign of King John the Third.*

1. **I**N the Month of November D. Garcia de Noronha the Vice-Roy began to take upon him the Administration of Affairs in India. He had set out of Lisbon with 12 Sail, and Arrived with 11, and in them three Thousand fighting Men; many of Note. One of the Ships was never heard of, which was esteemed a Judgment; because it was full of Malefactors taken out of Gaols, whose

1538.

B whose

whose Punishment was changed into Transportation.

2. Though this Fleet was fitted out chiefly to oppose the *Turks*, who now oppressed *India*; yet the Vice-Roy suffered them to batter *Diu*, without relieving it farther, than with the hopes of Relief. *Antony de Sylva Meneses* was the second that was sent thither with 24 small Vessels, and came late; yet contended with the Great *Antony de Silveira* for the Honour of that Victory: So much he valued, having been only a Witness of it. The Vice-Roy was ready to Sail for *Diu* with a Fleet of 160 Sail of several sorts, and in them five Thousand fighting Men and a 1000 Pieces of Cannon, when the Advice came that the *Turks* had raised the Siege. He was overjoy'd (it is not known for what) and discharging the Merchant-Ships that were ready to attend him retained Ninety. With these he set out for *Diu*, but sailed so slowly, that it appeared as if some ill Omen threatned his ruin there, since he avoided not only seeing of it in danger, but even now in Peace. Its quiet was disturbed by *Lurcan* and *Coje Zofar*, who ranged about with Fire and Sword. The Vice-Roy heard of this at *Dabul*, and sent against them *Martin Alfonso de Melo* with his Galley, and the Vessels that went with *Antony de Sylva*. He went; but being hard set by the Enemy, was forced to take shelter under the Fort. The Vice-Roy at the same slow rate removed to *Bacaim*, nothing moved with the News he received from *Diu*.

It was murmured, he either consulted his Safety or his private Interest. But when least expected, he Steered thither on the first of *January*; when a Storm rising, which lasted eight days, dispersed the Fleet into several Ports; two Gallies, and some other Vessels, perished.

3. The first thing the Vice-Roy attended to, was to hear *D. Gonzalo Vaz Confino*, who came with five small Vessels from *Onor*, whither he had been sent by the late Governor *Nuno de Cuna* upon this occasion. One of *Solyman's* Gallies, that had been at *Diu*, was forced into that Port; and 'twas thought that Queen (then a Widow) violated the Peace concluded with us by protecting it. *Gonzalo Vaz* calling her to account, she Answered, *The Gally was there against her Will she not being in a condition to hinder it; but should be glad it were taken by our Vessels.* The Captain attempted it, and after a sharp Engagement was forced to desist, having lost 15 Men, and among them his Son *James*. He suspected the Queen had assisted the Enemy, and refusing some Refreshment she sent for the wounded Men, returned some rash Words mixed with Threats. The Queen cleared her self, and again offered Peace, which was concluded, and some *Portugueses* left in that Port, to observe what the Queen did towards expelling the *Turks*.

4. We will conclude this Year with the memory of the Arrival of six Ships at *Lisbon* from *India*, rather for the Bones than the Riches they carried. In one of them

was the Body of the Great *D. Vasco de Gama*, which the King caused to be laid in his Tomb, with the greatest Magnificence that has been seen in this Kingdom.

1539.

5. This Year *Peter de Faria* the second time was made Commander of the famous Fort of *Malaca*. Immediately resorted to him Embassadors from the Neighbouring Kings, to congratulate and confirm Peace with us. The first was of the *Bataas* in *Sumatra*, upon the Ocean where the Island of Gold was imagined to be, and which we earnestly desired to discover; but that Design being later, we will then speak of this Embassy. The second was of *Aaru* in *Sumatra*; both demanded Assistance against him of *Achem*. *Faria* had not yet taken possession of the Command, which still *D. Stephen de Gama* held for a few Weeks. One excused himself, because his Power was expiring; the other, because he had not yet commenced. Whereas both ought to joyn in relieving that King, as well because his Fidelity merited it, as because his Kingdom lay between *Malaca* and *Achem*, and served us for a Bulwark. *Gama* was most in fault, being in possession, and much pressed by *Faria* to grant it. But we shall soon see him more blameable, refusing then what he now urged should be granted. Such the Inconstancy of Man.

6. Afterwards *Peter de Faria* sent that King some Relief; but it was inconsiderable and came late. The King of *Achem* sent against him his Brother-in-Law *Heredim*  
*Mabe*

*Mahomet* with 160 Vessels, all of Oars, and 12000 Fighting Men. He from the Mouth of the River *Puneticam* battered *Aaru's* Fortifications, but to no effect; so he Landed and entred the Works: But was again beaten out, with loss of Men and Canon. The Besiegers persisting some days, lose 3000 Men. They bribe an Officer of the Besieged, who treacherously led the King to a dangerous place, where he was killed by a Musquet-Ball. The Enemy enters the Works, and putting all (even the Sick) to the Sword, slew 2000. The Body of the dead King was carried to Him of *Achem*, who caused it to be cut in pieces and boiled in Oil.

7. The Queen of *Aaru*, who was in a Wood, hearing the Death of her Husband, would have burnt her self alive; but being hindred, with about 300 Men fell upon the *Achems*, who were plundering the City, and slew 200. Being too weak to proceed, she returned to the Woods, and from thence made Excursions; but not able to hold out, went over to *Maiaca* with about 600 persons in her Retinue, in 16 Vessels. *Peter de Faria* sent his Son *Alvaro*, who had the Command of the Sea, to receive her upon the River with pomp and grandeur.

8. *Faria* treated her with much Respect; but kept her four Months with only Promises of Succour, till she Despairing, publickly reproached him for this Neglect, and he without any regard gave no other Answer, than Turning his Back. Private Interest drew away the Commander from

the performance of what he owed to a Royal Matron, who for her Husbands sake deserved our Aid, for her Misfortunes our Pity, and for her Merit, Respect.

9. The afflicted Widow went to the King of *Ujantana*, then at *Bintam*, who scandalized at *Peter de Faria's* Proceedings, offered Assistance, and Married her, to have the better Title to pretend to the Kingdom of *Aaru*. He sent his Embassador to *Achem*, to demand that Crown as his Right by Marriage. The Tyrant would not hear the Embassador, nor receive the Present he brought, which is the greatest Affront among those Princes; but sent a Letter full of Reproaches, saying among other things, His Letter had been writ upon the Wedding-Table.

10. The King of *Ujantana* provoked by this Affront, immediately set out 200 Sail under the Command of his Admiral *Lacxemena*, who Anchored before the Fort of *Puneticam*, and carried it at the first Assault, killing 1400 *Achems*, and their Commander *Morat Arraez* a Turk.

11. By this time *Heredim Mahomet* was Sailing that way with such another Fleet, and in it 12000 Fighting Men. The two Fleets met, and after a sharp Engagement, *Heredim* being killed by a Canon-Ball, his Men dismayed, and most of the Fleet was taken by *Lacxemena*, most of the *Achems* slain, and only 14 Vessels got off.

12. The King of *Achem* caused the 14 Captains to be Beheaded, because they fled, and the Souldiers Beards to be cut off, and that upon pain of being sawed alive they should ever wear Womens Habit, with a sort of Tabor in their Hands; and whenever they affirmed any thing upon Oath, they should say, *As I hope to see my Husband safe; or else, As I hope to see the Children I have bore prosper.* This was put in Execution, and let it not seem strange; for in the time of King *Sebastian*, two Gentlemen for Cowardise were Condemned either to be Beheaded, or walk the City of *Lisbon* with a Spinning-Rock at their Girdle, and one of them chose this last.

13. But above 20 years after this, in 1564, the King of *Ujantana* possessing *Aaru* without apprehension, he of *Achem* furiously fell upon and took Him and his Women, and put them all to death with barbarous Torments. The Kingdom of *Aaru* he gave to his eldest Son, who after died before *Malaca*, as shall appear in its place.

1564.

## C H A P. II.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy,  
D. Garcia de Noronha.*

1. **L** Et us return to our Vice-Roy, whom we left at Sea. After the danger and loss above related, he entred the Port of *Diu* with 50 Sail. He applauded, as was due, the Bravery of *Antony de Silveira*, repaired the Fort, and delivered it to *James Lopez de Sousa*, to whom the Command was given by the King. Let it suffice once for all to note, That these Commands are always given by the King, and so many Successors named, that many of them are in their Graves before they succeed in the Post. A Treaty of Peace was set on foot, and concluded little to our advantage; which the Common Vogue (I know not whether Infallible) attributed to Covetousness.

2. *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora*, Commander of *Bazaim*, was close shut up in his Fort by the Forces of the King of *Cambaia*, who were Masters of the Field, after having done all that could be expected from him. The Vice-Roy sent to his Relief *Tristan de Ataide*, late Commander of *Malaca*, with a Galeon and 3 Barques well Manned. The two being joyned, repulsed the Enemy with very considerable loss of Men, Baggage and Reputation.

tation. Mean while the Vice-Roy prosecuted the Works at *Diu*, and sent *Martin Alfonso de Melo* to Command at *Ormuz*, *Peter de Faria* to *Malaca* the second time, and *Michael Ferreyra* a Gentleman of Worth, 70 years of Age, with 12 small Vessels and 400 Men, to assist the King of *Cota* in *Ceylon* against his Brother *Madune Pandar*, King of *Ceitavaca*, who distressed him. *Ferreira* did great damage in several Towns, abandoned by the Inhabitants. In the Port of *Putulam* he surprized *Pate Marcar's* Fleet, consisting of 16 *Paraos*, and easily gained them; and with the same Success carried the Works and Cannon ashoar, though defended by 2000 Men. He Anchored in the Bay of *Columbo* with the Ships, Cannon and other Booty. Then he marched to *Cota*; thence towards *Ceitavaca* at the head of the Army of the King he Relieved, destroying all before him; and seeking *Madune*, who had 6000 Men, saw them fly to the shelter of the Woods. Thence he sent to beg Peace, which was granted upon Condition he should send the Heads of some *Morish* Officers, especially *Patè* and *Cunale Marcar*. He opposed this Condition as much as he could, but there being no other Medium to appease his Adversary, consented, and killing them two and others, sent 9 Heads upon as many Spears, a Present so acceptable to *Ferreyra*, that he presently made Peace between him and *Cota*, and went off himself with Honour.

3. The same time the Vice-Roy sent *Ferdinand de Morales* with a great Galeon, laden on the Kings account, to Trade at *Pegu*. As soon as arrived at that Port, the King won him with Promises and Favours, to aid him against the King of *Brama*, who invaded that Country with such a Power, that the two Armies consisted of two Millions of Men and 10000 Elephants. *Morales* went into a Galliot, and Commanding the Fleet of *Pegu*, made great havock among the Enemies Ships. *Brama* came on by Land like a Torrent, carrying all before him, and his Fleet covering the River, though as great as *Ganges*. With this Power he easily gained the City and Kingdom of *Pegu*. *Ferdinand Morales* met the Fleet with his, in respect of the other scarce visible, at the Point *Ginamarreca*, where was a furious, bloody and desperate Fight. But the *Pegu's* overpowred by the *Brama's* deserted *Morales*, who alone in his Galeot maintained himself against the Enemies, performing Wonders with vast slaughter of them, till oppressed by the Multitude he was killed. But the memory of his Bravery still lives among those People.

4. The cause of this Revolt of *Brama*, who was Tributary to *Pegu*, was this: Above 30000 *Brama's* laboured in the King of *Pegu's* Works, this being one Condition of their Vassalage. The King used to Visit them with his Women, because they delighted to see Foreigners and the notable Works, and never carried any other Com-  
pany.

pany. The Labourers (what Wickedness would not they in Idleness invent, who thought so much in their Labour) resolved to rob the Queens or Concubins, and suddenly murdered the King, stripped them and fled to their Country. *Dacha Rupi*, Heir to the deceased, was not only deprived of Means of Revenging this Villany, but even of maintaining himself, for many of his Subjects rebelled. *Parà Mandarà*, King of the *Brama's*, desiring to enlarge his Empire, and seeing that his Pickaxes and Shovels had opened a Way to his Cimiters and Standards, rushes out with that Violence, and over-runs the Kingdoms of the *Lanjoes*, *Laos*, *Fangoma's*, and others, that like his were Tributaries to *Pegu*. Thus this Tyrant possessed himself of his ancient Kingdom of *Ava*, that extends two Months Travel at ordinary Journeys, and contains 62 Cities. On the N. E. a Months Journey, is that of the *Turks*, containing as many Cities, which the King of *Pegu* had taken from him of *Cathay*. The Kingdom of *Bimir* lies West of *Ava*, of the same extent, and has 27 populous Cities. North of this that of *Lanjam*, of equal greatness, has 38 Cities, and great store of Gold and Silver. On the East is that of *Mamprom*, as great, but has only 8 Cities; on the East it borders on *Cochinchina*, on the South with *Siam*, afterwards conquered by *Brama*; and East of this is the great Kingdom of *Cambodia*. All the Inhabitants of these Kingdoms are Pagans, and the most Superstitious of all the

the East. They believe in one only God ; but in time of need have recourse to many Idols. Of these they have some dedicated to the secret acts and necessities of Nature, in the same form they are performed. They hold the Immortality of the Soul ; are zealous in giving Alms, and bear great Reverence to their Religious Men. These are very numerous, follow a Rule, and keep a Choir much like ours ; they live upon what is given them that day, without keeping any thing for the next ; they eat neither Fish nor Flesh, because they kill nothing that has Life ; their Cloaths are yellow Cassocks and Cloaks, with Hats of oiled Paper ; they observe *Lent* and *Easter* after the Christian manner. Whence may be inferred, That these are some Remains of the Doctrine of *St. Thomas* the Apostle, though mixed with many Errors. The People are all white, the Women very beautiful. Their Bodies are all wrought Blue with hot Irons down to the Knees. In general, they are not only not Civilized, but very Brutal.

5. The Vice-Roy being at *Goa*, *D. John de Albuquerque*, a Spaniard, presented him King *John's* Patent, by which all the Conquests from the Cape of *Good Hope*, to *India*, were made subject to his Diocess, with liberty to erect the Church of *St. Catherine* of that City into a Cathedral. The Patent was obeyed, and thus a Spaniard was the first Prelate of the Conquests ; as if *Spain* had now taken the Power in Spirituals, it was

was afterwards to possess in Temporals. At this time the *Guzarates* streightned *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora* in *Bacaim*. He sallies with 350 Men, and put them to the rout. *Coje Zofar* comes on with his Men, and puts him into a dangerous condition. *George de Lima*, Commander of *Chaul*, having Notice hereof, sent 100 Men with speed, with which assistance the Enemy was repulsed, and time given to repair the damage received.

6. Four Ships arrived in *India* from *Portugal*, to return with Merchandize. In one of them the Great *Antony de Sylveyra* imbarqued. The Flag-Ship perished in her Return, and was never heard of; but *Silveyra* arrived safe at *Lisbon*, and had scarce Anchored, when the Great Men of the Court came aboard to Conduct him to the King and Princes, who with Joy waited to see and honour him: And no wonder, since all the Christian Princes visited him by their Embassadors, led by the admiration of his Glorious Exploits. The French Embassador had his Picture drawn, which was hung up in the Gallery of Fame among the other Hero's. He was of a middle Stature, strong built; of a clear Judgment, ready Wit, a great Heart, and very Liberal. His Liberality did as much at *Diu*, as his Valour; for it is vain for a Miser ever to expect to purchase Glorious Victories: Yet this Virtue was prejudicial to him in *Portugal*; for the King having appointed him Governour of *India*, was dissuaded by some, who said,  
That

That Empire was too little for his Bounty.

7. The late success of our Arms, chiefly in *Cambaya*, terrified all the Eastern Princes, our Enemies; so that *Nizamaluco* and *Hidalcam* immediately sent their Embassadors to confirm the last Peace concluded with them. *Zamori*, to obtain the more favourable Reception with the Vice-Roy, took *Emanuel de Brito*, Commander of the Fort of *Chale*, for his Mediator. *Brito* promised his Interest, and accompanied the Embassador *China Cutiale*, who came to *Goa* with a splendid Retinue. The Vice-Roy received him with Courtesie and Grandeur. The Peace was Concluded much to our Credit. Had not the Vice-Roy fallen sick, he designed to go to *Calicut*, to perform the Ceremony of Swearing to the observation of the Articles; but sent his Son *D. Alvaro* to this purpose, under the Direction of discreet Men, because he was young. They came to *Panane* with a numerous Fleet, where that Prince expected them, accompanied by the Kings of *Chale* and *Tanor*. They met with great demonstrations of Joy; the Peace was sworn, and lasted 30 years, which was one of the greatest Blessings we enjoyed in *India*.

8. About the beginning of *January* this Treaty was Concluded, and the Vice-Roy sent towards *Cambaya*, *D. Peter de Castello-branco*, with 14 Sail, who returned to *Goa* without any Action of Note. *John de Sepulveda* coming from *Ormuz*, and hearing that

that *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora* was freightned by the Enemy in *Bacaim*, relieved him with diligence; and they forced the Enemy to leave the Field. *Antony Carvalho*, with 8 small Vessels, went to seek some Pirates that coursed between *Baticala* and *Anchediva*. They fled; but being overtaken, were destroyed, their Ships burnt, and the Country laid waste. *Carvalho* returned with Honour to *Goa*, where the Vice-Roy growing so weak, he could not attend the Government, he proposed a Worthy Person might be chose to supply his place, and then said, It should be no other than his Son *D. Alvaro*. This surprized all Men, being a violation of the Publick Liberty of Choice: And might have proved of dangerous Consequence, had not his Death prevented it; for sometimes it is expedient One should dye for the good of the People.

9. The Vice-Roy being dead, the first Patent of Succession was opened, and *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* was therein named, who not long before was gone to *Portugal*. The second being opened, named *D. Steven de Gama*, who lived Indisposed without the City. All rejoiced at the Election, as few were grieved at the Death of the Predecessor, who nevertheless was honourably Interr'd. His Picture represents him in the ancient Habit of *Portugal*, all Black lined in Crimson. He was the Third Vice-Roy, and Eleventh Governor, but first of the Name, and held it a Year and seven Months. His Son *D. Alvaro* came to *Portugal*, and brought

brought with him two Embassadors of the King of *Cota*. He desired of King *John*, That in case he had no Son, his Grand-Child might be sworn King. To this effect the Embassadors brought his Image in Gold, which held in its Hand a Crown set with Jewels, for the King to Crown the Statue with. The King did it publickly, with much solemnity, and the Embassadors returned well pleased, as dispatched to their Prince's satisfaction.

---

### C H A P. III.

*The Government of D. Stepen de Gama, from the Year 1540, till the Year 1542, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

I. **D**On *Stephen* entred upon the Government the beginning of *April*; he was Son of *D. Vasco de Gama*. The first thing he did, was to cause all he had to be publickly Valued, that it might not be thought afterwards he had got his Estate by that Government; at the end whereof it was found considerably diminished. The first Act was hard to be imitated; so the second, which was, That he advanced a great Sum to the Publick, seeing the Treasury

sury exhausted. Next, he refitted the Fleet, which was laid up. The care of Temporals did not lessen his attention to Spirituals; so he founded the Colledge of *St. Faith*, for the Heathen Youths that are Converted: This was the second Colledge erected in that Empire, and the first at *Goa*; and the first Rector of it was that singular person the Vicar General *Michael Vaz*. He sent his Brother *D. Christopher*, young in years, but not in ability, to attend the Repairing the Ships at *Cochin*. He sent Advice to several Commanders, in order to be in a readiness to oppose the *Rumes*, who, it was said, were Sailing towards our Coasts. *D. Christopher* set out with 600 Men against the King of *Porca* and a *Caymal* of his, because they had robbed *Sebastian de Sousa* coming from *Maldivia*, and refused to make Restitution. He marched up the Country, slew many of the Enemy, and routed the rest; Beheaded the *Caymal*, and laid the Country waste; which produced an advantagious Peace, and an Agreement between this King and him of *Pimenta*.

2. Being advertized, That the *Rumes* could not set out this Year, he attended other Affairs. *Emanuel de Vasconcelos* was sent with 20 Sail to the Coast of *Malabar*; and *Antony de Castelobranco* with 30 to *Cambaya*. Scarce were they gone, when 4 Ships arrived from *Portugal*. They carried new Orders from the King, as dangerous as they were new; for whoever deprives Men of the hopes of Advancement, takes away  
 C their



their Courage. Such were these, being the fullen thoughts of Ministers, who thinking all too little for themselves, think every thing too much for others. The Ships being sent to *Cochin*, to load and return home; *D.Stephen* prepared to set out for the *Red Sea*, in order to burn the Turkish Gallies at *Zues*; but first he sent some Commanders to the Post assigned them.

3. When *Badur*, King of *Cambaya*, made over the Lands of *Baçaim* to the *Portugueses*, he took them from *Bramaluco*, a brave Man, to whom he had before given them. He thought the death of the Vice-Roy *D.Garcia*, furnished him a convenient opportunity to regain them by surprize. He set out of *Damam*, in the dead of Winter, with 300 Horse and 5000 Foot. *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora*, Commander of that Fort, considering if the Enemy once took footing, it would be hard to remove them; sets out with 650 *Portugueses*, the later number were Horse and Men of known Valour. The Foot he divided into four Battalions, and reserved to himself the 50 Horse and about 400 Blacks. Hearing the Enemy was lodged in the Village *Baylam*, two Leagues up the Country, he resolved to surprize him at Noon, when they use to Bathe. Half a League from the place he halted to Rest the Men; and the Enemy having Intelligence thereof, came on with such diligence and secrecy, that they had put them to the Sword, had not *Ferdinand de Silva*, who led the Van with  
much

much Bravery, given a check to their Fury. *Antony de Sotomayor* relieved him, already wounded in the Leg, was himself wounded and lost some Men; but did great Execution. This gave *Tavora* time to make ready, whose furious coming up made great havock. Our Men turning Back to Back, and facing the Enemy round, did Wonders. *Ruy Lorenço*, with his Horse ranging about, did them great harm, till falling on their Flank many were slain, the rest fled without hopes.

4 Next, he resolved to take a Great Ship of *Bramaluco's*, that was newly finished in the Dock of *Agaçaim*. He marched thither by Land, and *D. Luis de Ataide* went by Water. The latter by force of Arms made his way to the City, at such time as the other was reducing it to Ruins; breaking through a Multitude of Enemies, who endeavoured to stop his Fury, each of them lost six Men. *D. Luis* Landed, and both together cleared the Field, unpeopled the City, and then set Fire to it. The Ship was carried to the Port of *Baçaim*, and for many years Traded to *Lisbon*. *Bramaluco* sued for Peace, and he being a suspected Subject of *Cambaya*, our Governour treated with that King, and by this means secured the former Peace, and obtained a Grant of half the Customs, whereof only the Third part was offered before.

5. Let us now return to the Fleet, in which the Governour was to sail. His great Liberality brought him more Men than he desired, whereof he chose the best. The Fleet consisted of 80 Sail of sundry sorts and sizes, and carried two Thousand Men.

6. While this Fleet was fitting, the King of *Achem* falling upon the King of the *Bataas* unexpectedly, made a great slaughter of his People, killing among the rest three Sons he rather adored than loved. The King desirous of Revenge, sent his Brother-in-Law Embassadour to *Peter de Faria*, then Commanding at *Malaca*. The Embassy was to confirm the Peace before concluded, and desire assistance of Arms and Ammunition; and the better to obtain it, sent him a rich Present, and offered a free Trade in his Dominions, which abound in Gold, Pepper, Benjamin and Camphir. *Faria*, who was intent upon Profit, as well as his King's Service, plentifully supplied him with Arms and Ammunition, offering his utmost assistance, and entertaining the Embassadour with splendour. The King of *Bataa* attacked his Enemy with Resolution; but was beaten after having almost gained the Victory, and retired with great Grief to his City *Panaaju*. Here he dispatched *Pinto*, sent thither by *Faria* to Trade, who narrowly escaped being lost in the River *Parles* of the Kingdom of *Queda*, by reason of the Revolution had then hapned in the City of that Name, the Court of that

that Prince, who had murdered his Father and married his own Mother. The first he denyed, and pretended he had done the latter in Honour to her, having refused many considerable Matches. *Pinto* brought News of the Island *del Oro*, or of *Gold*, the great motive of his Voyage.

7. But now our Governour enters the *Red Sea* with his Fleet. He found most of the Islands and Cities abandoned, the People having had notice of his coming. The chief Island was *Maçua*: The principal City *Suanquem*, in about 19 Degrees of North Latitude, well built and rich. The King, who was fled a League up the Country, entertained the Governour with shews of Peace, that he might not destroy the Island. But the greatest damage was, that hereby he prevented the burning the Ships at *Suez*, gaining so much time as carried thither the News of this Design. The Governour in Revenge, marched with his Brother *D. Christopher* and 1000 Men, made a great slaughter, was Master of the Field, and took a great Booty: Then turning to the City, it was plundered, and private Men got four or five thousand Ducats each; then it was burnt to the ground. The Waters being shoal, the Governour resolved to go over to *Alcoçer*, and other places, with only sixteen Catures or Barges, the rest of the Fleet he sent to *Maçua*, under the Command of *Lionel de Lima*. There was a great dispute about who should go with *D. Stephen*, and he had much difficulty

to compose it. They set out of the Bay for this Reason called *De los Agraviados*, or *Of the Offended*. Many Gentlemen went in the Barges as private Souldiers, accepting any place so they were admitted; such was their desire to be in this Action. The number of Men was Two hundred and fifty. At *Alconçer*, which is in the Latitude of 25 Degrees, they did the same as had been done before at *Suanquem*. Crossing over to *Tor* or *Toro*, they took some Vessels of the Enemy. The Turks at first opposed the Landing, but some being slain, fled and abandoned the City, in which nothing of Value was found. The Governour would not burn it in reverence of *St. Catharine*, and a Monastery found there with Religious Men under her Invocation, which at their Instance he visited. To his great glory, he was the first *European* Commander that took that City, where he Knighted several, who held this Honour done them there in great esteem; and it was afterwards envied by the Great Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, as shall appear in its place. Our People, and those Religious testified great Regret at parting. They are of the Greek Church, and of the Order of *St. Basil*. The City is in the Latitude of 28 Degrees, and is thought by Learned Geographers, to be the ancient *Elana*.

8. The Governour went over to *Suez*, and after many brave Attempts made by severall to sound and view the Harbour, which all failed, he resolv'd in Person and in open Day to discover the Gallies. He saw them, and desiring to do something considerable, Landed; the Enemies Shot flew from the Town, and 2000 Turkish Horse broke out of an Ambush, some few whereof were killed by our Canon; but our Men oblig'd to Retire, much griev'd that this Voyage was disappointed. The Governour returned to his Fleet at *Maçua*, where he found the Severity of *Emanuel de Gama* had caused a Mutiny, which gave occasion to 80 Men to run away with a Ship, designing to go over to *Ethiopia*. They were met by a Captain of the King of *Zeila*, and after a vigorous Resistance, most of them killed. On a Gallows hung five, whom *Gama* had Executed, for concealing the design of the other 80; they at Execution summoned him to answer before the great Tribunal, and he within a Month run Mad, and died.

## C H A P. IV.

*Goes on with the Government of D. Stephen de Gama.*

I. **A**T this time *Grada Hamed*, King of the Country, called by some Geographers, *Trogloditis*, vulgarly *Adel*; having submitted himself to the Turk, to obtain Assistance of Men, casting off the Obedience he owed to the Emperour of *Ethiopia*, began furiously to over-run that Country with a Powerful Army. To excuse his Ambitious Designs, he laid hold of the Opportunity his Sovereigns tender years offered, and in a small time made himself Master of such part of *Abassia*, that the Emperour *Atanad Sagad*, or *Claudius*, was obliged to retire towards the Kingdom of *Goiame*, and his Mother *Saban*, or *Elizabeth*, with the *Barnagais*, got into the rugged Mountain *Dama*, a place naturally impregnable, which rising to a prodigious height over a vast Plain, on its Top forms another almost Round and about a League over, in which is an indifferent Town, with Fruit and Cattel that maintains it. On one side only is a painful Ascent, till near the Top; from thence People are drawn up on Planks with Ropes, and in like manner let down.

2. The Queen reduced to this condition, hearing *D. Stephen* was in the *Red-Sea*, sent *Barnagais* Embassadour to him, to desire his Assistance against that Tyrant, who over-running her Kingdoms destroyed the ancient Churches, and carried away Slaves the Religious Men and Priests. The Embassadour was heard, and received a favourable Answer. It was Resolved in Council to send Relief, and *D. Christopher* named Commander in Chief, of Four hundred Men it consisted of. He had with him eight Field-Pieces, many small Fire-Arms, and plenty of Ammunition. *D. John Bermudez*, the Patriarch, much desired by that Emperour to introduce the Roman Ceremonies, accompanied them. The two Brothers *D. Stephen* and *D. Christopher* took leave on the shoar, never to meet again: Let us conduct the one into *India*, and then return to the other.

3. About *July* the Governour was taken in such a violent Storm, that a Galliot sunk down right, a Barque was lost, and all the Fleet scattered. Many Religious Vows were made in the danger; but that of a private Souldier was pleasant, who Vowed he would marry *D. Isabel de Sa*, Daughter to *D. Garcia de Sa*, after Governour of *India*, and the applauded Beauty of all those parts, which afterwards gave pleasant matter of Discourse. At length the Governour arrived at *Goa*, and perceiving the Ships did not come from *Portugal*, and that he was exhausted with the charge of the last Fleets, he  
loaded

loaded the Goods, provided for the Ships expected, on four Galeons, and sent them away. *Peter de D. Castello Branco*, late Governor of *Ormuz*, Commanded one of these Galeons, and was taken by the French near the *Islands Azores*.

4. *Nizamoxa* desired to possess himself of the Forts of *Sangaça* and *Carnala*, held by two Subjects of *Cambaya*, on the Frontiers of that Kingdom, and formidable for their strength and situation. The Commanders *Nicoda Amorgin*, and *Atridican* being absent, he assaults and enters them. The Owners had recourse for the Recovery of them to *D. Francis de Meneses*, Commanding at *Bacaim*, promising to hold them of us, if restored. He went in person with Three hundred *Portugueses*, a party of the Natives, and each of the Proprietors, Two hundred Men. They scaled the Fort *Carnalia*, and the Defendants in a pannick Fear abandoned it, some throwing themselves down the Rocks, where they were beaten to pieces. Those of *Sangaça*, quitted it before it was demanded. *D. Francis* left the Moors in possession with *Portugues* Garrisons. *Nizamoxa* in a Rage sent 5000 Men, who ruined all the Country about. The Owners despairing of maintaining themselves against that Power, resigned their Title to those Forts to the *Portugueses*, and were received into *Bacaim* by *D. Francis*, who sent Supplies to the Forts, and resolved to maintain them.

5. *Nizamoxa* sends 6000 Men more, 1000 of them Musquetiers, and 800 Horse, well Armed. They beset *Sangaça*, and gave several Assaults that Day, wherein many of them were killed. The *Portugueses* stood all Day and Night at their Arms, and with much difficulty sent Advice to *D. Francis* at *Bazaim*, who came to their Relief with 160 *Portugueses*, 20 Horse and some *Naiques*; with 2000 Indians. *Don Francis* received a Letter from the Governour of *Chaul*, giving an account of the great Strength of the Enemy; and some of his Men coming to hear the Contents of it, he read quite the contrary to what really was in it, and marched on. A small Party of the Enemy attacked the Van, to draw them into two Ambushes, each of which contained a Thousand Men. Some of the *Portugueses* fled. *D. Francis* with his twenty Horse resolved to keep a Pass, and he with some Gentlemen killed several. Those of the Ambush coming on, the *Portugueses* were forced to fight Back to Back. Those who at first fled fell into the second Ambush, and endeavouring to shun it returned to the first, with whom the others were engaged. The Moors thinking this had been a fresh Relief, fled; our Men took heart, and struck such Terrour into the Enemy, that running to *Cangaça*, they raised their Camp, leaving all the Ground about the Fort strowed with all sorts of Weapons and Ammunition. *D. Francis* returning from the Pursuit, found they had slain about 500,  
and

and lost 20 Men. He stored the Forts, and went back to his Command.

6. I shall relate a thing scarce Credible, but most true: In this Action a Giant-like Portugues of prodigious Strength, called *Trancofo*, seeing a Moor well wrapped in a large Veil falling from his Head, laid hold of him thereby, as if he had been a Buckler, and so carried him before his Breast, received upon him all the strokes of the Enemies Weapons, and thus continued, making him his Shield till the Fight was ended.

7. However, considering the keeping of those Forts was of greater Charge and Danger, than Advantage could be made of them; and because *Nizamoxa*, our Confederate, offered for them 5000 Pardao's, besides the 2000 he paid before, the Governour resigned them up to him, to the great Regret of *D. Francis de Meneses*, who had gained and maintained them with so much Honour. The Garrisons marched out with all the usual Ceremonies.

8. When this hapned the Governour was at *Chaul*, in order to Visit the Northern Forts, he furnished them with all Necessaries. Being returned to *Goa*, he provided the Loading for the Ships that were detained at *Moçambique*, and received Embassadors from *Xeque Ismael* of *Persia*, the Kings of *Calicut* and *Cambaya*, about important Affairs, and were answered to their satisfaction.

9. *Peter de Faria*, who Commanded at *Malaca*, had received some Information of the Affairs and Seat of the Island *del Oro*, or of *Gold*, which was said to be in the Sea of the River *Calandor*, in five Degrees of South Latitude, 150 Leagues from the Point of *Sumatra*, encompassed with great Banks of Sand and strong Currents. He advertised the King, who sent to that Discovery and Conquest *Francis de Almeida*, that died by the way. One *James Cabral* of *Madera* succeeded him, and the Governour *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* displaced him, to give that Charge to *Hierom de Figueredo*. He set out in the Year 1542, with 80 Men in three Ships, and laying aside the Enterprize, through Covetousness, went in search of some Ships of *Meca* on the Coast of *Tanaugarim*, took them, and in them a rich Booty; but refusing them their shares, they tied his Hands and Feet and left him on the Sands at *Gale*, in the Island *Ceylon*. Thus for that time was the King disappointed of that Discovery.

10. The King of *Aaru*, as well as he of the *Bataas*, was first Victorious against him of *Achem*, then beaten and killed. He had also received supplies of Arms and Ammunition from *Peter de Faria*. This King of *Achem's* Design was to Conquer this Kingdom, which hindered his passage to *Malaca* by Land, being now convinced it was impossible to take it by Sea.

II. Some time after *Faria* sent his Factor *Pinto* with a Present and Letter to the King of *Patane*, desiring him to procure the liberty of five *Portugueses*, then Slaves at *Siam*, to his Brother-in-Law. He was also to deliyer Goods of the Value of Ten thousand Ducats to his Factor at *Pam*. They had made up Fifty thousand Crowns in Diamants, Pearls and Gold, and were ready to Sail next day, when a sudden Confusion hapning that Night, they lost all. There resided in that City an Embassadour from the King of *Borneo*, with his Wife. He caught the King of *Pam* lying with her, and killed him. The Death of the King being noised, the People ran about, not so much for Revenge, as to Rob. About Four thousand Men were presently butchered; the two Factors being robbed, and some of their Companions killed, escaped and fled to *Patane*. They, and other *Portugueses*, asked leave of that King, to make Reprizal on three Vessels belonging to the Merchants of *Pam*, which came richly laden from *China*, and were then at Anchor 18 Leagues off in the River *Calantam*. He consented; they set out to the number of 80 in Three Ships, and after a sharp Engagement, took and brought the Vessels into *Patane*. The Prize was worth above Three hundred Thousand Ducats. The People of *Patane* pressed the King to take them from the *Portugueses*; but he urged the Fifty thousand Crowns ought to be made good. The Merchants accepted the Condition,

dition, paid the Mony, and continued their Voyage.

---

## C H A P. V.

*Sundry Exploits of Captain Antony Faria, from the Year 1540, till that of 1542, during the Government of D. Stephen de Gama.*

1. **W**Hile what is above-related happened the Three years last past, *Antony de Faria* and *Sousa*, did Actions deserving Eternal Fame; which I shall relate without affection to our Kindred, but with my usual sincerity.

2. *Peter de Faria*, Commander of *Malaca*, sent his Kinsman *Antony de Faria* and *Sousa*, to the King of *Patane*, to treat of important Affairs, and preserve the Peace, which was very beneficial to that place. He carried with him Goods to the Value of Twelve thousand Ducats, and finding no Sale for them there, sent them to the Port of *Lugor*, in the Kingdom of *Siam*, a place of great Trade, where he was informed they would go off to great advantage. He committed this Affair to *Christopher Borallo*, who being come to an Anchor in the Mouth

Mouth of that River, was surprized by *Coja Hazem*, a Moor of *Guzarate*, in a Vessel well stored with Artillery, and Manned with 80 Turks and Moors. This *Coja* was a sworn Enemy to the *Portugueses* ever since *Hector de Silveyra* took a Ship of his in the Sea of *Diu*, killing his Father and two Brothers, and had kept his Oath, robbing and murdering all he met.

3. *Borrallo* thought himself happy that he escaped falling into the *Pyrats* hands, leaving his Vessel and swimming ashoar. He carried the News to *Antony Faria* at *Patane*, who Vowed, never to desist till he had destroyed that Moor. This was the Motive that led him to all those brave Actions. He fitted a small Vessel with 50 Men, and sailed from *Patane* on Saturday the 8th of *May*.

4. He steered North-East, towards the Kingdom of *Champa*, to examine that Coast, and saw the Island *Pulo Condor*, in the Latitude of 3 Degrees, 20 Minutes, then to the Eastward rounded one six Leagues from the Continent of *Cambodia*. Entering the Port of *Bralapisam*, he found there a Vessel of the *Lequii*, that had on board an Embassadour from the Prince of the Island *Lossa*, in the Latitude of 36 Degrees, to the King of *Siam*. As soon as this Vessel spied ours, they weighed Anchor and sailed. *Faria* sent after them a *Chinese* Pylot with a Civil Message, who brought back this remarkable Answer: *We return Thanks; The time will come when our Nation shall have commerce*

commerce with that Captains in real Friendship, through the Law of the Supream God, whose Clemency is boundless, since by his death he gave life to all Mankind, and remains an everlasting Faith in the House of the Good: We confidently hold this will be when half the Times are past. He also brought a rich Cimiter in a Case of beaten Gold, the Hilt and Scabbord of the same set with some Pearls of value. The Captain would have made some Return, but the Vessel could not be overtaken.

5. Thence he Coasted to the River *Pulo Cambier*, which divides the Kingdoms of *Cambodia* and *Tsiompa*. At the Town *Cattimparu*, he was informed that great River had its beginning in the Lake *Pinator* (260 Leagues Westward in the Kingdom of *Quitirvam*) encompassed with high Mountains, about which were 38 Towns, 13 of them considerable, one whereof was *Xincalen*, where was a Gold Mine which yielded yearly 22 Millions of Crowns It belonged to four Lords, who had continual Wars about it. At *Bauquerim*, another Mine of the best Diamonds. Treasures (according to the disposition of that Country) might be easily conquered by us.

6. Coasting along still, he Anchored in the Mouth of the River *Toobasoy*, fearing to go up it. Suddenly they spied a great Vessel, to which making signs of Peace, they received a rude Answer. Night coming on, it was thought fit to expect the Day;

D

but

but in the Dark they discovered first one, then three Vessels, and Counterfeiting, they leapt 40 out of the first Vessel, boarded them, who were all slain, and their Vessel taken, the others burnt. A Black that was taken declared, He was a Christian and Slave to *Gaspar de Melo*, whom (with 26 *Portugueses*) that *Pyrat* had taken and dashed out their Brains, and that he had left another large Vessel richly laden in the Port with only a few Sea-men. This *Pyrat* was found to be *Similau*, and he (with the other Prisoners) were put to the same Death they delighted to give to others. As soon as Day appeared he took the other Vessel, and found the Booty in Silver only amounted to 60000 Ducats, besides other Goods.

7. Thus increased, he goes on to the River *Timacoreu*, or *Varela*, where the *Siam* and *Malaca* Ships, Trading for *China*, barter their Goods for Gold, Calamba and Ivory, with which that Country abounds. He Anchored off of *Tayquileu*, a small Town; the Inhabitants called them the *Bearded People*; not but those People have Beards, but theirs are short and thin, ours then were at their full growth, and some reached to the Wasse. By them the Captain was informed, that River was formerly called *Tauralachim*, that is, *Great Stock*, to express its Greatness; it is deep for Eighty Leagues up to *Moncalor*, then shallower and wide, where is a Country for Eight days Journey Unpeopled, by a multitude of Birds, 40 years before the great Kingdom  
of

of the *Chintaleubo's*. In the middle of it is the great Lake *Cunabetee*, or *Chiamay*, whence spring four great Rivers. It is 180 Leagues in compass, beset with Mines of Silver, Copper, Tin and Lead.

8. Hence he directed his Course for the Island *Hainan*, passed in sight of *Champloo*, in the Latitude of 13 Degrees, and at the entrance of the Bay of *Cochinchina*. Farther on he discovered the Promontory *Pullocampas*, whence is seen the Point of *Hainan*: Westward is a River, up which *Borrallo* was sent in a small Vessel with 16 Men, who discovered at least Two thousand Sail, and a large Walled Town. On their Return they saw a large Vessel at Anchor: The Captain thinking it was *Coja Hazem*, fell upon and took it: But among the Prisoners he found an ancient Christian of *Mount Sinai*, who told him, it belonged to *Quiay Tayjam* a Pyrat, who had killed above a Hundred *Portugueses*, and now laid hid in the Fore-Castle with six or seven others, who were all killed there. In that Vessel were found 70000 Quintals or Hundred weight of Pepper, much other Spice, Ivory, Tin, Wax and Powder, all valued at 60000 Crowns, besides good Cannon, Baggage and some Plate. In the Hold were nine Children, the biggest about nine years of Age, loaded with Irons and starving with Hunger.

9. Coasting along the Island *Hainan*, he met some Fishers of Pearl, whom he used courteously. They told him, the Island belonged to the King of *China*. Hence he went to the River *Tananquir*, where two great Vessels suddenly fell upon *Faria*; both which, after a long Dispute, he took, having killed 80 of their Men, and lost 14, whereof one *Portugues*. After a while they heard lamentable Cries in the Hold of one of those Vessels; where they found seventeen Prisoners, two of them *Portugueses*, One of which said, those Vessels belonged to *Necoda Xicaulem*, who after turning Christian at *Malaca*, and marrying a Portugues, had killed her and many more of her Country. His Body being found, was cut in pieces. The Booty was valued at 50000 Crowns. One of the Vessels was burnt, for want of Men to sail it; in both were seventeen Brass Guns, most of them with the Arms of *Portugal*.

10. He Anchored forty Leagues farther at *C. Tilaumere*, where came up with our four Vessels four others, in which was the Bride of a Noble young Man, who had promised to meet her there with a like number of Ships, and this mistake brought them to our Vessels. Three of them were taken, and in one of them the Bride. Some Seamen were chose, the rest set ashoar. They came to *Mutipinam*, and found it a most convenient place to sell their Prizes. The Governour of the City somewhat obstructed the Sale, so they were obliged to hasten

hasten it; the Goods were paid for in Silver uncoyned, and amounted to Two hundred thousand Crowns. This was the beginning of the Year 1541.

---

## C H A P. VI.

*Continues the Exploits of Antony de Faria.*

1. **A**ntony de Faria sailed on in search of the Port of *Madel*, in the Island *Hainan*, and by the way took some Prizes. Here he met *Hinymilau*, a bold Pyrat and a great Enemy to Christians, whom he delighted to put to cruel Deaths. They had a bloody Fight with, and at length took him. He gave a bold Relation of the Cruelties he had exercised against the *Portugueses*, and was therefore with four more immediarely killed. The Prize was valued at 70000 Ducats.

2. This Action struck such a Terrour into many of those that were there in that River, that they sent a Message to *Faria*, offering him 30000 Crowns to take them into his Protection, calling him King of those Seas, and desiring of him Passes for their safe Trading therein. He received the Mony, and gave the Passes by only  
D 3 Writing,

Writing, of which in Twelve days time a Servant of his got 6000 Ducats. The Governour of the City offered to make him Admiral of those Seas for the King of *China*, with a Pension of 9000 Crowns, if he would serve. Such a Name had he already got in those parts.

3. They run all along this Coast without any remarkable Occurrence, only saw many, though not large Towns, and a very fruitful Country; and were informed, there were there Mines of Silver, Tin, Salt-Peter, and Brimstone. The Souldiers now weary of looking after the Pyrat *Coja Hazem*, demanded their shares of the Prizes, to be gone. They agreed, and directed their Course for the Kingdom of *Siam*. By a furious Storm they were wrecked upon the Island *De los Ladrones*, where of Five hundred Men, only Eighty six got ashoar naked; of these Twenty eight were *Portugueses*. Here they were fifteen days almost without any thing to eat. A Bird flying over them with a Fish, dropt it, and afterwards they saw many others, that frighted at their Shouts, let fall their Prey; this, and a Deer they found killed by a Tyger, kept them awhile, but some died with Want. Being thus in despair, because the Island was not Inhabited, they discovered a small Vessel making to the shoar, where they cast Anchor, and presently Thirty Men landed; some carried Wood and Water, and others diverted themselves. They were *Chineses*. Our Men agreeing together upon a sign,

run furiously, and possessed themselves of the Vessel, and with the same swiftness put to Sea. The *Chineses* were astonished at that unexpected Misfortune, and our Men overjoyed, finding in the Vessel good Provision and much Silk. In the Barque they found only an Old man and a Child, whose Father was left ashoar.

4. Sailing for *Liampo* in Port *Xamoy*, they took a Vessel of *Chineses*, and went to the Island *Luxitay*, where they stayed fifteen days, went over to the great Vessel, and Refitted the small one, and then went on. Upon the Coast of *Lamau* they discovered a great Vessel, which as it came near began to fire Fifteen great Guns it carried; but coming closer, they discovered Crosses and Portugues Habits on both sides; so they hailed each other, and the Vessel appeared to belong to *Quiay Panjau*, a Chinese, and great Friend to the Portugueses, whereot he had Thirty Souldiers aboard. He came to *Farias's* Vessel, and brought a present of Amber, Pearls, Gold and Silver, worth Two thousand Ducats. After other Discourse our Captain told him he was bound for *Liampo*, to furnish himself with Necessaries, in order to attempt the Mines of *Quamjaparú*, where he was told he might get a Treasure. *Quiay Panjau* offered to accompany him, demanding for himself only the Third part of what should be taken; which was agreed.

5. At the River *Anay* they Refitted, and came to *Chincheo*; where *Faria* hired 35 Portugueses he found there. Putting to Sea again, he found eight Portugueses naked and wounded in a Fisher-Boat. They told him, the Pyrat *Coja Hazem* had taken their Ship in the Port of the Island *Cumbor*, that it was worth Two hundred thousand Ducats, and that they with difficulty had escaped in that condition. *Faria* was overjoyed to hear News of that Pyrat, and turned eight Leagues back to *Layloo*, to provide for the Fight. There he changed his Old Vessels for New, provided Arms, Ammunition and Men, paying generously for every thing. He had in his four Vessels Five hundred Men, whereof 95 Portugueses, 40 Pieces of Cannon, 160 Muskets, 6000 Darts, other Arms and much Ammunition. In a day and half he came to the Fisheries, where *Coja Hazem* had robbed those Portugueses, and was informed by Fishermen, that he was two Leagues off in the River *Tinlau*. To be sure, he sent one to discover him.

6. Before Day began a most furious Fight, and the Pyrats four Ships were reduced to great streights, when four small ones came to their relief. One of our Cannon was so well pointed, that it sank the first of them downright, and killed some Men in another. The Fight was renewed, and *Coja* encouraged his Men, till *Faria* boarding, gave him such a Cut over the Head as struck him down without sense, and with

with another stroak Ham-strung him, that he could not rise. His Men gave our Captain three Wounds; but he being relieved, the Victory was compleat; it cost 43 Men, eight of them Portugueses. Of the Enemy almost 400 died, above half drowned, leaping over to save themselves.

7. *Faria* Landed, and buried his dead. He found in a House 96 Men left there by *Coja Hazem* to be cured; these, though they cried for Mercy, he destroyed, firing the House. Here he performed a most Magnanimous act, which was, That he restored the Portugues Ship to the Owners, and gave liberty to the Slaves, paying their Masters, as he had Vowed when he went on this Design. What booty remained to him was worth 100000 Crowns.

8. Sailing hence that Night, rose such a violent Storm, that *Faria's* Ship and another were cast away, and most of the Goods of the others was thrown Over-board, to the Value of Two hundred thousand Ducats. One hundred and eleven Men were lost, the Eleven Portugueses. Thirteen that escaped drowning were carried Prisoners to *Nauday*, where *Faria* with the five remaining Vessels came to an Anchor. He offered the Governour of the City Three thousand Crowns for the Prisoners. The Answer was such, as obliged him to resolve to hazard all, to obtain by force what he could not effect with Courtesie and Money. Our Men were fearful of the greatness of the Enterprize; but he so encouraged them, that

that they resolved to follow him. He had in all 470 Men, 60 of them *Portugueses*; out of the whole he chose 300 for this Action, which hapned the beginning of the Year 1542.

9. After sending another Civil Message, to which the Governour answered by hanging the Messenger, he Landed; as they marched, Twelve thousand Foot and an hundred Horfe came out of the City to meet them; our Musqueteers killed at least Three hundred of them, and pursued the rest to a Bridge that led into the City. The Governour was within on Horseback with Six hundred Men, maintaining the Pass till killed by a Shot; at that sight his Men fled; *Faria* pursues them with great slaughter till they run out at the other end of the Town. The City being plundered, he that got least was Rich; the remainder was consumed to Ashes. Our Victorious Captain returned, carrying the Prisoners he had recovered, and many beautiful Women. He lost eight Men, one a *Portugues*, and many wounded. Now he profecutes his Voyage towards the Mines.

10. The Course was to *Pulo Hindor*, an Island not inhabited, where he designed to Winter and take some Rest; it was fifteen Leagues off. About the Islands of *Commolem* he was attacked by two great Ships, in which were Two hundred Resolute Men, Commanded by the Pyrat *Premata Gundel*, a mortal Enemy to the *Portugueses*, to whom he had done great harm; but thought

thought now these had been *Chinese* Merchants. One of the *Pyrats* boarding one of ours, *Quiay Panjau* came to his Relief with all his Sails abroad, and run so furiously foul of the *Pyrat*, that they both sunk down right. *Quiay* and most of his Men were saved by the care of our Men. The *Pyrat* himself had boarded *Faria*, who was in danger of being lost; but at length was Victorious, killing 90 Moors that had entered his Ship. Then he boarded the Enemies, and put all to the Sword. This cost us 17 Men, five of them Portugueses, above forty were wounded, and *Faria* himself had two great Cuts and a hurt of a Spear. The Prize was valued at 120000 Ducats. They staid 20 Days in the Island *Buncaleu*, to cure the Wounded men. Thence they steered to the Gates of *Liampo*, which are two Islands three Leagues distant from the City of that Name, built by the Portugueses, who there Governed in the nature of a Commonwealth.

## C H A P. VII.

*Continues still the Exploits of Antony de Faria, in the Government of D. Stephen de Gama, and the Year 1642.*

1. **A** *Ntony de Faria* being Anchored at those Gates of *Liampo*, sent to ask leave of the Inhabitants to enter the Port: They returned a courteous Answer, praying him to defer it six days, till they had prepared a House to entertain him. The term expired upon Sunday Morning, when he hoisted Sail and went up accompanied with many Boats sent from the Town to receive him, with Three hundred Townsmen, who saluted and welcomed him, the River resounding with the noise of Musical Instruments.

2. About Two hundred Ships then in the Port were placed in two Lines, and made a Lane, through which as *Faria* passed, all the Cannon of the Vessels and ashoar were fired. Some *Chineses* seeing this great Reception, asked, Whether that was the King of *Portugal's* Brother, or near Kinsman; and were Answered, He was his Smiths Son; which so surprized them, they concluded the Kingdom of *Portugal* to be the greatest in the World. From his Ship  
*Faria*

*Faria* went into a Barge shaded with a Natural Chesnut Tree, the Fruit hanging on the Boughs, and was seated on a Silver Chair placed upon six Steps adorned with Gold. On the sides were six beautiful Maids richly clad, who sang and play'd sweetly; and thus he was carried to the Key.

3. Where was a richer Chair carried upon Mens shoulders, covered with a rich Canopy; about it 60 Halberdeers, and before it went 16 Men mounted on fine Horses, before these eight with Silver Maces, all in most rich Attire. *Faria* long refused to be thus carried, but was forced to submit, and in this manner came to a large Scaffold, covered with fine Tapistry. There he was placed on his Chair, and received the Complements of the Magistrates in the Name of the City, and of others for the Gentry. He received them standing, and returned their Courtesie with great Civility.

4. From the Key to the City, which was a considerable distance, was a Lane in nature of an Arbour of Chesnut, Pine and Laurel Trees, the Ground strewed with Flowers; at distances many Perfumes, several Companies of Dancers, and multitudes of People all the way. At the Entrance of the Town was a Castle built for this Occasion. On the Front of it, the Arms of the *Faria's*, which are Sanguin, a Tower Argent, in Base a Man torn to pieces. *Faria* being come hither, was received by

a Reverend Old man ( attended by four Mace-Bearers ) who after some Ceremonies made a long Speech in praise of his Family, and concluded extolling his own Actions, and welcoming him to that place.

5. The Speech ended, the old Orator in the Name of the City, offered him five Chests full of Silver Bars, to the Value of Twenty thousand pieces of Eight, which he could not be prevailed with to accept of; but returned his Thanks, and promised to endeavour in part to deserve the Honours they did him. Then he went on foot through many sightly Arches to our *Ladies Church*, where ( under a Canopy ) he heard Mass, and a Sermon of his own Praises.

6. Hence he was conducted by above a Thousand *Portugueses*, to a large place that was before the House, provided for his Entertainment. This place was shaded with variety of Trees set, as if they had grown there, the Ground strewed with Flowers and sweet Herbs. In the middle were three long Tables richly covered, and Side-boards. *Faria* being seated, all departed, but about 80 who were to Dine there, and 50 Souldiers. At a distance stood the Halberdeers to keep off the People. As soon as seated, the Musick began to play.

7. Presently

7. Presently eight beautiful Maids appeared playing on Instruments and Dancing, eight others stood by him singing. The Dishes were brought by fine Women, and set on by Men. The Plenty and Costliness was great. After Dinner they went to another place, where there was a Bull-Feast, and some wild Horses among them; at the death of every one followed Dancing, Musick, and other Divertisements.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Concludes with the Actions of Antony de Faria.*

1. **H**ere *Faria* continued five Months always entertained with great splendour, and had Dogs and Horses to go a Hunting, that place being stored with all sorts of Game. The time being come to set out for the Mines of *Quamgiparu*, the Chinese *Quiay Panjau*, who was to accompany him in that Voyage, was snatched away by a violent Sickness. All things were in forwardness when the Chinese, *Similau*, dissuaded *Faria* from that Enterprize, representing the great Difficulties, and proposing other Undertakings much more easie, and no less beneficial. Among  
the

the rest he said Great things of the Island *Calempluy*, where were the ancient Monuments of the Kings of *China*, and in them great Treasures. To this he soon gave Ear; for Covetousness is of great force to persuade, even in a Man so generous and understanding as he was. Happy if he had returned to *India*, satisfied with his past Victories and Triumph.

2. About the middle of *May* he set Sail with *Similau* in two Galliots, in which were 146 Men, 52 of them Portugueses, and among them the Priest *James Lobato*. Next day they discovered the Islands of *Nanguitur*, and then entred Seas till then unknown to Portugueses. Crossing a Gulph of 40 Leagues, they discovered the high Mountain *Nangalaci*, and held on their Course Northward. At the end of Ten days they Anchored in a River where they saw White People, like the *Chineses*, but differing in Language, and could never prevail to have any commerce with them. After Eight days sailing they entred the Streight of *Silcapaquim*, in which they spent five days in sight of many populous Towns. But this Course appearing dangerous, they steered another by the advice of *Similau*. This was up the River *Humbepadam*, which they entred, and to the West saw the Mountain *Fangus*, and thirteen days after the Bay *Buxipalem*, in the Latitude of 30 Degrees, which produces Fish, Serpents and Crocodils of wonderful sorts and greatness, and many Sea-Horses. Farther on they came

came into the Bay of *Calindam*, girt with high Mountains covered with Trees, from them four great Rivers fall into the Sea.

3. Next they sailed under *Botinasora*, a Mountain abounding in Lions, Abada's, Tygers, Ounces, and other wild Beasts; then *Gangitanu*, the habitation of the *Gigabui*, a wild Gigantick People, some ten, some eleven Spans high, of which they saw fourteen of both Sexes: They have good Complexions, being white and red; but ill Features. *Faria* gave them some Porcelane Dishes and Silk, for which they appeared thankful, but could not be understood, and brought some Cows and a Deer. At length they came into the Bay of *Nanking*, and within six days to the great City *Pamor* whose Bay was almost hid under Three thousand Vessels. Fearing Danger here, they stood off and came to *Tanquilem*, where *Similan* and Thirty six Chinese Seamen, run away for fear; because our Captain weary of the Voyage, and finding he could give no good Account where they were, had threatned to kill him. He was not so ignorant; but terrified with the ill Usage of the Portugueses he knew not what he said, and they feared either he knew not the Coast, or designed to betray them. It was a great Error, to believe him at *Liampo*, and use him ill at *Nanking*, where they had most need of him. In fine, They gave themselves for lost, not knowing where they were, till some of the Na-

tives informed them, they were but Ten Leagues from the Island *Calempluy*, which made them repent the wrong they had done *Similau*.

4. Turning Cape *Guinaytarau* (after a tedious Voyage of two Months and a half) they discovered in the middle of the River the Island. It is plain, and to appearance four Miles in compass. It was then Night: Next Morning *Faria* went about it with his Galliots, and saw it was enclosed with a Wall of Jasper Stone, which were joyned so close, it appeared all of a piece. It rose about 19 Foot above the superficies of the Water, and was terrassed within. The Top of the Wall was a massy Twist: Upon it were Brass Rails, and at distances little Columns, on which were the Statues of Women with Balls in their Hands, all of the same Metal. At some distance from these appeared several Figures of Iron of Monstrous shape, that seemed to give one another their Hands. Farther yet were several curious Arches of Stone of many Colours: Within was seen afterwards a delightful variety of small Woods of Orange Trees; among which were 366 Chappels, dedicated to the Gods of the Year. On one side a great Building, not all of a piece, but divided into seven parts, all over glittering with Gold.

5. In the Evening the Captain entred the Island at one of its eight Gates, with sixty Men, four of them Portugueses. Entering one of the Chappels, they saw an Old Man, in appearance an hundred years of Age, who with the fright of seeing them fell down; but recovering, and seeing the Souldiers take out the Bars of Silver out of the Tombs, he rebuked the Captain, giving him Advice to be saved. *Faria* courteously took his leave, having Information what was in the other Chappels, and resolving next day to plunder them all, he retired to his Ships with the Silver taken in this, which was a considerable quantity.

6. About Midnight there appeared Lights upon the Top of the Great Building, and Bells began to ring throughout the Island. *Faria* was advised to be gone, being they were discovered; but he returned to the Island with only six Men, and could see no more than what he had from his Vessels. Being returned aboard, all protested he ought to retire, and he no longer able to withstand the Mutiny; said, *He was obliged in Honour to see what he fled from;* and went ashoar again with the same six Men. He entred a Chappel and found two Old Men, whom he brought away with some Candlesticks and a Silver Idol he found, and immediately left that place. He understood by the Old Men, that the Alarm was given, and the Island would soon be relieved; that the first Hermit had given Notice. Then *Faria* found, how

much he had erred in not bringing him away, as he was Advised.

7. He went away in a Passion, that he should lose that Treasure through his own fault; and having sailed almost a Month, one Night, being the fifth of *August*, there arose such a terrible Storm, that his Galliot was swallowed up, as was guessed by those in the other by the miserable Cries; for they could not see it. A few days after the other also perished, only fourteen of them escaping. Thus ended that brave Commander; doubtless a just Judgment for the Robbery he designed to commit.

8. No less Unfortunate was the End of the City *Liampo*, where this Captain had been so Nobly received, and was the effect of a base and insatiable Avarice. *Lancelot Pereyra*, a Judge of that City having lost a Thousand Ducats by the Chineses, went out with a Body to rob and plunder others, as if this might be done though they have been the Debtors. This barbarous, hellish Action, brought the Governour of that Province with Threescore thousand Men upon that City, which in four hours time was burnt, with Eighty Ships that were in the Port; Twelve thousand Men killed, of them a Thousand Portugueses, and three Millions of Gold lost. Scarce any thing was left, but the bare Memory of *Liampo*; but it appeared that whatever the Portugueses gained by their Valour, they lost by their Covetousness. It was admirably said of one of those we call Barbarians, hearing the

the Actions of the Portugueses in *Asia* celebrated: His Words were these; *Let them go on; for whatever they gain as Courageous Soldiers, they will lose as Covetous Merchants; They now conquer Asia, Asia will soon conquer them.* Who was most Barbarous; he that said this, or they who did what he said?

9. *Liampo* had above Three thousand Inhabitants, all Catholicks, and almost half Portugueses. Those who escaped that Storm, though quite discredited among the Chinese, obtained leave with great Presents, in the Year 1547, to Settle in the Port of *Chincheo*; where there was a Village, which began to flourish with a rich Trade; but came to the same End as the other, as shall appear the Year 1549.

## C H A P. IX.

*Continues the Government of D. Stephen de Gama, and contains the Actions of his Brother Don Christopher in Ethiopia.*

1. **W**Hilst this hapned in *India* and *China*, *Don Christopher de Gama* marched through *Ethiopia*, led by that *Barnagais*, who came as *Embassadour* from the *Queen Mother*, to desire favour of the *Governour D. Stephen*. The Heat the Men endured was excessive, though they lay by the Day, and marched by Night. A Week was spent in passing over a Rugged Mountain, whence they descended into a most pleasant Plain Country, watered by many Rivulets. Through this they marched in two days to the City *Barua*, Metropolis of the Province *Barnagasso*; though damaged by the late Invasion, yet of sightly Buildings, divided by a great River, encompassed with good Villages and Country-houses. At the Gates they were received by several Religious Men singing a Litany, one of which made a Speech to Welcom them, and extol their Generosity in coming to their relief; after which our Men visited the Church, and Encamped.

2. *Don Christopher* sent Advice of his Arrival to the Emperour, who was far off; and to the Queen Mother, who was near. He desired of her, to leave that Mountain and put her self under his guard. *Barnagau* was sent to Conduct her with two Companies of Portugueses. She came with a great Retinue of Women and Servants. Our Men were drawn out to receive her, and the Cannon fired. The Queen sat upon a Mule, whose Trappings reached the ground, and she was hid by Curtins fixed to the Saddle; her Cloathing was white, on her Shoulders a short black Mantle with gold Fringes; and from her white Head-Cloaths fell a Veil that covered her Face. *Barnagau* led the Mule, his Arm naked, and a Tygers Skin upon his Shoulders, (a Token of Respect) a Lord on each side in the same Garb. She opened the Curtains to see the Portugueses, and lifted her Veil to be seen by *D. Christopher*. The Reception on both sides was Courteous. Afterwards *D. Christopher* went to Visit Her, and by Advice of the *Ethiopians* it was resolved to Winter there, and expect the Emperour's Answer.

3. The Answer came, expressing his Joy for the Arrival of the Portugueses, and desiring *D. Christopher* to march the beginning of Summer. It was put in execution: Some Light Horse led the Van to discover; then followed the Artillery, next the Baggage; after it the Queen, guarded by fifty Portugues Musqueteers. *D. Christopher*

brought up the Reer; *Barnagais* and his Officers made up the Flanks. In eight days they came to the Mountain *Ganè*, of most difficult ascent; on the Top of it was a City, and on the highest Cliff a Chappel, near which a House, hung round with Three hundred embalmed Bodies, sewed up in Hides, which being rent with Age shewed the Bodies white and uncorrupt. Some were of Opinion they were Roman Conquerors of that Country; others, and among them the Patriarch, supposed them to be Martyrs. At the sight of the Portugueses, many of the People resorted to the Queen.

4. *Don Christopher* marched on to the Mountain *Canete*, well Watered and stored with Cattle, impregnable by Nature, and yet strengthened by Art. Formerly the Emperours were Crowned here; now it was held for the Tyrant by a Thousand Men, who at times came down to Ravage the Country. *D. Christopher*, contrary to the Advice of the Queen and her Counsel, resolved to assault that Den of Thieves. He divided his Men into three parts, and led the one himself, and boldly assaulted the Three Passes that led to it; but were forced this day to desist, by reason of the great Stones the Enemy rouled down upon them. Having heard Mass on *Candlemass-day*, they returned to the Assault, playing their Cannon, and lost some Men by the Stones thrown down; yet they came to the first Gates and broke them open, making their

their way with much slaughter and loss of three Men to the second Gates. Those who were within these and the third Gates, seeing so few of our Men, opened them, and the Portugueses as freely rushed in; where was a hot Dispute, till *D.Christopher* and the others coming up, pressed the Enemy so hard, that many of them threw themselves headlong down the Rocks. Many Women and Children were taken, and there was a considerable Plunder. The Queen and her Retinue went up with a general Admiration; the *Ethiopians* having always held that Fort to be impregnable. The Patriarch blessed a Mosque, dedicating it to our Lady, where Mass was celebrated with great Joy to both People.

5. The Mountain being provided, and garrisoned under the Command of an *Ethiopian*, the Army marched. As they entred the Country of the Rebel *Jarse*, he submitted himself to the Queen, and brought his Men to her Service, thinking nothing could withstand those who had conquered Nature; in such Esteem did they hold the taking the Mountain. The King of *Zeila* came on now, covering the Plains and Hills with his Numbers, and joyful to have to do with our Men. *D. Christopher* Encamped in good Order near a Mountain, both Armies in sight. *Palm Sunday* and *Monday* were spent in Skirmishing with equal Loss, only the Portugueses had so much the Advantage, that

that the Enemy retired to their Works. *D. Christopher* was forced to move his Camp for want of some necessaries, chiefly Water. The King of *Zeila* perceiving their motion from the higher Ground, came down to encompass our Men, who marched in good Order, pouring their Shot in upon the Enemy: Who pressing on, *D. Christopher* ordered *Emanuel de Cuna* with his Men to face them, who performed it so successfully, that he obliged a Body of Turks to retire, after losing many of their Men. They rallied, and coming on again had somewhat distressed him, till *D. Christopher* came in person to their Relief, fighting with such Resolution, that he felt not he was wounded in the Leg. The King himself came on, thinking to put an end to the days Action, and it turned to his loss; for our Cannon cut off many of his Men. *D. Christopher* was in danger of being slain, but still lost no Courage, and the Fight continued till the Tyrant was struck down by a shot which pierced his Thigh. His Men furled their Colours, and fled with him, as they thought dead, though he was alive. This Victory cost eleven Portugueses, two of them Men of Note. The Queen her self with great alacrity tended *Don Christopher* and all the wounded Men.

6. After a Weeks respite, the Army marched towards the Enemy, who was Encamped at no great distance, and came to meet them, carrying their King in an open

open Chair. It was Resolutely fought on both sides. A Turkish Captain with fifty Horse thinking to recover the Honour lost the other day, Charged in the midst of our Men, and was entirely cut off. *D. Christopher* mounting on Horseback, led his Men with such fury into the Heat of the Battle, that he obliged the Enemy with great slaughter to turn their Backs. The King had infallibly been taken, had there been more Horse to pursue him. Eight Portugueses were lost in this Action: The Victorious Army marching down to a pleasant River, found it possessed by the Enemy, who immediately quitted it, the King flying at the sight of our Men.

7. The King sent an Embassy to the Bassa of *Zibis*, acquainting him with his Distress: He mollified by Presents, sent him almost a Thousand Turkish Musqueteers. *D. Christopher* Wintered in the City *Osav*, expecting the Emperour. Here a Jew proposed, That if he wanted Horses and Mules, he would shew him a Mountain not far off inhabited by Jews, where there was store of both. The King of *Zeyla* had a Garrison of Four hundred Men there. *D. Christopher* having enquired into the truth of this Information, marched with two Companies of his own, and some Ethiopians, to the Foot of the Mountain, which is twelve Leagues about. In the Ascent some Moors, who guarded the Passes, were killed. On the Top met him the Captain with all his Men. *D. Christopher*  
imme.

immediately running at, struck him down dead with his Lance. Our Shot being poured in among the Moors, they soon quitted the place and fled, leaving many dead. Great quantity of Horses and Mules were found, and about eight Thousand Jews, who lived in six or seven Villages on that Mountain, were brought under Obedience. There was a Tradition, That these Jews dispersed about *Ethiopia* and *Nubia*, are descended from some of the dispersion of the Ten Tribes.

8. The Jew, who led our Men, astonished at their Valour, was Converted and Baptized, and by common Consent appointed Governour of that Mountain, which being called before *Caloa*, was after known by the Name of the *Jews Mountain*. The second day after *D. Christopher* returned to the Army; the King of *Zeila* appeared now more bold with the increase of the Turkish Musqueteers. *D. Christopher's* Youth now transported him as well as his Valour: For whereas he ought to have retired to a Mountain till the Emperour joyned him, it being impossible to withstand so great a force, he never considered it till it was too late. On the 29<sup>th</sup> of *August* the Turks gave the Onset, and were repulsed by *D. Christopher*, who lost four Men and went off wounded in the Leg: *Emanuel de Cuna* did the like Service, with loss of three Men. *Francis de Abreu* fighting like a Lion was killed, and his Brother *Humphry* going to fetch him off, fell down dead upon him.

*D. Chri-*

*D. Christopher* returns like a furious Tyger, and performed Wonders, till a Musquet-Ball broke his Arm; a couragious Souldier carried him off. He was scarce dress'd, when he heard *Fonseca* and *Vello* were killed, and the Enemy entred the Works. He caus'd himself to be carried where the greatest Danger was: But the Tyrant being now undoubtedly Victorious, some of our Men fled, as did the Patriarch and the Queen on Fleet Mares, each taking a different Way, he for fear and she by choice. *D. Christopher* sent after and obliged her to come back, because her absence brought utter Ruin. But at length seeing all lost, in despair he grasped his Sword in the Left Hand and said, *Let who will follow me, for I am going to dye amidst the Enemies.* He was drawn from that Resolution by meer force, and carried out of the Field with only fourteen Men, and the Queen and *Barnagais* among them, seeking some place of Refuge. The Night being dark they lost the Way; but the Queen and *Barnagais* hit it better, taking up a Mountain. *D. Christopher* wandring with his Companions, fell into the hands of the Enemy, who carried him to the Tyrant, who coveted no greater Prize. The Victors cruelly run, hewing those that had any Life left them, which moved one to set fire to a quantity of Powder that was in one of the Queens Tents, and blew up all that were about it.

9. The King overjoyed that *D. Christopher* was taken, caused him to be brought to his presence, and said, *What would you have done with me, had I been defeated?* He Answered: *I would cut off your Head, and divide your Body, and the Limbs should be set up in Publick places for a Terrour to other Tyrants.* The King caused him to be buffeted with his Slaves Buskins, his Body to be bathed in melted Wax, and his Beard wove with waxed Threads, which were fired, and he led through the Army. Being brought back, the King himself cut off his Head; his Body was quartered and set upon Poles. It is said, Where the Head fell there gushed out a Spring, the Water whereof drank cured many Diseases: The same hour, the Air being calm, a Tree was tore out by the Roots in the Garden of certain Religious Men; and afterwards the same Hour the Emperour having vanquished this Tyrant, caused his Head to be struck off; the Tree that was then dry, re-planted it self in the same place, and was covered with Leaves.

10. Most of the Portugueses that were taken, perished in Slavery or Dungeons. *Alfonso Chaldeira*, with Thirty, followed the Queen. *Emanuel de Cuna*, with Forty, got to *Barnagasso*, and was well received. Others followed the Patriarch; they made up in all One hundred and thirty: Whereof Ninety (because *Cuna* with his Forty Men were too far off) went to the Emperour, who then drew near, and very much lamented

mented the slaughter of that Body, and loss of such a Commander. What those Portugueses did in the Service of that Prince afterwards, does not belong to this place; because the Affairs of *India*, whence we have made a long digression call upon us.

## C H A P. X.

*The End of the Government of D. Stephen de Gama.*

1. **T**HE Governour *D. Stephen* perceiving the Ships from *Portugal* stayed long, and guessing they were at *Mozambique*, resolved to make use of the Merchandize they brought. To this purpose he sent *Luis de Mendez*, to *Vasconcelos*, in a Galley, to give Orders about it, and to Advertize him, Whether a Successor was sent him in those Ships. He guessed not ill; for *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* sent to succeed him with five Ships, was detained at *Mozambique* by the Weather, and a tedious Sickness.

2. This Fleet was happy, in that it brought over to *India* one of the first Fathers of the Society of *Jesus*; as well in respect of Time, as that he was one of the Chief in Piety and Virtue. This was  
the

the Famous *St. Francis Xaverius*, who laboured much, and was very successful in converting those Infidels.

3. *St. Francis* was the first that had in the East, the Dignity of *Apostolick Legate* in all *Asia*. But because we shall hereafter have occasion to touch upon his great Virtues, and wonderful Actions, let this suffice here as to the time of his coming.

4. Most of them that enter upon the Government of *India*, look upon it as no small happiness, if they can send off their Predecessor with Disgrace, and therefore endeavour to come upon them by way of surprize. *Martin Alfonso* desiring to compass that, commanded *Lewis Mendez* not to acquaint *D. Stephen*, that he had found him at *Mozambique*. But *Mendez*, who was *D. Stephens* Kinsman, and resolved to do his Duty, sent a man to carry him Advice. *Martin Alfonso* heard of it, and imprisoned him. He met with bad Weather in his Way to *Goa*, and light upon *James Suarez de Melo*, called the *Gallego*, who flying a Sentence of Death he had incurred, was passed to *India*, and with 120 Men in two Vessels, was become a Pyrat. Him *Martin Alfonso* received and pardoned, because he pretended he could say much against *D. Stephen*. Much he might have said that was honourable, very little to his Discredit. What ought to have procured him severer Punishment, was the cause of his favourable Reception. Let us remember this *Suarez*, endeavouring to Rise more than was due to him,

him, by these hellish Contrivances; and we shall hereafter see him rise to the highest pitch, and then cast down to the depth of Misery.

5. *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* being come to an Anchor in the Port of *Goa*, sent Advice of his Arrival to *D. Stephen* at a very unreasonable Hour, being the dead of Night, and that in such manner as well signified the Ill-will he bore him. Which obliged *D. Stephen* to send an Answer unworthy of them both, and to make him a very uneasy Visit, when he resigned up the Government to him. *Martin Alfonso* found nothing to lay to the Charge of *D. Stephen*, as those desired, who set him upon it; for he being a Gentleman of much Honour, could never desire it of himself.

6. But whereas he ought to have checked himself, finding nothing against him, he grew the more obstinate: For it is Natural to men in the wrong to persist, and believe they take Wing when they are deepest stuck in the Mire. He vented his Malice in allowing him the worst Conveniences for his Voyage, and *D. Stephen* was so disgusted at these Proceedings, that he never saw his Face after he resigned the Sword to him. At length he Arrived in *Portugal*; for his Enemies had no power on the Seas and Winds, and was received with general Joy of the Court, and with Favour by the King; who offering him a Wife, he refused her, and thereupon (as others for Accepting) was put out of Favour. He

F

obtained

obtained leave, and went to live at *Venice*; for *Portugal* was always ready to despise or banish Great Men. The Emperour *Charles* the Fifth persuaded him to return to his Country, assuring him of his Prince's Favour. He returned and found none; for Princes are more fixed in punishing a little omitted to please, than in rewarding much done to serve them.

7. This is what *D. Stephen* did in *India*; this the Reward he had for Governing it well. He was of a middle Stature, thick and strong, a thick Beard and black Hair, his Complexion ruddy. He was very Liberal, and not a little Positive, but not without cause: A great Horseman. In the number of Governours the Twelfth, first of the Name, second of the Sirname, and held it two years and a Month. He made an Inventory of what he was worth when he entred upon the Government, and so when he left it, and was found 40000 Crowns the worse, the full Value having been 200000. On his Tomb is only this Epitaph, *HE THAT MADE KNIGHTS ON MOUNT SINAI ENDED HERE.* So much did he value the Honour of that Action, and not without Reason.

## C H A P. XI.

*The Government of Martin Alfonso de Sousa, from the Year 1542, till the Year 1545, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

I. **T**His Chapter must begin with what hapned in the time of both Governours, one ending and the other commencing. *Homaum Paxa*, King of the Mogols prosecuting his Ambitious Designs of enlarging his Empire, undertook the Conquest of the Kingdom of *Patane*, then possessed by *Xa Holan*, whom Fortune had once much favoured, and now seemed to neglect. Nothing withstood the Mogol, till he came to the City *Xamanea*, before which he sat down. His Enemy encamped a League off on the other side of *Ganges*, and entertained him with continual Skirmishes, generally with equal Loss. *Homaum* still pressed, and *Holon* despairing of removing him by open Force, had recourse to Stratagem, wherein he was singular. He endeavoured to protract the Time the best he could, till the Season that *Ganges* overflows, which generally drowns all the Plain for the space of eight Leagues. Mean while he dug vast Ponds to receive the

River, and then dammed it up; and as the Floods began to swell he broke the Damms, which caused the Waters to spread abroad with the greater violence. Thus all on a sudden, when the Mogol least thought of it, they gushed out upon his Army, and before he imagined it swallowed up 50000 of his Men, and an infinite quantity of Baggage.

2. *Homaum*, by the help of a Carrier, escaped upon a Mule; and the Queen, who was with Child, on an Elephant. The Queen was delivered of a Daughter, and fearing her Husband should hate her because it was not a Son, she changed it for one the Wife of a *Cornaca* had then brought forth. *Cornaca's* are the Men that govern the Elephants. Some said the Child, thought to be changed, was got on the Queen by the *Cornaca*, there being a suspicion he had had to do with her upon the Elephant. There is no need of disputing the Possibility of the thing; for on the Elephants are Castles, those Castles loansom, and Solitude and Idleness produce wanton Thoughts. Queens are Women, and Women have ready Wits. However it was, *Homaum* esteemed the Son as his own, and he was called *Gelaldim Hacbar*. As to his person, he was more like the *Cornaca*, than *Homaum*; but the Endowments of his Mind were equal with the Greatest of Men. This Prince, when he came to the Crown, being offended at the Innundations of *Ganges*, prevented them by drawing it into several Chan-

Channels, and built there a Palace of such Wonderful structure, that Ten thousand Men spent Thirty years in the Work. *Hommaum* being come to the City *Delhi*, cloathed the Carryer in Royal Robes, entertaining him with a splendid Train, and made him sit three days in the Regal Throne; during which time he enjoyed the whole Revenue of the Crown, and had the full power of Government. From this time forward a Mule was stamped upon all his Coyn, that even the Beast might not pass unrewarded.

3. About the same time *Antony de Mota*, *Francis Zeymoto*, and *Antony Peixoto*, sailing for *China*, were thrown by a Storm among the Islands of *Nipongi*, or *Nifon*; by the Chineses called *Gipon*, and by us *Japan*. In one of these they were well received, and had the Honour to be the first that discovered them, though accidentally. They lye far Eastward of all *India*, opposite to *China*, between 30 and 40 Degrees of North Latitude. They are many; the Principal, *Nipongi*, or *Japan*, in which is the City *Meaco*, the Imperial Court. According to the Natives, the Length of the Island is 366 Leagues, according to our computation One hundred less: It is divided into Fifty six Governments. The Chief Islands about it are *Cikoko*, *Tokoefi*, *Sando*, *Sifime*, *Bacasa*, *Vuoqui*, *Taquixima* and *Firando*. The *Japans* have the vain Pride to esteem themselves descended from the Gods. They say a great Giant made the World of a Cocks Egg,

Egg, and of the Earthly part a Woman, who engendring with a Crocodile brought forth a Man, from whom they descend. And the Family of the *Conguis* among them to this day wear Tails like those of Crocodiles hanging at their Breeches in token, they are the immediate Line. The truth is, they are descended from a Chinese Prince, who being banished passed thither; but they are so vain, they would rather descend from a Cock and a Crocodile, than from the Chinese. In Matters of Religion they have several Sects: That of the *Xexuni*, who deny the Immortality of the Soul, and is followed by the Nobility; it is not only in *Japan* they follow it: That of the *Foc-cenxuni*, who adore the Sun, and allow a Second Life: The *Xodexuni*, that adore the Idol which they think saves them, if they name it: That of *Xocoxu*, who believe there is a Reward for the Good, and Punishment for the Wicked, and is followed by the Country People: That of *Xamabuxe*, the Professors whereof adore the Devils, and converse with them so familiarly, that when one would be Revenged of another, he orders them to enter into him; they call them with a Horn. Their Priests are called *Bonzes*: But above all they adore an Idol called *Seuto*, who lives in Heaven, and is the beginning of all things. Parricide and Treason, they hold as sins that cannot be forgiven. Pity this Doctrin should not be held among those that pretend to be Christians.

4. *Fernan Mendez Pinto*, in his Travels, appropriates this Discovery to himself; Saying, *He came to the Island Tanixuma* (which I suppose to be *Taquixima*, one of those about *Japan*) *with his two Companions Christopher Borallo and James Zeimoto*; not by way of Shipwreck; but designedly, in the Service of a Pyrat, who had taken them up when cast away. Both Relations mention three Names, one of them is the same in both, and both agree upon the same Year 1542. I will say something I find in that Author, because it is rare and worthy Admiration.

5. *Nautaquim* was then Prince of that Island; and seeing the three Portugueses he stood amazed, and uttered these mysterious words: *Let me dye, if these* (meaning the Portugueses) *be not the Chinchicogies our ancient Records speak of, who flying over the Waters, shall come to be Lords of the Lands where God placed the greatest Riches of the World; and it will be very fortunate for us, if they come as Friends. Let us return to India.*

6. The first thing the Governour did, was lessening the Souldiers pay; for saving of Charges is a great means to gain the Favour of Princes: And Ministers never express their Zeal, by retrenching their own large Allowances; but by cutting off the small ones of the Poor. This caused great Discontent among the Commonalty. However Two thousand Men were raised, and imbarqued in Seventy Vessels of several

forts, with which the Governour set out for *Batecala*, a City seated on the Banks of a River upon the Coast of *Canara*, well built and encompassed with a fruitful Country. The occasion of this Voyage, That the Queen refused to pay her Tribute, and entertained Pyrats in her Port to the detriment of the Publick.

7. The Fleet entred the Port, and the Queen seeing so great a force, and that the Governour demanded the Tribute, and delivery of the Pyrats Ships that had retired thither and fortified themselves; she designed to hold him in hand till the time came he must go to *Cochin*. This Artifice was soon disappointed; for he Landéd with Twelve hundred Men in two Battalions, the Command of one he gave to *Ferdinand de Sousa* and *Tavora*, and ordered Twenty light Vessels to go up the River and attack the City by Sea. The Governour marching through a Wood, was met by a Body of Musqueteers: Our Men made no halt, but drove them before to the Gates, and entred with them, not without great opposition, the Queen her self with much Bravery encouraging her Men. A Portugues Souldier being beset by Two hundred of the Enemy bravely defended himself, till another envious of that Honour came up to him, and both Back to Back kept their Ground; at length a Party of our Men, fell upon the Enemy, and with great slaughter of them rescued the two.

8. It was Night when our Men possessed themselves of the City. In the Morning they not only plundered the Portugueses that were there; but falling out about the Booty had such a Battle among themselves, that all were hurt, and none enriched. The Enemy who perceived this from a Hill, pours in a shower of Arrows; the Governour Orders all to march to Revenge it; but those who are grieved by the lessening their Pay, Answer, *That the Gentlemen who are Rich may march; for they only came to make up by Plunder what they are unjustly deprived of.* Garcia de Sa went out with a few Lances, and after some Retreats reciprocally on both sides, almost all the Portugueses were put to shameful flight, running to their Ships in such haste that some were drowned.

9. The Governour hearing this, run to them with Reproaches, crying out, *He did not know them, and thought they were not the same he left two years before in India.* This seemed a Reflection upon his Predecessor; but they with as loud Voices undeceived him, Answering, *That the Men were the same, but the Governour was not; that this was the fruit of lessening their Pay, to give Gratuities to those who knew better how to beg, than deserve them.* He retired to the Ships, and resolved the next day to burn the City, and destroy the Country. The City run with the Blood of all Living Creatures of both Sexes, and all Ages, before it was burnt; then the Country was laid waste, and all the

the Woods cut down. This caused such a general Terrour, that whereas before throughout *India*, it was commonly said, *Beware of Batecala*; they afterwards changed it to *Beware of Martin Alfonso*. The Queen no longer able to resist, submitted, and purchased Peace with a heavier Subjection; for generally they draw on themselves a greater burden, who proudly throw off that they have.

10. *Martin Alfonso* abhorred that so many Men quitting the Service, turned Merchants; to prevent this, and considering the vast Frauds of the Custom-House at *Malaca*, he sent new Orders thither. He lowered the Customs of Strangers to invite them to Trade there, and raised them to the Portugueses, to lessen their desire of Trading thither. The first succeeded well; for the Customs after that amounted to much more than before. The second took no effect. Much of the same nature was what he did at *Ormuz*, and therefore we will mention it in this place. That King was in Arrears for Tribute Five hundred thousand Ducats, which he refused not to pay, but was not able; for from Twelve thousand that *Albuquerque* at first imposed on him it was raised to almost One hundred thousand; so that the King from a Tributary was become a Slave, not having a competent Maintenance left him. *Martin Alfonso* finding he was not able to pay the Debt, proposed to him to make over the Customs for payment: He to be rid of Oppression,

pression submitted, and as before he was a King without a Revenue, now he had some he seemed no King; for the Custom-House is the support of that Crown. No doubt it was a Judgment for the Wickednesses of the Portugueses, in taking from that King what was his due, that the Persians, whose it had been, should take it from them. The oppressed King making Virtue of Necessity, resigned his Crown with Praises of him that took it from him; for the Instrument began with these vain Preambles: *I command all to obey this Supream Instrument, that it may be understood that between me and my Lord (meaning King John the Third) who in greatness reaches to Heaven, and has Power over all the circumference of the Earth, and in Grandeur is equal to the King of China, Great King of Justice (as if any Justice were now done him) Greatest of all Kings in the World; Key of the Treasure that is on Earth, that is, Vertue and Nobility, of whom is learnt the Wisdom of Reigning, brightness of the Sea of Kingdoms, &c.* Could any man wronged flatter him, that injured him more? It is certain, He who gave the Praises, deserved them better than he that received them.

## C H A P. XII.

*Continues the Government of Martin Alfonso de Soufa.*

1. **A** Bout the End of this Year arrived in *India* four Ships from *Portugal*; another came out with them, but was put back. At the same time *D. George*, Commander of *Ternate*, was at Variance with the Spaniards, who under *Ruy Lopez de Villalobos* had invaded the Portugues Bounds. *Villalobos* was at *Zagala*, a Town of *Camaso*, inhabited by Renegado Christians, and from thence held Correspondence with the King of *Gilolo*. *D. George* protested against him, for intruding into what he had no right to, according to the late Capitulations. He sometimes Answered, He was forced thither by Storm: Otherwhiles, That he was within the Limits of *Spain*. *D. George* sent *Jayme Lobo* with 50 Men in two Galiots, believing this a sufficient Force, because the Spaniards were spent with Misfortunes. He had Orders to assist *Geliato de Gomo Conora*, who besieged a Fort of his own that was in Rebellion. *Jayme* went to *Momoya*, where he gathered many of the Natives, then Christians, and passed over in *Parao's*, which Landing they took up and carried about half a League to a Lake, there launched

launched them again, and wafted over to the Fort *Geliato*, besieged. The Enemy seeing the Portugues Relief, offered to Capitulate; but the Portugueses, covetous of Plunder, refused. The Morning appearing, they could not Land but man by man, and that in several places; which the besieged perceiving, fell upon those who were ashoar, and with considerable damage forced them back to their Vessels. The Enemy had Hooks hanging at their Arms, one stuck in the Face of a Souldier, which drew him along till another came and with his Dagger cut it out. *D. George* sent 30 Men to the Relief of these, who found near the Lake three Portugueses set upon Poles. *Jayne* returns to the Fort; which the besieged abandoned, and it was dismantled.

2. Being able to do nothing against the Spaniards, he returned to *Ternate*. *Villalobos* went over to *Gilolo*, was well received by the King, fortified himself, and sent a Messenger to *D. George*, to tell him, *He was within the Spanish Bounds, and demand restitution of the Artillery he had taken, and the Spaniards that were with him.* *D. George* granted the last, and sent Advice to *Goa* and *Portugal*. *Villalobos* dexterously began to draw near, and plant himself in *Tidore*.

3. *Jordan de Freitas* set out from *Goa* in *April*, to succeed *D. George* in that Command, and take possession of the Island *Amboyna*, whereof he had a Grant from *Tabarija* King  
of

of *Ternate*, who had been unjustly sent Prisoner to *Goa* by *Tristan de Atayde*, was there Baptized, and now sent back by the Governour *Martin Alfonso* to be restored to his Crown. *Freytas* being come to *Malaca*, and considering that King would not be easily admitted by his Subjects, for having changed his Religion, left him there, designing to take his Brother, which would make his Re-inthronement the more easie. At *Ternate*, *D.George* delivered him the Fort; he Treated with *Villalobos*, and they agreed upon a Truce for eight Months, in which time they might consult their Superiours; and during this time there was to be no Correspondence between them. The Spaniards fell out among themselves in such manner, that many of them went over to the Portugueses at *Ternate*. *F. Hierome* of *St.Stephen*, Confessor to *Villalobos*, affirmed, He was Excommunicated for entring the Portugues Limits; but he remained obstinate.

4. *Freytas*, sent along with *D.George*, who was going to *Goa*, *Aeiro* the present King, to make room for him he had left at *Malaca*, not knowing he was since dead, and had made the King of *Portugal* his Heir. His Mother and Father-in-Law, who had been with him, went to *Ternate* with *Ferdinand de Sousa*, who carried Reliet to that Fort. *Freytas* received them in Mourning, and then took possession of the Kingdom, the Government whereof he committed to the Father-in-Law and Mother, till other Orders

Orders came from *Portugal*. Afterwards the Governour *D. John de Castro* sent back *Aeiro* with the Title of KING, to prevent the Disorders that happen by many Heads. This last belongs to the Year 1545; but I insert it here, not to break the Series of these Affairs.

5. About this time in *Ethiopia*, the Emperour marched against the King of *Adel*, or *Zeila*. He was followed by the Portugueses who escaped the former Defeat, except 40 who were with *Emanuel de Cuna* in *Barnagasso*, who being sent for could not come time enough. Those with the Emperour were Ninety, by whose Advice he marched towards the Enemy, giving them the Van of his Army, for the great Opinion he had of their Valour. In the Province *Ambea*, at the Foot of the Mountain *Oenadias*, they met Seven hundred Horse and Two thousand Foot, led by a Captain of *Zeila*, to joyn the King. Fifty Portugues Horse advanced to attack them, the formost *Antony Cardoso*, who killed the Enemies Captain the first stroak of his Lance; the others following his Example, slew many; when *Barnagais* first, and then the Emperour coming up Charged furiously, and killing Eight hundred put the rest to flight, who went rather to terrifie the Tyrant with this Relation, than Reinforce him.

6. He was a League off with his Army in Battalia; it consisted of two Bodies of Foot, Three thousand Men in each; he marched in the Front with Five hundred Horse.

Horse. The Emperour met him with the like Number, and in the same Order. The Portugueses, who were the Forlorn of this Body, Charged the Five hundred and slew many, losing two. The Emperour in person behaved himself bravely, till the Enemies Horse fled to the Wings of their Army. The King was wanting in nothing, shewing his Son, Ten years of Age, to stir up his Men to fight. The Fight was renewed, and the Emperour in great danger; but a Portugues shooting the King in the Belly killed him, and his Horse carried him about hanging, being tied to the Saddle. Only a few Turks chose rather to dye, than fly, and made a great slaughter of Ethiopians. *John Fernandez*, Page to the Unfortunate *D. Christopher*, at two stroaks of his Lance killed the Turkish Commander. In fine, Few of the Enemy escaped by flight, the King's Head was cut off, and his Son made Prisoner. The Emperour acknowledging how great a share the Portugueses had in this and the late Victories, did them great Favours. *Cuna* returned to *Goa* with 50 only; the rest stayed and married with Women of the Country, whose Progeny still continues there.

1544.

7. At *Goa*, the Governour heard the Complaints of the King of *Ormuz*, brought hither by *D. Pedro de Castellobranco*, by Order of *Martin Alfonso de Melo Jusarte*, Commander of that Fort. The Kings Complaints against him were most just, having been uled as the meanest of Madmen, whereas

whereas his Madness was no other, than the Avarice of those would make him so. They endeavoured all they could to hinder his Restauration; but seeing him Re-inthroned, they poysoned him, and what caused his Imprisonment and was the cause of his death was not punished. After this Injustice followed the Justice executed upon *Hierome Diaz* a Portugues Physician, of Jewish extraction; he was burnt for Heresie.

## C H A P. XIII.

*Continues the Government of Martin Alfonso de Soufa.*

1. **A** Bout forty Leagues off, to the Eastward of the *Moluco* Islands is that of *Macagar*, rich and plentiful of Rice, Salt, Fish, Flesh, Fruit and Grain, and yields Sandal, Wax, Ivory and Gold. The People hardy and good Seamen: The Soil pleasant and well Watered, and has good Towns and Villages. Some Portugueses hearing the Christian Faith was received there, went thither, and among them *Antony de Payva*, that went as a Merchant, not a Preacher; but proved more Preacher than

G

Merchant.

Merchant. He had before had some Discourse with one of the Kings of the Island about Religion, who seemed well pleased therewith. Returning now, he arrived in the Kingdom of *Supa*, and had so much Discourse with that King, who was 70 years of Age, that he was very near being Converted.

2. However, the King remained dubious, and *Payva* sailing thence went to the Port of *Sian*; the King whereof, on account of the grateful Conference they had before, received him with kindness. The Discourse of Religion was renewed, and *Payva* at large explained all Points to him, and at the same time urged the absurdness of the Adoration of Idols.

3. The Conference ended, the Sky till then being serene, there arose a Storm of Thunder, Lightning and Rain, which was esteemed as a Heavenly Confirmation of the Truth of what *Payva* had said; and he laying hold of that advantage, urged the King to embrace the Faith. He was inclinable; but his Subjects, and the Moors that Traded there, obstructed him. He demanded time to Consider. At this time arrives the King of *Supa*, and hearing he of *Sian* had desired time, said, *A work so good ought rather to be put in execution, than delayed; that he was only sorry for the Time he had lost, but would atone by being the first, and desired to be immediately Baptized.* All stood amazed, and there being no Priest, the Ancientest of the Portugueses performed the Function, and

and he was Christened *Luis*. Then the Queen, and many that came with him, were Baptized, which was celebrated with the Guns and Warlike Instruments of both People. He of *Sian* moved by this Example, was Baptized with his whole Family.

4. Mean while the Governour fitted out a Fleet of 45 Sail, in which were Three thousand Seamen and Souldiers. The design was kept secret, and was to rob the Pagod of *Tremele*, which is twelve Miles up the Inland of *St. Thomas Meliapor*, in the Kingdom of *Bisnagar*: For which he had express Orders from King *John*, upon pretence *India* was wasted; as if any pretence could justifie such a Robbery. Nevertheless the Design was discovered, or (as others say) disappointed by contrary Weather; yet the Governour was persuaded to plunder other Pagods, where it was thought there was no less Treasure.

5. He took the Advice; and by the way sent to the King of *Fasanapatan*, in the Island *Ceylon*, either to submit and pay Tribute to the King of *Portugal*, or provide to oppose that Fleet. The King was so unprovided, he thought it a happiness the Governour was so content, and agreed to pay Four thousand Ducats yearly. The King called *Grande*, near *Cape Comors*, for fear, sent him a Present. He went on to the Pagod *Tebelicate*, near *Calecoulam*, notwithstanding we were at Peace with that King, and entred it with a few of his Con-

G 2

fidents;

sidents; they brought two Casks so heavy, they loaded many Men: It was said they carried Water; such as were not easie of belief, affirmed it was pure Gold and Precious Stones. The truth was never known. Some Writings declare, there was only a Pot of Gold found, in which the Idol was bathed, valued Four thousand Crowns, which King *John* Ordered to be restored, much admiring this Action of *Martin Alfonso*, as if it had been a greater Crime to rob at *Tebiliare* without his Order, than at *Tremela* with it. However it was, whilst the Portugueses marched to their Ships, the Pagod and Town flamed, and Two hundred Nayres set out to Revenge this Loss, Commanded by the Keeper of the Pagod. They appeared on an Eminence over our Men, who marched through a *Defilee*, and poured their Shot and Arrows upon them, which killed Thirty. The Governour had been in danger, had he not dismounted. Our Men being got into the open Field, put the Nayres to flight.

6. No danger terrifies Avarice. They went on to another Pagod. Out of it was taken a Chest, which was publickly opened, and some Silver Mony that was in it distributed; but of so little value, that many believed thence proceeded the Liberality. The Governour returned to *Goa*, where four Ships arrived from *Portugal*, soon after his departure, expected him. Five had set out from *Lisbon*, but one was forced back by a Storm.

7. The Governour had not returned so soon to *Goa*, if *D. Garcia de Castro* had not sent to hasten him upon a sudden emergency; which was thus: *Acedecan*, Lord of the Lands about *Goa*, designing to depose *Hidalcan*, prevailed by dint of Presents and Promises with *D. Garcia*, to deliver up to him *Meale Can*, Brother to *Hidalcan*, pretending he held the Kingdom wrongfully. This gave *Hidalcan* just cause of Complaint, and drew on no contemptible danger. The Governour heard both Parties, and though both used equal Arguments, offering equal Advantages to the Crown of *Portugal*; the Governour inclined more to *Acedecan*, who offered the Kingdom of *Concam*, then possessed by *Abraham*, a good Man and our Friend, whose Revenue was above a Million. It was the more valuable for being near *Goa*.

## C H A P. XIV.

*The End of the Government of Martin Alfonso de Sousa, and of the First Part of this Tome.*

1. **T**HE Governour Armed in defence of *Meale*, and to possess him of the Crown *Acedecan* offered him. This was a notorious act of Injustice, and *Martin Alfonso* being led by Interest, and naturally so haughty that none durst Advise him, *Peter de Faria* resolved to do it, encouraged by his Quality, the great Offices he had born, and his great Age, being 80 years Old. Late at Night he repaired to the Governour's Tent, and having prepared him to hear, laid before him all the Motives that could persuade, to desist from so unjust an Undertaking, with much submission, gravity and discretion.

2. *Martin Alfonso* submitted to *Faria's* Reasons. As soon as Day appeared, the Governour pretending other Causes, gave over the Design and returned to the City, securing *Meale Can*. At this time died *Acedecan*, the Promoter of this Discord; and *Hidalcan* came down the Mountain-Gate with a powerful Army, reducing his Rebels, and in few days recovered the Kingdom of *Concam*, which not long before we had hoped

hoped to possess, if not dissuaded by the Experienced *Faria*, to whom *Martin Alfonso* confessed he owed his Life and Honour: For had he gone to *Concham*, it was much to be doubted whether ever he had Returned. *Hidalcan* still fearing *Meale Can*, offered for him, if he were delivered to him, the Lands of *Salsete* and *Bardex*, valued at Fifty thousand Ducats a Year. It had been a breach of Trust, to deliver up a Man that had put himself into our protection. Therefore the Governour Answered; *If what was offered were given, he would send him where he should not disturb Hidalcan.* He admitted this Condition, and performed on his part; but had not entire satisfaction from us; for *Meale* was carried from *Goa* to *Cananor*, and from *Cananor* to *Goa*, in the Eyes of *Hidalcan*, as the Politick said, To keep in Awe; but the State Criticks said, It was a Bait to draw Presents. Some were sent soon after.

3. *Hidalcan* had moreover granted to the Governour upon this Treaty, the vast Treasure *Acedecan* had laid up when he Rebelled, and which at his Death fell into the hands of *Cojecemazadin*, and was worth Ten Millions of Ducats. He persuaded the Governour it was not above a Million, and delivered so much to him. One Record says, He sent almost half of it to *Portugal* in Bars of Gold: Another, That he applied Two hundred and fifty thousand Ducats to the Kings use in *India*; if we may not take into this Account, One hundred thousand given by *Hidalcan* upon the late Accommo-

dation. But if these did make up the Sum, he afterwards discharged a good Conscience, discharging the King of some Debrs.

4. *Hidalcan* gave him Notice of the great Fraud used in delivering the Treasure, persuading him to recover the Remainder of *Cojeçemazadim*, who was at *Cananor*. He used Means to take him; but not succeeding, resolved to endeavour it in person. He fitted out Twenty four great Ships, and many Vessels to row, and without saying any thing what he intended, landed at *Cochin*. Putting to Sea again, he steered several Courses, and Anchored at *Mount Delij*. At Night, without making it known to the Fleet, he went into a Barge with five or six Gentlemen, and ordering three of the lightest Vessels to follow, came with incredible speed to the Fort of *Cananor*, where *James Alvarez Tellez* Commanded. He spoke to him without being known to any other, ordering him to endeavour to secure *Cojeçemazadim*, or *Pocarale Aderrajam*, who Governed him. Then he returned to the Fleet, and with it to *Goa*, all men admiring the Voyage and Preparations, without seeing the Design or Effect of them. *Tellez* could not take *Zemazadim*, for he was upon his Guard; but he ordered *Henry de Sousa*, Commander in Chief of *Malabar*, to take *Pocarale*. He attempted it, and many coming in to his Relief, *Pocarale* and a Brother of his were both killed. This enflamed the King and People against the Fort, and though they were

were appeas'd, yet the Hatred to the Portugueses for this Action was not extinguish'd; but rais'd one of the greatest Storms we weathered in *India*.

5. The King of *Xiraz*, caus'd some Disturbance at *Ormuz*, appearing in the Neighbourhood with a considerable Power; but he soon drew off, coming to Agreement with that King. Sultan *Mamud*, King of *Cambaya*, aim'd at the Recovery of *Diu*, not forgetting the Death of his Uncle *Badur*, and being troubled to have us so near Neighbours. One of the dishonourable Articles of Peace, which the Vice-Roy *D. Garcia* had admitted was, That the Kings Subjects might build a Wall between their Town and our Fort. The Wall was raising, and displeas'd *Emanuel de Sousa* and *Sepulveda*, who commanded there, because it look'd like somewhat more than a bare Partition, which was the true intent of the Articles. He fortified himself, then beat off the Workmen, threw down the Wall, and made use of the Materials. The King was heinoussly offended, and at the instigation of his great Subject *Coje Zofar*, he began secretly to stir up that Great Part of the World, with Letters to the several Princes, to unite and expel the Portugues, not only *Diu*, but all *Asia*.

6. Let us see what hapned while this Storm was rising. *Hidalcan* press'd the Governour, either to restore what he had given him on that score, or else to send away *Mealecan*. The Governour endeavour'd  
to

to please him with Artifice, rather than Performance, and to this effect sent *John Fernandez de Negreyros* Embassadour to him. Him, and all the Portugueses that were in his Court, the King put in Prison, keeping them as Hostages for the performance of what was before agreed, and now demanded. This was a great Provocation to the hot Nature of *Martin Alfonso*; but submitting to Necessity, he began to appease *Hidalcan*, assuring him, That as soon as the Season would permit, *Meale* should be sent to *Malaca*. Three Ships Arrived now from *Portugal* of five that sailed thence; one was forced back, and another Cast-away on the Coast of *Melinde*, the Men saved.

7. This Year the *Tartar* entred *China*, and besieged *Peking*. A great part of his numerous Army, which consisted of almost Millions of Men, Threescore thousand of them Horse, marched to the City *Quamsi* and plundered it, killing above Threescore thousand persons of all Sexes and Ages, and then went on towards *Peking*. By the way, the Fort *Nixiancoo* defended it self so bravely, that the General *Nanticor* thought it impregnable, having lost Three thousand Men before it. Among the Prisoners taken at *Quamsi* were Nine Portugueses, one of them called *George Mendez*, offered, if he might have his and his Companions Liberty, to put him in a way to take the Fort. The General admitted the Proposal, and by this Man's Advice took it with the slaughter of above Two thousand Chineses and Mogols. He

He went on to *Peking*, and in pursuance of his Promise obtained of his Prince the Portugueses Liberty, and did them great Honours, endeavouring with large Gifts to detain them in his Service. *George Mendez* stayed, and was afterwards allowed a Pension of Six thousand Ducats. These Accidents often cause the Portugueses in *Asia*, to forget their Country and sometimes their Religion. This was when they came to *Tuymican*, the Tartar's Court, whither he retired after the raising the Siege of *Peking*, which lasted almost seven Months, with the Loss of Four hundred and fifty Thousand Men, most destroyed by Pestilence, besides Three hundred thousand that deserted to the Chineses.

8. Four small Vessels, with One hundred Portugueses in them, cruised upon the Coast of *Tanauzarim*, and were much dreaded, having (among other Prizes) taken three great Ships. The Maritim Towns complained to their Sovereign, the King of *Siam*; and he sent out against them *Heredim Mabomet*, a Turk, with a Royal Galley, four Galliots, and five other Vessels that Rowed, in which were Eight hundred Men, Three hundred of them Janizaries, the rest Turks, Greeks, Achems, Malabars and Mogols; all brave Men. A poor King of the Neighbouring Island, *Pulobinor*, who was newly Converted, gave our Men notice of the Danger. They left the Port and run up a Creek, both because it was more hid, and for that at the Mouth  
of

1545.

of it were some Ruins, that might serve instead of a Fort, to defend themselves. The Turk missing them in the Port, thought they were fled to some of the Neighbouring Islands, and sent the Ships and Gallions in search of them, staying behind with only the Galley. They who were upon the Watch, fell upon the Galley at Night, and destroyed Three hundred Men that were in her, and the Admiral, with loss of only One Man. Of the other Nine Vessels, three were Cast-away and six were taken by our Men, with great slaughter of the Enemy, and only two killed on our side.

9. The Governour dispatched the homeward bound Trading Ships, whereof one was Cast-away at *Zanzibar*. Those from *Portugal* arrived in *India*, and brought him a Successor, which he so earnestly desired, that a few days before being at Mass with *James Silveyra*, who was coming for *Portugal*; he said to him at the Elevation of the Host; *Speak to the King, to send one to succeed me, for I dare not Govern India, because Men are so changed from Truth and Honour: Or else I swear by that Sacred Host, and by the true Body of Christ I behold in it with the Eyes of Faith, That I will open the Patents of Succession, and resign the Government to whoever is named therein; and desire his Highness, not to expose such a Subject as I am, to the danger of having his Head cut off.* This was the Condition of *India*, almost past hope of Recovery: For if the Governour was tolerable, those that were governed were intol-

intollerable; and the contrary. *Martin Alfonso* had served well in *Brasile* and *India*, in other Posts. He was Violent in his Undertakings, a great discoverour of Mens Humours, and knew better than many to save what was superfluous, and spend what was necessary. He instituted those Officers of the King's Revenue, that are called *Surveyors*, in *India*. He was of a handfom and large Stature, his Complexion white, his Beard Chestnut-colour. He Governed three years and four Months; was the 13<sup>th</sup> had the Title of *Governour*, and first of the Name.

The End of the First PART  
of the Second Tome.

---

T H E

*Portugues A S I A.*

T O M. II. P A R T II.

C H A P. I.

*The Government of D. John de Castro, from the Tear 1545, till the Tear 1548, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

I. **A**BOUT the latter end of *August*, 1545, or beginning of *September*, Arrived at *Goa* six Ships from *Portugal*, Commanded by *Don John de Castro*, who went to Ease *Martin Alfonso* of the Government. Immediately (as is Customary in *India*) Complaints were carried to the New Governour against the Old.  
The

The chief, the Crying-down the Value of Money ; which was immediately restored to its former Value. This gave occasion to *Martin Alfonso* to go away dissatisfied , and the other to remain so upon the manner of his Discontent, falling out after having very well agreed. These Governours, and their Governments, seem to resemble the Soul and Body, which never part without great struglings.

2. *Don John* began his Government as is usual, sending Commanders and Officers to several Forts and Towns. *Bernardin de Sousa* went to succeed *Jurdan de Freytas*, at *Ternate*, carrying with him the King *Aeiro*, to hold that Crown till other Orders came from *Portugal*, it being left to our King by the deceased *Tabarija*, as was said before. *Ferdinand de Sousa & Tavora*, who was sent against the Spaniards, Commanded by *Villalobos*, reduced him to a necessity of surrendering himself, and continuing at *Ternate* till the Season of sailing for *India*, where he and his Men might either remain in the Portugues Service, or return in their Ships to *Europe*. This Difficulty surmounted, *Sousa* resolved to take Revenge of *Catabruno*, King of *Gilolo*, for the Injuries he did the Portugueses and New Converts since he Tyrannically usurped the Crown, killing his Lawful Sovereign.

3. *Sousa* consulted his own Men, and the new Guests, who approved of his Resolution, and *Villalobos* offered to bear him Company. They made up Four hundred Spani-

Spaniards and Portugueses, and Fifteen hundred Ternatenses. Coming to an Anchor in the Port, they found the Tyrant ready to receive them, well fortified and provided with Cannon. The Christians began to batter them; but received more damage than they did. *Sousa* perceiving there was no way, but by giving an Assault, gave the first of the Attack to *John Galvan* and *Bernard de la Torre*, the first a Portugues, the other a Spaniard, who sticking in the Thorns the Tyrant had designedly strewed about, and scarce able to move, stood as a Mark to the Enemies Bullets and Arrows. *Catabruno* Charges them with Three thousand Men. *Sousa* comes to their Relief, and the Fight was desperate; for both Spaniards and Portugueses did Wonders. Night parted, and Morning brought them together; the Dispute was hot, till *Galvan* being killed his Men were put in disorder; all our Body came to their Relief, and brought them off, forcing the Enemy to retire to their Works. Our Captain seeing no likelyhood of prevailing, returned to *Ternate*; whence he went to *India* with the Spaniards, as had been Agreed, only *Villalobos* excepted, who died in the Fort.

4. *Coje Zofar*, at *Cambaya*, now his Princes Favourite, kept a fair Correspondence with the Portugueses; but with the natural Perfidiousness of a Moor. He persuaded the King a second time to endeavour the shaking off the Yoak of the Fort of *Dis*, and to this effect drew together a great

Number of Men; yet had more hopes to succeed by Policy, than strength. He agreed with an Infamous Portugues, called *Ruy Freyre*, to poyson the Cistern, fire the Magazine, and upon a Sign given admit him into the Fort. An Ethiopian, a Turk and a Woman Slave, discovered the Treachery. *Coje Zofar* was astonished to see his Design discovered, and began to Complement *D. John Mascarenhas*, Commander of the Fort; pleading, That the Cause of breaking the Peace had been, because they obstructed building that Wall, which *D. Garcia de Noronha* had so weakly allowed, and *Emanuel de Sousa* had couragiously beat down. *Coje Zofar* dissembled while he gathered a great Power, and *D. John* perceiving the Danger that threatned him, prepared to meet it, and gave Advice thereof to the Governour and Neighbouring Commanders.

5. A considerable number of Men was already drawn together in the City *Diu*, and among them Five hundred Turks, sent from *Mecha* by the King of *Zibit*. *D. John* assigned every Man his Post, and placed an Officer with 30 Men in each of the four Bastions; his Lieutenant over the Gate with Twenty, another with the like Number in a small Work; reserving Fifty for himself to be wherever the greatest Danger called. This was the Number of Men he had, and thus ordered, when *Coje Zofar* came on with all his Power, resolving to attack the Bastion of the Sea, with three Castles built upon a Ship of prodigious bigness,

bigness, well stored with Cannon to batter the Wall. Within the Castles were Two hundred Turks, who were to distract the Defendants by pouring in continually all sorts of Artificial Fire-works. This Design succeeded not, for our Commander having notice of it, sent *Jacome Leite* to burn that Ship. He took twenty Men in two Vessels, and though he set out by Night, was discovered; yet did not desist, but courageously went on and set fire to it; then retiring, saw a great part of it fly into the Air, with most of the Turks, the Remainder casting such a Flame, as at a distance discovered the Enemies Army running in Battalions to quench the Fire. *Jacome* seeing them in Clusters, let fly his Cannon and killed many of them. In this Action he had seven Men wounded. He went on to the Mouth of the River, and took from the Enemy some Vessels of Provision, with which he returned to the Fort, much admired of all.

6. *Coje Zofar* began to build the Wall, that had been before beat down, which could not be hindred, though our Cannon killed many of the Workmen; but was brought to such perfection, that he planted thereon Sixty great Cannon, besides many small, and one of such extraordinary bigness, that it shook the whole Island, and made pieces of the Fort fly; it was managed by an expert French Renegado. At this time arrived *D. Ferdinand de Castro*, Son to the Governour, sent by him with some

Relief of Men. *Mascarenbas* wanted some Intelligence from the Enemies Camp. *James de Anaya Coutino*, a Gentleman of Note and Man of great strength, knowing of it, at Night putting a Helmet on his Head, with a Sword by his side and Spear in his Hand, let himself down the Wall, and lying close at some distance from the Fort, discovered two Moors, who being come up to him, he killed the one with the Spear, and taking up the other in his Arms run with him to the Gate of the Fort, and calling threw him in, to the great admiration of those that beheld it. This was much; but what follows is more: He had borrowed the Helmet he carried, and promised on the word of a Gentleman to restore it, or dye. In this Scuffle it fell off, and he mist it not till the Owner asked for it. He said nothing; but letting himself off the Wall again, went to look for, found and restored it. Nothing could be more brave; nothing more honourable.

7. The King came from *Champanel* with Ten thousand Horse, to see (as *Coje Zofar* said) that place taken. This caused an extraordinary Motion in the Army, and *D. John* desired to know the cause of it. Six of our Men sallied out at Night and fell among sixty Moors, who were all asleep, whereof they killed some, and the rest waking at the Noise, as also some that were not far off, our Men were forced to retire, leaving two dead; the four brought a Prisoner with them, who informed our Commander

mander of what he desired. This Action incensed the King and *Coje Zofar*, so that they renewed the fury of their Batteries, and did much harm. The Renegado Frenchman was struck dead by a chance Dart, and the Gunner who succeeded him being Ignorant, did more harm to his own Party, than to us, which was some Revenge. All the Neighbourhood resounded with the Noise of the Cannon and Cries of dying Men, when a Bullet of ours falling in the Kings Tent, sprinkled him with the Blood of one of his Favourites who was near him, and beaten to pieces. This so terrified the King, that he instantly fled, leaving the Command of the Horse to *Juzarcan*, a Valiant Ethiopian.

8. *Coje Zofar* pressed the Besieged, and there was great slaughter and destruction on both sides; the more visible and dangerous in the Fort, by reason of its little Compass, and the small number of Men. *Mascarenas* appeared wherever there was danger, as hoping to gain no less Honour than *Antony de Silveyra* had done there a few years before. He was no less Fortunate in couragous Women; for those that were in the Fort encouraged the Men; assisted and relieved them at the work. And when the Turks entred the Wallis, one of them hearing they were got into a House, run in with a Spear and fought till *Mascarenas* came and put them all to the Sword.

9. *Coje Zofar* omitted nothing that could be devised to fill the Ditches, and lay open the Fort. All industry was used on our side to repair the Breaches. The prime Gentry did the Duties of private Souldiers and Mafons, the Walls and Bastions were ruined at Night, and repaired by Morning. *Coje Zofar* was astonish'd to see all he destroy'd restored. Coming on in a Rage with fresh Men, a Cannon Ball took off his Head and right Hand, whereon he leaned it. Thus he fulfilled his Mothers Prediction, who being at *Otranto*, still persuaded him to be reconciled to the Church, and perceiving she prevailed not, superscribed her Letters to him thus: *To Coje Zofar my Son, at the Gates of Hell.* His Son *Rumecan* succeeded him as well in Wickedness, as the ardent desire of taking that Fort. He took upon him his Father's Command, and inherited his Fortune. Our Commander was obliged to send fresh Advice to the Governour at *Goa*, and the Captains of the Neighbouring places. A Priest was the Messenger, who run very great danger, the Sea at that time being scarce Navigable. But then *Portugal* had some *Decij*, and some *Reguli*: Now it has only the grief of wanting them.

## C H A P. II.

*Continues the Government of D. John de Castro, and Siege of Diu.*

1. **R**umecan now gives a General Assault, he and *Juzarcan* attack the Bastions of *St. John* and *St. Thomas*, where they found a most vigorous Resistance, and so many were killed that the Defendants seemed rather a raging Plague, than Men. Yet at length, Valour was forced to give way to Numbers, and the Enemy mounted *St. Thomas's* Bastion: But Despair administering Fury rather than Valour, the few Portugueses rush upon the multitude of Enemies, and making a wonderful slaughter, throw head-long from the Wall such as had escaped the Sword, so that the Dead lay in heaps.

2. *Rumecan* thinking *Mahomets* displeasure was the cause of this Misfortune, spent this Night in Prayers and Processions. In the Morning, thinking he had attoned, he renewed the Assault: After mounting the two Bastions he was forced to retire, having lost almost Two thousand Men, and among them the Ethiopian *Juzarcan*, General of the Horse: An Uncle of his of the same Name succeeded him. In this Action seven Portugueses were lost. Several other Assaults

were given with like Success. In one of these the Fire was so close and furious, that several who were clad in Cotton, which soon took flame, ran and dipt themselves in the Water, and so returned to their Posts. Those who wore Skins escaped better. Our Commander taking notice of this, caused some gilt Leather, wherewith his Rooms were hung, to be made into Coats for the Souldiers. Another time *D. John* and *D. Peter de Almeyda*, with One hundred Men, sallied to destroy a Mount raised by the Enemy to over-look the Fort, and effected it, killing Three hundred Moors. *Martin Botello* another time went out with Ten Men, to take some Body to give Intelligence; and falling upon Eighteen put them to flight all, except a bold *Nubij*, who standing all the Eleven, wrestled with *Botello*; and he finding it hard to overcome him whilst he could touch the ground with his Feet, like another *Hercules* with *Anseus*, ran with him in his Arms to the Fort.

3. The Attacks were still renewed, the Defendants spent with Labour, and above all with Hunger, feeding even upon nauseous Vermin. A Crow taken upon the dead Bodies was a Dainty for the Sick and sold for five Crowns, the Ammunition was almost spent, and now the Enemy gives a hot Assault with fresh Men, Ten thousand having newly joyned them. They entred *St. John's* Bastion, and retired. Scarce had they left it, when it blew up, and in it 73 of our Men, ten whereof came down alive.

alive. *James de Sotomayer* fell into the Fort with a Spear in his hand; a Souldier in the same manner fell among the Enemies, and was killed by them. It was no Fable, that Armed Men were seen in the Air this bout. Our Captain *Mascarenas* foreseeing the danger, had ordered them to quit the Bastion; but one *Reynoso* protested, he would accuse them of Cowardize, if they did. The one Commanded prudently, the other Advised couragiously; yet was guilty of Disobedience.

4. Thirteen thousand of the Enemy attack the Breach they had made; only five Souldiers withstood them till *Mascarenas* came with fifteen more. The Women assisted the Men, and ran even to brave Death. The Priest, who was returned from carrying the Advice to the Neighbouring places, appeared encouraging all with a Crucifix lifted on high. The Actions done here were incredible; but Night coming on the Enemy retired, having lost Three hundred Men. *Mascarenas* spent all the Night in repairing the Damages received.

5. The Enemy daily renewed their Attacks with the same success, and held out by means of their vast Numbers. *Rumecan* fell again to Mining, and pierced the very Rocks that stood in his way; but met not with such success as he had done the time before; for *D. John* perceiving his Work, countermined it, and it flew all back upon the Besiegers, killing many of them. *D. Alvaro*,  
the

the Governours Son, sent with Supplies, seemed to fail in opposition to the Seas and Winds, through Storms almost incredible: Yet they all arrived at *Baçaim*, and *Antony Moniz Barreto*, with 8 Gentlemen, got first into *Diu*, who though so few, by their Bravery were no small comfort to the besieged. One of these, called *Michael Darnide*, a Man of prodigious Strength, *Barreto* refusing to take him into his Boat, leaped into the Water with his Musquet in his Mouth and swam after him, so he was obliged to take him up.

6. Next came *Luis de Melo & Mendoga* with nine Men; then *D. George* and *D. Duarte de Meneses* with seventeen; after them *D. Antony de Ataide*, and *Francis Guillerme*, with fifty each; and lastly, *Ruy Freyre*, Factor of *Chaul*, with Twenty four. All together fell upon the Enemy, then possessed of some of our Works, and among them the Bastion *Santiago*. The Dispute was hot; yet the Enemy set up their Colours on the Walls. *Antony Moniz Barreto* made good his Post with only two Souldiers, and was going to quench his Flames in the Water; but one of the two, who was in the same condition, detained him, and both did things worthy admiration. *Antony Correa* sallied out with Twenty Men to discover the Enemy, and saw Twelve Moors sitting about a Fire; he exhorted his Men to fall upon them, but they seeing him go on, fled; however he went on thinking to take one that might give Intelligence: He fell  
on

on and behaved himself bravely; yet he was taken and carried to *Rumecan*, who Examined him about the posture the Fort was in, which being then very miserable, he represented so powerful, as drove him into despair, and moved him to cause the unfortunate Prisoner to be dragged through the Streets, and his Head cut off, which was set upon a Pole next day in sight of the Fort.

7. The Enemy had now lost Five thousand Men; the Besieged Two hundred, and had not so many more left, and not above half them able to do Duty, when *D. Alvaro* arrives with the Supplies, which consisted of Four hundred Men, and a sufficient quantity of Ammunition, having by the way taken a Ship of *Cambaya* richly laden. The Joy of this Relief was soon allayed; for the Souldiers that came with *D. Alvaro*, fearing the Mines, proposed to meet the Enemy in open Field: But the Governour prudently refusing, they broke out into open Mutiny in contempt of all Military Discipline, scarce known, or at least not respected by the Portugues Nation. *D. John* seeing himself in danger of perishing in the Fort by his own Men, chose rather to dye in the Field among the Enemies. He sallied with almost Five hundred Men in three Bodies. At one heat they gained the Enemies advanced Post, forcing them to retire to their Works. Those who insolently forced their Commander to this Extravagancy, stood heartless at the Foot of the Trenches,

Trenches, seeing others mount who had said less. *D. John* seeing them in this posture, cried out, *Whether it was thus they had promised to fight? Where was now that Boldness that obliged him to come into the Field? Where the Threats, that they would fight the Enemy without him? Behold your Commander you accused of Cowardize, calls you to the danger: And who is there follows me of those that would have led me hither? Within the Walls you were fierce, and now in the Field timorous. Your Courage suits with your Tongues; for those who said much, always acted little. They ashamed to be thus justly upbraided, took Heart and mounted: The whole Army came down upon them, and the Portugueses having done wonders, were forced to retire in disorder. This was the time the Enemy had possessed himself of the Fort, had not *Mascarenas* with his Prudence and Valour prevented *Mojatecan*, who with Five thousand attempted to enter, and was valiantly opposed by *Luis de Sousa* in *St. Thomas's* Bulwark. Threescore Men were lost in this Action: *D. Alvaro de Castro* was mortally Wounded in the Head. This was the fruit of that insolent Disobedience.*

8. The Moors had taken the Cannon of the Bastion *Santiago*, when *Vasco de Cuna* and *Luis de Almeyda* brought a fresh Relief. The latter immediately went out with *Payo Rodriguez* and *Peter Alfonso* in three Caravels, and as soon returned with two great Ships of *Meca* and some other Vessels, whose Loading was worth  
Fifty

Fifty thousand Ducats. At the Yard-Arms hung many Moors, whose Heads were then cut off, as was the Captains, who was a Janizary and offered Three thousand Ducats for his Ransom.

---

## C H A P. III.

*Continues the Siege of Diu, the Governour D. John de Castro comes in Person to its Relief.*

1. **N**OW begins the Month of *November*, and the Siege had lasted eight Months, when the Governour *D. John de Castro* covers the Sea with a great Fleet of all sorts of Vessels for the Relief of *Diu*. All *Goa* admired the Constancy wherewith he received the News of the Death of his Son *D. Fernando*; for though he highly repented it he dissembled his Grief, and dressing himself gayer than ordinary, went in Procession, to give God Thanks, That *Diu* was still in the possession of the Portugueses; and then went to a publick Feast, which is an Imitation of a Fight, wherein they use Canes instead of Lanæes.

2. The Fleet consisted of above Ninety Sail, besides three of the Ships that then came from *Portugal*; and several Gentlemen that came in them, went in other Vessels.

3. The Governour being come to *Baçaim*, waited the coming up of the Vessels that were scattered, and the mean while sent *D. Emanuel de Lioia* to scour the Coast. On the Coast of *Damam* he took several Ships, and cutting the Moors that were in them in pieces, threw them into the Mouths of the Rivers, that the Tide carrying them up, they might strike a Terrour in all that Coast. Entering the River of *Suratt*, after a vigorous Resistance made, he destroyed all that belonged to the Town called, Of the Ethiopians. The same was done at the City *Ansote*, not far distant, without sparing Beauty, the finest Women of the *Bramens* and *Baneans* being slaughtered. So in other Neighbouring Towns; and then *D. Emanuel* withdrew, leaving an Universal Terrour all along that Shoar.

4. The Fleet appearing in the Sea of *Diu*, the Enemy stood amazed, though they had just then received a supply of Five thousand fresh Men sent by the King. The Governour went privately into the Fort, and afterwards Landed his Men. He proposed in Council, Whether it was fit presently to march out and fight the Enemy? The Question was debated, till the Experienced *Garcia de Sa* put an end to it, saying, *They ought to fight.* They marched in this order:

*D. John*

*D. John Mascarenas*, Commander of the Fort, led the Van, consisting of Five hundred Men: *D. Alvaro* led as many: *Don Emanuel de Lima*, the like number. The Governour led the rest, which were One thousand, and a Body of *Indians*. Among the Men were some Portugues Women in mens Cloaths, to assist the Wounded. In the Fort was left the Lieutenant with Three hundred Men. That Night they fixed their Arms, and next Morning prepared their Souls. The Governour appointed Rewards for those who first mounted the Enemies Works.

5. At Break of Day, on the 11th of *November*, this small Army marched out to attack the numerous Forces of the Enemies, who were well intrenched and provided with Cannon. Our Men gave the Onset with much Bravery, and some fell. Two Gentlemen, who had Challenged each other, now agreed he should be owned as Victorious over the other, who first mounted the Enemies Works; both honourably strove for this Glory, and both died gloriously in the Attempt. At length our Men mounted the Works; such was each man's eagerness to be the first, that it could not be known who really was so. *Payva* having lost a Leg, fought on his Knees till he was killed. The *Tanadar* cut down a Turk, and stooping to make an end of him, was slain by another Turk. *Francis de Azevedo* was killed, after having made a great slaughter.

6. The brave *Mascarenas* and *D. Alvaro de Castro*, having taken a Bulwark, make themselves room in the Field. The Governour comes up and enflames the fight. He orders his Ensign to fix the Colours on the Enemies Works, and is immediately obeyed by him. Twice was the Ensign thrown down, and twice he remounted. Our Men encouraged by the Governour, press forward, and the Enemy gives way: The Portugueses enter their Works pell-mell with them, and *Rumecan* comes on with the whole Body of his Army; but after a hot dispute retires, leaving his Enemies Masters of his Works.

7. *Rumecan* joyns *Fuzarcas*, who on the other side was worsted by *Mascarenas*. The Governour marches out of the Works to meet them, giving the Van to his Son *D. Alvaro*. The Portugueses were much distressed, when *F. Antony del Casal* appeared before them with a Crucifix on the Point of a Lance, encouraging them with godly Words. They take Courage, and covering the Field with dead and wounded Men, put *Rumecan* to flight; but he rallying, forced the Portugueses to retire in great disorder. The Governour exposing himself to admiration, renewed the Fight, and restored good Order: At this time a Stone broke an Arm of the Crucifix, and the Priest calling upon the Men to revenge that Sacrilege, they fell on with such fury, that having done incredible Execution, they drove the Enemy to the City, who still gave way,  
facing

facing us. The first that entred the City with them was *D. John*, then *D. Alvaro*, and *D. Emanuel de Lima* and the Governour, all severall ways, making the Streets and Houses run with Blood. The Women escaped not the fate of the Men, and Children were slain at their Mothers Breasts, one stroak taking away two Lives. The first part of the Booty was Precious Stones, Pearls, Gold and Silver; other things, though of value, were slighted as cumberfom.

8. *Rumecan*. and his General Officers, rally their Men, and appear again in the Field with Eight thousand. The Governour and his Son, and *D. John Mascarenas* encompass them, the Fight was bloody; in the heat of it *Gabriel Teyxeyra* killing the Bearer, took the Standard of *Cambaya* and dragged it about the Field, proclaiming Victory. *George Nunez*, from among the Dead, brought out *Rumecans* Head, and presented it to the Governour. Ocher took *Juzarcán*, who was Wounded. Our Men were left absolute Masters of the Field. Of the Portugueses One hundred were killed, others say only Thirty four; of the Enemy Five thousand, and among them *Azedecan*, *Lucan* and other Men of Note. Free Plunder was allowed, some were enriched; many got much, and all were satisfied. There were taken many Colours, forty Pieces of Cannon of an extraordinary bigness, which with the lesser made up Two hundred, and a vast quantity of Ammunition.

9. Many particularly signalized themselves in this Action. The Governour play'd the part of a Souldier, as well as a General. *D. John Mascarenas*, after a Siege of eight Months, did more (with respect to such Merits) than all. *D. Alvaro de Castro*, of whom it is enough to say, He did like his Father. The Ensign *Barbado*, who being several times thrown down, as often mounted the Works. *F. Antony*, who with the image of Life, banished the fear of Death. And many more, as well of those who were killed, as they that survived. The Enemy confessed, that one day during the Siege they saw over the Church of the Fort, a beautiful Woman cloathed in White, from whom proceeded such Rays that blinded them; and this Day, in the Field, some Men with Lances, who did them the greatest harm. The King in a Rage for this Loss, caused Twenty eight Portugueses he had in Custody, to be torn to pieces in his presence.

1547. 10. Whilst the Governour was employed in Repairing the damage received, *D. Emanuel de Lima* by his Order scowred the Coast of *Cambaya* with thirty Ships, extirpating all the Towns on that shoar. The City *Goga*, one of the Chief of that Kingdom, was taken without any resistance, the Inhabitants flying to the Mountains. It was plundered and burnt; then pursuing the Inhabitants, they were found at Night about a League off asleep, and all put to the Sword. All the Cattle in the Fields were  
either

either killed or Ham-strung. The City *Gandar* had the very same fate. The same was done in several other Towns, and with many Ships along the Coast of *Baroce*.

11. Great was the Joy at *Goa*, for the News of what had hapned at *Diu*, carried thither by *James Rodriguez de Azewedo*, by whom the Governour desired the City to lend him Twenty thousand *Pardao's* for the use of the Army, sending a Lock of his Whiskers in pawn for the Mony. The City returned the Pawn with Respect, and sent him more Mony than he demanded; and the Women their Pendants, Necklaces, Bracelets, and others Jewels. The Governour punctually restored all, as it was sent; being the day before supplied by a rich Ship of *Cambaya*, taken by *Antony Moniz Barreto* on the Coast of *Mangalor*.

12. The Fort being Repaired, and put into a better condition than it was before the Siege, and Five hundred Men into it, and *D. George de Meneses* with six Ships upon the Coast, and the City better inhabited through the good Usage of the Governour to the Moors, he sailed for *Goa*, and arrived there on the 11th of *April*. He was received with loud Acclamations, and a splendid Triumph prepared by the City, in imitation of those of *Rome*. The City Gates and Streets were hung with Silk, the Windows thronged with fine Women; all places resounded with Musick and noise of Cannon, and the Sea was covered with Vessels

richly adorned. The Governour entred under a rich Canopy, where taking off his Cap, they put on his Head a Crown of Laurel, and a Branch of it in his hand. Before him went the Priest with the Crucifix, as he carried it in the Fight, and next to him the Royal Standard. Then *Juzarcán*, his Eyes fixed on the Ground, perhaps that he might not see his Prince's Colours dragged and ours flying, and among them Six hundred Prisoners in Chains. In the Front the Cannon, and all other sorts of Arms in Carts, very delightful to behold. The Governour walked upon Leaves of Gold and Silver, and rich Silks. The Ladies from the Windows sprinckled him with sweet Water, and threw Flowers on him. Our Queen *Catherine* hearing the Relation of his Victory and Triumph, said, *D. John had Overcome like a Christian, and Triumphed like a Heathen.*

## C H A P. IV.

*Continues the Government of D. John de Castro, and Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

I. Scarce was the Triumph over, when the Governour sent *James de Almeyda Freyre* with One hundred and twenty Horse, Eight hundred Foot, and a Thousand *Indians*, to drive out of the Lands of *Salsete* and *Bardes*, some Troops sent to *Hidalcan* to possess themselves of them; because the Conditions upon which he delivered them were not performed. The Enemy appeared at *Cowlj* to the number of Four thousand, who fled at the News of our approach. So the Lands were recovered without drawing Sword. *Hidalcan* sent the same Troops again, with Nine thousand more, and a Company of Renegado Portugueses, Comanded by *Gonzalo Vaz Coutino*, who flying the punishment of his Crimes, defended himself by committing greater. *James de Almeyda* marched again with the same Force as before; but being too weak, was forced to quit what before he had regained. The Governour marched in Person with Three thousand Men in five Batalions. *Francis de Melo* joyned them with about Fifteen hundred. The Enemy hearing of it, though

so numerous, retired to the Fort of *Ponda*. Our Army followed, and *D. Alvaro de Castro*, who led the Van, took a Ford defended by Two thousand Musqueteers. The other twelve or thirteen Thousand were drawn up in good Order about the Fort; but fled, after receiving our first Fire, leaving the Fort so clear, it appeared they had no design to maintain it.

2. The Victor never wants Friends. *Cidoça*, King of *Canara*, sent to Congratulate *D. John de Castro* upon this Victory. He proposed a New League with *Portugal*; which was concluded upon Honourable Terms, as always happen to those who are sent to. This Kingdom of *Charnataca*, corruptly *Canara*, had no Sovereign Prince till the Year of Grace 1200. It began then in *Boca* a Shepherd, who stiled himself *Rao*, that is, *Emperour*, a Title that continued in all his Successors. This King, as a Memorial of the Defeat given to the King of *Delij*, built the famous City *Visajanagar*, corruptly also called *Bisnagar*. The Crown continued in his Line till usurped by *Narsinga*, from whom this Kingdom took that Name, as also that of *Bisnagar*, from the City. Afterwards King *Melique* sent also to ratifie and confirm the Peace with us, rather through Hatred to him was defeated, than Love to the Conquerours.

3. *D.George de Meneses*, who was left in the Sea of *Cambaya* with six Ships, was informed that *Madremaluco*, Son-in-Law to *Coje Zofar* and Lord of *Baroche*, was gone from thence with all the Garrison. *Baroche* is a City seated in the highest part of those Plains, encompassed with a strong Wall, very populous and well built. *Meneses* marched by Night, and at Break of Day had entred the Houses, killing many asleep, and the others as they awaked. Such as escaped with the Fright, they knew not whither they ran, leaving Wives and Children behind only to save their own Lives. The City could not be maintained, and therefore was plundered and burnt, and the Cannon that could not be carried Aboard, were burst. To *D.George's* Sirname was added that of *Baroche*.

4. The Governour was informed, the King of *Cambaya* would come upon *Diu* with a greater Power than before, and with all diligence prepared to relieve it. The City of *Goa* advanced Mony for this Enterprize, and the Women again sent him their Jewels by their little Daughters, complaining he had not made use of them the last time, and desiring he would now: But he sent them back with Presents. The Fleet consisted of 160 Sail.

5. They sailed to *Bacaim*, and thence to *Suratt*, where *D.Alvaro*, who set out eight days before, had taken a Work, killed some Moors and got Cannon. Next, they entred the Port of *Baroche*, whence they discovered

vered the King of *Cambaya* covering the Plain with 150000 Men, and 80 Cannon in the Front; the Army made a Semi-circle and covered a League of Ground. *D. John* boldly leaped ashoar, not only to shew he feared him not, but with design to fight him. The most Experienced Officers dissuaded him, representing it was a rashness for 3000 to attack 150000; that it was enough that he had Landed, and drawn off with as much leisure, as if Victorious. He was forced against his Will, to submit to the Advice of his Elders. He went on to *Diu*, and giving the Command of that Fort to *Luis Falcam*, because *D. John Mascarenas* was returning to *Portugal*, he run like an inundation along the Coast of *Por* and *Mongalor*. The beautiful and strong Cities of *Pate* and *Patane* were abandoned by the Inhabitants, and by us destroyed, near Two hundred Vessels burnt in their Ports, and a rich Booty taken. The same hapned to *Dabul*, but with some opposition. This was done in revenge for *Hidalcan's* ravaging the Lands of *Salsete* and *Bardes*.

6. *Calabatecan*, his General, had lately possessed those Lands with Twenty thousand Men. The Governour went to meet them with Fifteen hundred Horse and Four thousand Foot; but the Enemy scarce heard them, when they fled to the Mountains of *Cowlis*, leaving their Tents and Baggage for haste. Our Army rested, and at Break of Day marched to give a good  
Morrow

Morrow to *Calabatecan*, who slept not, but came down with Two thousand Horse to maintain the Ford. But *Almeyda* passing with a few Horse, struck him down with his Lance; yet he rising nimbly had killed our Captain with his Cimiter, had not his Page again cast him down with a stroak of a Lance. He again rose, and was again beat down by *Almeyda*, and cut to pieces. His Arms, Horse and Furniture were of such value, that the share of *George Madera*, one of those that killed him (being the Cimiter, Dagger, Chain and Rings) were worth Eight thousand Crowns. The Moors and Christians fell to it desperately; but the former knowing their General was killed, soon fled, losing almost Three thousand Men.

7. Soon after the Governour marched to the Coast, where he left neither Town, Wood, nor Flock or Herd of Cattle that could be seen, but what he destroyed with Fire and Sword. He was so pleased with this Success, that he entred *Goa* in manner of Triumph, giving the best share of it to his Son *D. Alvaro*. These were rather demonstrations of Joy, than Triumphs; if otherwise, the Triumphs were too many.

8. Sometime before *F. Antony del Padron* (the first Commissary of *St. Francis* in *India*) with some Companions had entred into the Island *Ceylon*, and Preaching had wrought no small effect along the Coast. *F. Pascalis* was so well received by the King *Jacura Pandor*

*Pandar* of *Candea*, that desiring to become a Christian, he was only deterred for fear of his Subjects rebelling, and therefore desired assistance of the Governour in case of any Commotion. *Antony Moniz Barreto* was sent to this effect. Mean while the King of *Cota* persuades *Javira*, That he should no sooner be a Christian, but the Portugueses would deprive him of his Kingdom. The King giving Credit to this wicked Device, resolved to kill all the Portugueses sent to his assistance. But the better to execute it, feigned himself still of the same Mind. *Barreto* (it is not known how) had Intelligence of the Design, and finding more danger in Returning to the Ships, than going on to *Ceitavaca*, where that King was our Friend, he caused those One hundred and twenty Men he had Landed to burn all they had, except some little Provision, to let them know they were to save nothing, but their Lives. Three days they marched, fighting with Eight thousand Men so fortunately, that they arrived at *Ceitavaca* without losing one Man: To the great Honour of their Captain.

9. Our irreconcilable Enemy, the King of *Achem*, about this time sent against *Malaca* a Fleet of sixty Sail, and in it Five thousand Land-men; among which were Five hundred *Orobalones*, commonly called, *Of the Gold Bracelets*; because they wear them, and are very brave; but his best Regiment was of Turks and Janizaries.

This

This Body was Commanded by a Valiant Moor, who had the style of Dr. King of *Pedir*. He Landed by Night at *Malaca*, and found nothing but some Geese, which he took to shew his Prince, as a Testimony of his Landing: But those Fowl alarming the City (as formerly the Capitol,) caused all to be in readiness, which was but little, the Town being then very scarce of Men.

10. However, the Enemy was forced to retire and imbarck, having burnt two Ships of ours that were ready to sail. Without they took seven Fishermen, and cutting off their Noses Ears, and Feet, sent them to the Commander *Simon de Melo*, with a Challenge writ with their Blood. The Challenge was made a Jest of, because there was no Force there to Answer it. But the Great *St. Francis Xaverius*, who was zealous for the King's Honour, as well as the Service of God, being there then, he disapproved the Jest, and advised to meet the Enemy at any rate. The Governour and others excused themselves, urging there were in the Port but eight small Vessels, which, as being rotten and unfit for service, lay aground. This was true, but the Cause of it was the Neglect and Avarice of the Government.

11. The Great *Xaverius* took so much pains, that he prevailed with some Merchants to fit out those Vessels, prophetically promising two Galliot's would come to their Aid. The time prefixed was near expired,  
when

when they appeared sailing for *Patane*, and came into *Malaca*, though they had not designed it. The Saint went aboard, found they were Commanded by *James Suarez de Melo*, called the *Gallego*, and his Son *Baltasar*; he persuaded them to have a part in that Action. These Ten poor Vessels being fitted and manned with Two hundred and thirty Men, sailed to find out the Enemy under the Command of *D. Francis Deça*.

12. Being about to return Home, after two Months spent in search of the Enemy, they found him in the River *Parles*, and Engaged upon a *Sunday* Morning. The Fight was desperate; our Men behaved themselves with incredible Bravery, and had a most compleat Victory, killing Four thousand of the Enemy, sinking several of their Ships, and taking most of the rest, whereof they carried away but Twenty five, for want of Men, and burnt the rest. Three hundred Pieces of Cannon were taken, and almost a Thousand Musquets. This Victory cost us but Twenty five Men, some say, only four.

13. At the time of this Fight *St. Francis* was Preaching at *Malaca*, and pausing, on a sudden related all the particulars of it to his Auditory, who were in great Care for those Ships, having had no News of them in two Months. His Prediction was verified a few days after by their Arrival,

14. In *September* arrived five Ships from *Lisbon*: Six set out, but the one was Cast-away at *Angoxa*, the Men saved and distributed amongst the other Ships.

## C H A P. V.

*The End of the Government of D. John de Castro.*

1. **T**HE Governour began this Year with the utter destruction of the Coast subject to *Hidalcán*. He had the same Fleet as before, and began in *January* at the River *Charopa*, two Leagues from *Goa*. He spared neither Living Creature, Vegetable, nor the very Stones; but burnt and slaughtered all as far as the City *Dabul*, which was reduced to Ashes, the Inhabitants being fled with the best of their Goods. Hence he ran in the same manner to the River *Cifardam*, which parts this Kingdom from that of *Melique*.

2. The King of *Campar*, who had taken the City *Adem* from the Turks, being threatned by them, had recourse to the Portugueses, submitting himself to our King; and to this effect *D. Payo de Norona* was sent to him with a Supply by the Commander

mander of Ormuz. *D. Payo* behaved not himself as he ought to have done on this Occasion; for the King marching out to fight the Turks, by whom he was beaten and slain, and having left him to guard the City, he (over-fearful of Treachery) retired to his Ship, and returned not though he saw the Town Assaulted. Some Turkish Gallies came and besieged the place, and *D. Payo* having promised the Prince assistance left him, carrying away the few Portugueses he had brought. *Emanuel Pereyra* resolved to stay there, and *Francis Vieyra*, who was raising Men at *Campar*, made his way in. Both behaved themselves bravely; but the Turks entring by Treachery, the Prince and one of his Brothers were killed; the Portugueses with another retired to *Campar*, to expect the Succours were to come from *India*.

3. *D. Alvaro* went with Three hundred Men in Thirty Vessels, loaded with Ammunition. The Governour was overjoyed with the News of the submission of *Adem*. But this Joy was soon allayed by a dangerous Fever, and a violent Mutiny raised for want of Bread. *Emanuel de Sousa & Sepulveda* prudently appeased it; and the Governour being recovered, caused his Hand to be cut off who Beat the Drum to Call the People, and two others of the Chief, to be imprisoned.

*D. Jobre*

4. D. *John de Ataide*, or *Meneses*, sent before by D. *Alvaro* to *Adem*, entring boldly as believing it to be in the possession of D. *Payo*, lost two Vessels and all the Men that were in them, who were either killed or made Slaves by the Turks. *Noronha* met D. *Alvaro* at *Canequirim*, and earnestly laboured to represent how great the Danger was that obliged him to quit that place. But the dead Kings Embassadour and his own Silence, when accused, were Witnesses against him. He came afterwards to *Goa*, and one of his Servants having taken a Hen from a Slave, the Slave was complaining at the Door they would not restore it: When a Portugues passing by told him; *Leave off, for in that House they love Hens: If it were Adem they would soon part with it, but not a Hen.* Now in Portugues by a Hen they signifie a Coward, as well as the Fowl; and the word *Adem* signifies a Duck, and was the name of the place he quitted. D. *Alvaro* finding the posture of Affairs so changed, desisted from the Enterprize.

5. He had Orders, as soon as he concluded at *Adem* to go to *Caxem*, that first being laid aside, he went to the second. The King of *Caxem* impatiently expected his assistance against the Turks, who had taken his Castle of *Xael*. They assaulted it, and those within (being only Thirty) offered to surrender upon Honourable Terms. The Portugueses against the Inclination of the King and D. *Alvaro*, refused to give any Conditions, and wrongfully detained

tained them that came to Treat. Pride and Injustice seldom go unpunished. The Portugueses attack the Fort, and the Besieged turning their Submission into Rage, died couragiously, killing Five hundred Portugueses: The rest returned in Triumph to Goa, which was no ways grateful to the Governour; and 'tis thought the Cowardize at *Adem*, and Rashness at *Xael*, were two great Causes that carried him to his Grave, for all he endeavoured to dissemble it.

6. The News of the Victory at *Diu* being brought this Year to *Lisbon*, the King resolved to send a greater Fleet than usual to *India*, and to Honour *D. John* with unusual Favours; for they were the first that any Governour of *India* received from his Prince, for good Service performed. The Fleet consisted of seventeen Sail. *D. John* had the Government continued to him with the Title of *Vice-Roy*, a Present of Mony, and his Son *D. Alvaro* made Admiral of the *Indian Seas*.

7. *D. John* was almost dead when these Bounties reached him, and he died of a Disease that nowadays kills no man, though it did formerly; for even Diseases dye. It was grief for the miserable estate *India* was reduced to, without any means of redressing it; and the Actions of some Gentlemen, among them that of his Son at *Xael*. He publickly begged pardon of many for Writing against them to the King, that it may appear, even Great Spirits purchase Favour by mean Whispers.

S.D. *John*

8. D. *John* finding himself unable to manage the Government, appointed a Council of select Persons to supply his place. And when he saw there was no hopes of Life, he called them before him, and some others, and said, *Though he neither hoped nor desired to live, yet while he continued in that condition something must be spent: That he had nothing, and desired that they would order something out of the King's Revenue, that he might not dye for want.* Then he ordered a Mass-Book to be brought, and laying his hand upon it, his Eyes lifted up to Heaven, swore, *That he had no way made use of the Kings, or any other mans Mony: That he had not drove any Trade, to increase his own Stock;* and desired that this Act of his might be Recorded. Soon after he gave up the Ghost in the Arms of *St. Francis Xaverius*, on the 6th of *June*, in the 48th year of his Age, having Governed two Years and eight Months. In his private Cabinet was found a Bloody Discipline, and three Royals, which was all his Treasure.

9. He was buried in the Church of *Saint Francis*. In the Year 1576 his Body was brought to *Portugal*, and laid in the Church of *Bemfica* of the *Dominicans*, on a Hill not far from *Lisbon*. He is painted Crowned with Palm-branches, and cloathed in Red. He was a great Latinist, and well skilled in Mathematicks. Being desirous to know why the *Red Sea* appears of that Colour, he made Men Dive to the bottom and

bring up what they found, whereof he writ a Treatise.

10. D. *John* Governed without suffering himself to be over-ruled by Pride, as others did before and after him. He asked nothing for himself as a Superiour; what the Necessities of the Government required, he asked as an Equal. He valued Men according to Merit, not Fancy. He so much loved every one should look like what he was, that seeing a fine Suit of Cloaths as he passed by a Taylors, and being told it was his Sons, he cut it in pieces, saying, *Bid that young man provide Arms*. He was the 14<sup>th</sup> in the number of Governours, and may be accounted the 4<sup>th</sup> Vice-Roy, and first of the Name.

11. It is fit something should be said of this Great Man's descent and first Actions. He was born the Year 1500, and was Son of *Alvaro de Castro*, Governour of the *Chancery*, and of *D. Leonor de Noronha*, Daughter of *D. John de Almeyda*, Count of *Abrantes*. In his Youth he served in *Tangier*, and returning home had a Commendary, valued at 500 Ducats a year conferred on him, which was all a man of his Birth and Merits was ever worth. In those days the Revenues were small, and Men great; afterwards the Revenues grew great, and the Men little. A Great Soul then did much with a little; now they do nothing with a great deal. The Year 1505, when *D. Francis de Almeyda* went first Vice Roy of *India*, his Salary was but 15000 Royals a year.

year. *D. Constantine* fifty years after, because he was of the Blood Royal, had 40000. Now they have 100000. See who performed the greatest Exploits in that Post.

12. He served afterwards under the Emperour *CHARLES* the Fifth, in the Expedition of *Tuniz*, and refused his part of a Present in Money that Prince made to the Portugues Officers, saying, *He served the King of Portugal, and of him expected his Reward.* After this he commanded a Fleet upon the Coast, and was sent with another to the Relief of *Ceuta*, which joyning with that of *Spain*; the Spaniard hearing the Moors were drawing near, would draw off to Consult concerning the manner of giving Battle; but *D. John* refused to stir. The Moors not knowing the Fleets were parted, retired, and *D. John* remained with the Honour of this Action.

13. When the Vice-Roy *D. Garcia de Noronha* went to *India*, *D. John* was Captain of one of his Ships. Being ready to go aboard, the King sent him a Grant of the Command of *Ormuz*, and 1000 Ducats a year till he was in possession of it. The last he accepted, because he was poor; and refused the first, saying, *He had not yet deserved it.* He went to *Suez* with *D. Stephen de Gama*, and up to *Mount Sinai*, where his Son *D. Alvaro* was Knighted. Being returned to *Portugal*, he lived retired in a Country-house he built near *Cintra*, giving himself



altogether to his Studies. Thence he was called by the Advice of the Infante D. Luis, and sent Governour to *India*.

---

## C H A P. VI.

*The Government of Garcia de Sá, from the Year 1548 till the Year 1549, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

1. **T**HE first Patent of Succession being opened, named D. *John Mascarenhas* who after the long Siege of *Diu* was gone for *Lisbon*, to seek the Reward which now he missed in *India*. The second named D. *George Tello*, absent also. In the third was *Garcia de Sá*, a Person well versed in the Affairs of *India*. At his first Entrance upon the Government he gave sufficient Tokens of his Zeal for the Publick, and used some Liberality to gain the Hearts of the Souldiers, much dejected with the lessening their Pay.

2. He received an Embassadour from *Hidalcan* to Treat of Peace, which was concluded much to our Advantage. About the beginning of *August* came in eleven of the seventeen Ships sent from *Portugal* this year:

The

The other six were arriv'd before. In this Fleet were the first Fathers of the Order of *St. Dominick*, that went to build a Convent at *Goa*; they were six, and their Chief *F. James Bernardez*, a Spaniard, and a Learned and Pious Man.

3. The Governour sent *Martin Correa de Silva* to *Diu*; hastned the departure of the Trading Ships, and sail'd for *Bacaim* with some Men in thirty Vessels, designing to gain some advantage over the King of *Cambaya*. He was disappointed; but it was some satisfaction that he had Advice there, That the King of *Tamor* being Converted, desired succour against such as should rebel upon his change of Religion. *Garcia de Sá*, the Governours Nephew, was sent with Threescore Men of Note, who had good success, as shall appear in its place.

4. At this time the Governour splendidly received the Embassadors of *Zamora*, *Canava*, *Nizamaluco*, *Cotumaluco*, and other Princes, who came to confirm the former Peace. At last *Sultan Mamud*, King of *Cambaya*, made Overtures, tired with ill success, and the Peace was established to our Credit.

5. The Spiritual Conquest was now very successful. *Xaverius* erected Churches, and Converted many among the *Patava's*, and two Kings with a multitude of People in *Malaca*. *John Sourez*, Vicar of the Fort of *Chale*, converted the King of *Tamor*, with his Queen and Children. He desiring to see the Offices of the Church solemnly per-

formed at *Goa*, and be confirmed by the Bishop, came to the City, was nobly received, and departed well satisfied, promising to make his Subjects follow his Example. The Persuasions of *Zamori* wrought no effect upon him now; but afterwards it seems they prevailed, for we shall see him in Arms against those who received him with such Honour.

6. One *Bislala*, an Ethiopian and Favourite of the King of *Ormuz*, rebelled against him at *Manojam*. The King sent against him a good Body of his Men, supported by 120 Portugueses, to which were afterwards added 1000 of the first, and 180 of the latter; but all to no purpose, for he still kept himself out of reach. *D. Emanuel de Lima* finding he could not do any thing by open force, resolved to reach him by Craft. He agreed with a *Gallego*, That he should counterfeit he fled from him, and getting into *Baslala's* Camp, kill him the first opportunity. The *Gallego* soon performed, and all was quiet.

7. This Year we shall see a bloody War between *Pegu* and *Siam*, for an Elephant. The King of *Siam* had a white Elephant, a Beast coveted by all the Princes of the East. The King of *Pegu* demanded it by way of Superiority; and he of *Siam* refused it, not so much for the value of the Beast, as for the manner of asking. He of *Pegu* entred his Dominions, and reduced him to desire a Peace upon any Terms, so the Elephant were not comprehended. They agreed

agreed the King of *Pegu* should have the *Siam's* Daughter and a Noble Woman every year, as an acknowledgment: But the latter not performing, the other returned with 1500000 Men, 4000 Elephants, and an incredible Train; with him came the Kings that depended on him, and *James Soares de Melo* with 180 Portugueses. Above two Thousand Workmen went before, who every Night set up a stately Wooden Palace, richly painted and adorned with Gold. He made a prodigious Bridge of Boats over the rapid River *Menam*, a League over, to pass his Army. In his Way was a narrow Pass, where the *Siamite* had raised a strong Wall, guarded by 25000 Men. *James Soares* was sent to gain it with 30000, which he performed with some loss to himself, but utter destruction of the Enemy. At length he sat down with his wonderful Army before the City *Odia*, the Court of the King of *Siam*, who was within with 60000 Men, and 4000 Cannon, some of a prodigious magnitude. *Odia* is eight Leagues in compass, about it a strong Wall, and round that a wide and deep Water.

8. The Battery began. In the Town were 50 Portugueses, Commanded by *James Pereyra*, who behaved themselves to admiration. The King of *Pegu* endeavoured to corrupt them with Bribes; but they rejected all his Offers. The King astonished, despaired of gaining by the Sword, what could not be bought with Gold, and removed to the City *Camambre*, where were

the *Siamites* Treasures ; the Place strong, and defended by 20000 Men. After many Attempts this vast Power was forced to march off without doing any thing.

9. *Xemindoo* rebelled against the King of *Pegu*, who sent *James Soares* with Two hundred Portugueses to suppress him. He followed him to the City *Cevadi*, and he slipping by, got into *Pegu*, because the City sided with him. The Queen fled to the Castle, where she was defended by twenty Portugueses, till the King came and put the Rebels to flight. The Army entred the City, and put to the Sword not only Men, Women and Children, but even the Beasts ; nothing escaped, but what was within the liberty of *James Soares* his House, which the King had ordered should be exempted; above Twelve thousand saved themselves therein. The Plunder was unaccountable, *James Soares* alone got above three Millions. At his Intercession the King pardoned a Portugues, who had furnished *Xemindoo* with Ammunition.

10. Though the King escaped the hands of *Xemindoo*, he could not the Villany of *Ximi de Zatan*, (*Ximi* is equivalent to a Duke, and he really was one of Satan's creating) who murdered him in the delightful City *Zatan*. The Traytor was immediately proclaimed King, and falling among the murdered Princes Men, killed three of those that belonged to *James Soares*, who fled to the City *Ova*, and afterwards at *Pegu* was reconciled to this

New

New King, till *Xemindoo*, who fled before, came on again with a powerful Army. *Xami* commanded *James Soares*, and his Portugueses, to march with him against the Enemy; but before he came thither, the punishment of his great Insolencies reached him, as shall be seen hereafter.

11. *Zatan* was taken and Beheaded by *Xemindoo*, who gave out it was for the killing of *Soares*, as if the murder of the King had not been a more justifiable Motive. Thus the first Rebel possessed himself of the Crown, till *Mandaragri*, the late Kings Brother-in-Law, claimed it in right of his Wife; and coming to a Battle, gave him such a total Defeat, that *Xemindoo* fled to the Mountains, where he married a poor Fellows Daughter. He discovered himself to her, and she revealed it to her Father, at such time as great Rewards were proposed to such as should discover him. The Father-in-Law delivered him up to the King, who cut off his Head.

12. The King not throughly satisfied with the People of *Pegu*, built not far from it another great and strong City. Then he marched with an Army of 1600000 Men, and over-run many Neighbouring Kingdoms. But another Rebellion breaking out at *Pegu*, the Queen was forced to fly to the Castle, chiefly relying upon 39 Portugueses, who defended her till the King came and vanquished the Rebels. Then the King sent an Officer to bring those Men, who had defended the Queen, to his presence. He brought

brought him some Moors of Note; but the King knowing the Portugueses were the Men, said in Anger, *I sent you for Men, and you bring me Cowards; Go, bring me Men.* The Portugueses being brought, he bid them ask whatever Reward they would, and they with the Surprize doubting, the King loaded them with Riches, Praises and Honours.

13. Now were the Inhabitants of the City *Cbincheo*, the second Portugues Colony in *China*, in a flourishing condition, and seemed to have forgot the sad Fate of *Liampo*, destroyed through their Wickedness and Avarice. *Ayres Coello de Sousa* came thither to be Judge of the Orphans, and Proveditor for the Dead; his Intention being to rob the Living and Dead, his Countrymen and Strangers. He committed many Villanies to lay hold of 12000 Ducats, belonging to an *Armenian* Christian, who died there, and 8000 more of some *Chinese* Merchants, upon pretence they belonged to the dead Man. These and other Insolencies provoked the *Chineses* to do, as they had done at *Liampo*; to wit, to raze the Town, and destroy all the Inhabitants. Only Thirty escaped of Five hundred Portugueses that lived there. These, and some others they gathered, went over to the Island *Lampazau*; and afterwards, in the Year 1557, obtained of the *Chineses* that of *Gaoxam*, where they built the City now called *Macao*, as shall be seen in its place.

14. Our Governour studying some Means to relieve the great Wants of the Souldiers, was suddenly snatched away by Death, about the beginning of *July*. He was much regretted for his Prudence, Affability and Integrity; for being Seventy years of Age, and having born considerable Offices, he was forced to give all he had to Match two Daughters, and yet the best part of their Portions was their Beauty, and that He was their Father. He had a graceful Presence; a comly Countenance, always Smiling, without lessening his Gravity: For it is not necessary to be like a Statue, to appear like a God. He was of the first Quality of his Country: His Beard very white and full, falling upon his Breast: Governed a Year and a Month, and was the 15th in that Rank; the second of the Name, and first of the Surname.

C H A P.

## C H A P. VII.

*The Government of George Cabral, from the Tear 1549, till the Tear 1550, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

1549. 1. **T**H E Patents of Succession being opened, there was found in the first *George Cabral*, a Gentleman by Birth, and of known Worth, who not long before was gone to take possession of the Command of *Baçaim*. He received the News with small signs of Joy, an ill token for him that expected the Recompence of carrying it: But he being a generous Man, did not lessen the Reward. It was not want of desire to Govern that made him dissatisfied; but that he feared another coming soon from *Portugal* to succeed him, he should lose the great Advantages he might have made of the Command he was in, and which he was to hold four Years. With him was his Wife *D. Lucretia Fiallo*, who had double Pretensions to be vain, as a Woman, and as a Beauty, and had now a third, in the News of being Wife to the Governour of *India*; so she laughed to see her Husband doubt, whether he should receive what was offered.

2. *Cabral* revolved a thousand Thoughts with himself, not knowing whether to admit or refuse the Government, and these Cares so disturbed him, that he could not Rest at Night. His Wife finding him so dubious, and fearing to be disappointed of the Pride of sitting, though never so short a time in the Throne of *India*, took him one Night to task, and using all Arts of an ambitious Womans Tongue, and the Allurements of that place, prevailed with him to lay aside all Doubt, and accept of the Honour offered, which he had seemed averse to, and which she so ardently desired.

3. He admired her efficacy in Persuading, no less powerful in the beauty of her Language, than that of her Person. Though he always thought her a Woman of Sense; (for Beauty and Folly are not always inseparable) yet he could not but conclude, the desire of Greatness is a great matter of Eloquence. Who could resist a resolute Beauty? Had it been to draw on Mankind another Universal sin, he must have been an *Adam* to that *Eve*; much more to accept of a Command for which he was sufficiently qualified. In fine, The New Governour sailed to *Goa*, in this only Governed by his Wife; for *India* might vie with her in the desire of seeing him possess that Throne many years: For *Cabral* deserved to have been long continued in that Post, and *India* was obliged to his Wife for the short time he held it. Women are not always hurtful: But in those days

days there were some Beautiful and Gay without being quite Mad.

4. At our Governours coming from *Cochin*, there was not a right Understanding between that King and him, because he ordered *Francis de Silva* to attempt to Plunder the Pagod of *Palurte*, which was disappointed, and he lost three Portugueses; and the Loss had been greater, but that the King was then absent. This was the Cause that three Ships set out for *Portugal* late, and ill Laden. Now came the News, That above 100 Sail were fitting out at *Suez*, to transport Turks into *India*. The Governour applied himself to provide for such a Storm, he acquainted the Chief of our Towns. *Goa* offered much, *Chaul* 30 Sail, *Bazaim* 20. Whilst these Preparations were making, *F. Antony Criminal*, an *Italian* Jesuit, preaching at *Cape Comori*, received the Crown of Martyrdom at the hands of a multitude of the King of *Bisnagar's* Subjects, who assaulted him as he Preached. He was run through with three Lances, and then his Head cut off. King *John* was so mightily delighted with this Exploit, that he immediately sent Advice to *Baltasar de Faria* his Embassadour at *Rome*, to communicate it to the Pope, who received it with due applause.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Continues the Government of George Cabral.*

1. **Z** *Amori*, and the King of *Pimienta*, were joyned in a League against him of *Cochin*, which threatned that State with dangerous consequences. The Governour set out to prevent them with a Fleet of 90 Sail; but returned to *Goa* without doing any thing, because the Season was unfit. He only consulted with the King of *Cochin* about the manner of carrying on the War against those Confederates, since they could not be brought to a Peace.

2. The Weather being seasonable, the King of *Pimienta* took the Field at *Bardela* wth 10000 Nayres, the King of *Cochin* did the same with his Men, and 600 Portugueses, Commanded by the rash *Francis de Sylva*, Captain of that Fort. The Armies being drawn up in sight, the King of *Pimienta*, at the Request of *Sylva*, gave him a Meeting between them. *Sylva* pressed for an Accommodation, which the King condescending to upon reasonable Terms, was broke off by our Captain; who having more natural Strength than natural Reason, acted more like a Brute than a Man. The Armies charged

charged each other Couragiously, and the King of *Pimienta* was carried off Wounded, and died before he knew the event of the Battle. His Men fled, and were pursued into their City with great slaughter; the Royal Palace was fired, which among them is the hainouest Affront; whereupon they Rallied, and fell upon the Victors with such Fury, that they obliged them to retire in great disorder. *Sylva* discharged some few that stood by him, and rushing into the thickest of the Enemies, was killed. Above fifty Portugueses were lost here, which abundantly countervailed for our Victory.

3. Five thousand Nayres, all sworn to Revenge the death of their King, or dye, entred the Country of *Cochim*, killing many, and forcing others to fly to the Fort. The Commander of the Fort, *Henry de Sousa*, marched out, and finding them engaged with the *Indians*, who fought desperately, killed Five hundred. Two strange and contrary Accidents hapned upon this occasion: One was, a Man that lay dying arose, and taking a Lance did great Execution among the Enemies, and perfectly recovered his health: The other, a Man in perfect health, who fell down dead with the Fright.

4. All the Joy of this Success vanished at the sight of *Zamori*, who came attended by the Princes of *Malabar*, with 140000 Men. He Encamped with 100000 at *Chembe*, ordering those Princes (who were  
eighteen

eighteen in number, and among them the King of *Tanor*, lately so fond of us and our Religion) with the other 40000, whereof 5000 had devoted themselves to pass over into the Island *Bardela*. Our Governour, upon the first Advice, prepared to meet this Storm. He sent before *Emanuel de Sousa & Sepulveda* with four Ships, and Orders, That having joyned those that were at *Cochim*, he should shut up those Princes in the Island till he came, being resolved to follow at his Heels. *Sepulveda* did his part, and the Governour his, for he sailed immediately; the Cities of *Goa*, *Chaul*, and *Bacaim*, furnishing what they had offered for the Expedition against the Turks, which came to nothing. The Fleet consisted of above 100 Sail, and almost 4000 Landmen. The first Execution was at *Tiracole*, where many Houses, Ships and Goods were burnt. *Coulete* suffered the same Fate, after a vigorous Resistance, which cost the Lives of many of them, and sixteen of ours. At *Panane* the same, and we lost eight.

5. Our Governour Landed at *Cochim*, and found that King with Forty thousand Men; he had himself Six thousand, Two thousand having joyned him there. The Island being beset, and Signal given to fall on, those within began to waive a white Flag, for a Parley. It was concluded, those eighteen Princes should put themselves into the Governours hands, upon promise of Life. He finding they delayed, resolved to

L fight

fight them the next day, but was hindred by a great Flood; yet he concluded he might put his design in execution the day after. But what security is there in human Felicity? *Cabral* was almost in possession of one of the most glorious Actions that had been seen in *India*, when the sudden Arrival of the Vice-Roy *D. Alfonso de Noronha* ravished this Honour from him, not suffering him to proceed, nor concluding himself what was so well begun. On the contrary, he suffered all those Princes to escape with their whole Army.

6. *St. Francis Xavierius* seeing how many great Enterprizes were disappointed through the Malice or Envy of the Governours, wrote a Letter to the King, acquainting him therewith, and advising to punish such Miscarriages with severity, whereby they might for the future be prevented. But Ministers serve as they please; Saints advise well, and Princes Eyes are never opened. Commonly, the want of due Punishment is the cause of publick Calamities.

7. Whilst *George Cabral* was at *Cochim*, waiting to embarque in the Ships that were bound to *Portugal*, one Night about the middle of *February* there was a Report, That Eight thousand sworn Nayres would enter the City. *Cabral* run to the Gates, with *Emanuel de Sousa & Sepulveda*, in order to march out and meet them at Break of Day; but was hindred by the Council of the City. He stayed with a competent Number of Men to guard the Town, and  
sent

sent *Sepulveda* with Fifteen hundred Portugueses and the Natives. They found those desperate Men in a Neighbouring Town, acting all that Rage and Malice could suggest. They Charged them; the Fight was very desperate, fifty Portugueses were slain, and above a Thousand of the *Amouco's* or devoted Nayres, the rest fled.

8. Let us see what was done during this time by the Captains, sent by the Governour to several parts. The King of *Cota* had asked Succour against his Brother *Madune Pandar*, King of *Ceitavaca*, who endeavoured to expel him his Kingdom; he offered in requital for the Relief, to pay a greater Tribute than before. *Caralea Pandar*, Prince of *Candea* (not following the Example of his Father, who was bent against the Religious Men, who made him a Christian) desired to be Baptized, and fled with the Priests to a Fort, from whence he sent to beg the Governour's assistance. Both these places being in the Island *Ceylon*, he sent thither *D. George de Castro* with six hundred Men. *Madune* scarce saw him, when he raised the Siege he had laid to *Cota*, where his Brother was. The King of *Cota* and *D. George* followed him; and he so fortified the Passes, they were forced in some places to fight their way through showers of Bullets, Stones and Arrows, with some loss of Men, and no small slaughter of the Enemy. Being come in sight of the City *Madune* met them, and there ensued a bloody Battle desperately fought on both

sides. At length *Madune* was obliged to fly to the Mountains, and leave his Brother in possession of that great City, singularly adorned by a Pagod of wonderful magnificence. The Plunder was very considerable. *Madune* implored his Brother's Mercy, who had little reason to shew him any; yet did, and left him possessed of his Kingdom.

9. *D. George* did not meet with the like success at *Candea*, whither he went after this Victory. The Enemy came unexpectedly upon him with Forty thousand Men in a narrow Pass, whence he could not escape, and killed Eight hundred of his Men, half of them Portugueses. He got away with more grief for this Loss, than honour by the late Victory. For it is certain, we are more sensibly grieved at Misfortunes, than pleased with Success.

10. *Bernardin de Sousa*, at the *Maluco's*, continued the War against the King of *Gilolo*, and drew off with a rich Booty, after destroying some Towns on the Coast with Fire and Sword. At this time came *Christopher de Sá* to succeed him in that Command.

11. *George Cabral* imbarqued well pleased with his good success against the sworn Nayres, and was well received in *Portugal* for his great Merit, contrary to the Custom of this Kingdom. He was generally esteemed one of the best Governours of *India*. He was the sixteenth of that number, and held it a year and four Months.

His

His Person was graceful, his Countenance pleasing, of a ruddy Complexion, his Beard a dark Chesnut.

12. This Year was born at Goa (the Father and Mother were *Canara's*) a hairy Monster like a Monky, with a round Head and only one Eye in the Forehead, over it grew Horns, and on the sides Ears like those of a Kid. As the Midwife received it into her Hands, it cried out with a loud Voice and stood upon its Feet. The Father locked it up in a Hen-Coop: It got out, and seizing upon the Mother, had like to tear off one of her Nipples. The Father catching it again, poured scalding Water upon the Head and killed it, and could scarce cut off the Head, it was so hard. He burnt it; and the thing being known he was punished for killing it, and the Body was exposed to publick view in the City.

## CHAP. IX.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Alfonso de Noronha, from the Year 1550, till 1553, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

1. **D**On *Alfonso de Noronha* was taken from the Government of *Ceuta*, to be sent to that of *India*, and more Favours conferred on him than on any of his Predecessors; as if this Post of it self were not as great a Favour for him, as for others. Thus we see Princes bestow the very same Places on some as Rewards, which they give to others as a step to Merit: The fault is not in the Gift, but in him that bestows it. But it seems, the King in part ballanced this Favour by assigning him a Council, by whom he must of necessity be Advised in *India*.

2. He had Orders to send back into *Portugal* all the New Christians, that is, Converted Jews, who had gone from hence with their whole Families; and it were better they had been banished both places. He was also to take cognizance of those Ancient Christians, who disturbed such as were converted from Paganism.

3. *Don Alfonso* set out of *Lisbon* with four Ships; one had been sent before, to give Advice why the rest staid, and *D. Alvaro de Gama* (Son to the Great *Vasco*) sailed so late, it was never expected he would get thither; yet he overtook the others, the Seas being favourable to all that descend from his Father; for it was never known any of them was Cast away. The Vice-Roy was received at *Goa* with the usual demonstrations of Joy, proceeding rather from the hatred they bear him that lays down the Sword, than love to him that takes it up.

4. He immediately sent Advice of his Arrival to all Parts, and dispatched Commanders to several Forts, and for Sea. *Luis Figueyra* was sent to the *Red Sea* with five Vessels, where they met the Turk *Casar* with five Galliot. *Figueyra* attacks *Casar's* Galliot, and was slain, much admired by the Enemy for his Valour. The four subordinate Captains stood looking on and saw him killed, without coming to his Relief. One of them, *Gaspar Nunez*, ashamed of what he had done, went away with all his Men into *Ethiopia*, and was never more heard of. *Soveral*, another of them, met one of those Galliot, fought, and they parted upon equal Terms. After he met the other two, and they all returned with disgrace to *Goa*.

5. The Arabs of *Catifa* delivered up to the Turks the Fort of that City, which highly offended the King of *Ormuz*. The Turks had also expelled his Kingdom the King of *Baçora*, who yet kept the Field with Thirty thousand Men, in hopes to recover his Kingdom with the assistance of the Portugueses. To this effect he sent an Embassy to the Vice-Roy, offering leave to build a Fort in his Harbour, and other Advantages to the Crown of *Portugal*. *D. Antonio de Noronha*, Nephew to the Vice-Roy, was sent to assist these two Kings, with Twelve hundred Men in nineteen Vessels. Being come to *Ormuz*, they marched with Three thousand of that Kings Men, and set down before the Fort of *Catifa*. Four hundred Turks that were in that Garrison behaved themselves bravely; but finding it in vain to resist, fled by Night, and being discovered were pursued and routed. The Fort was taken, and the Captain of *Ormuz* not daring to maintain it, it was thought fit to be razed. A Mine was made, which taking fire before the time, and blowing up, the Work buried 40 Portugueses.

6. After this Victory *Noronha* sailed to the Mouth of the River *Euphrates*, in order to relieve the King of *Baçora*. Here a cunning *Bassa* persuaded him, he was sent for to be delivered up to his Enemies; whereupon he returned Inglorious to *Ormuz*, where being come he understood the Deceit, but it was too late.

7. The Vice-Roy had sent *D. Garcia de Meneses* to Command at *Ternate*, at the Request of that King, who could not endure *Jordan de Freytas*, that sent him Prisoner to *Goa*. The Affairs of *Malaca* hindered *Meneses* from going thither. *Bernardin de Sousa*, who had scarce resigned that Post to *Christopher de Sá*, returned, with Orders to continue there, in case the Spaniards encroached upon those places. *Sá* refused to admit him, because the Spaniards were quiet, and his Order conditional; but *Sousa* pressed to be restored, because he had not made so much of that Command as he expected. At length *Sá*, to prevent Mischief, submitted. *Sousa* immediately sets out with 180 Portugueses, and sails for *Gilolo*, to destroy the Fort was raising there. The King of *Ternate*, and Prince of *Bacham*, followed with 5000 Men.

8. The King of *Gilolo* courageously expected the coming of his Enemy in the the Fort, with 1200 Men and many Pieces of Cannon. *Baltasar Veloso* led our Van; the Prince of *Gilolo* breaking out of an Ambush with Four hundred Men, fell upon and distressed him; but *Veloso*, though seventy years of Age, made such havock among the Enemies, they were forced to fly. Our Captain received some damage, continues his Battery, and sits down to besiege the place. He cut off their Water, which obliged them, after a Siege of three Months, to Capitulate, and Peace was concluded upon these hard Terms, That the  
King

King should lose this Title and be styled *Governour*, and pay Tribute. The Portugueses entred the Fort in his presence, committing many barbarous Enormities, and laid it even with the ground. It is no small Credit to those of *Gilolo*, that they held out four days after all their Provision was spent. On our side Three hundred Men were killed, eighteen of them Portugueses; there were more wounded. *Ferdinand Machado* saying, He should be killed here, said the Office of the Dead for himself; and lest it might be thought Cowardize, went Dancing up to the Enemy; he died of his Wounds soon after the Surrender. The King also died for Grief, and his Son *Cabilguzarate* succeeded him. *Bernardin de Sousa* being jealous of the Fort of *Tidore*, went over to it; and that King fearing greater damage, agreed it should be demolished.

9. Sultan *Halaudin*, that King that *Peter Mascarenas* expelled *Bantam*, and *D. Stephen de Gama* from *Ujantana*, resolved now to try his Fortune against *Malaca*. He had a great Power at Sea, and was assisted by the Kings of *Pera*, *Pam* and *Marruaz*, and the Queen of *Japara* in the Island of *Jawa*. About the beginning of *June* the Fleet of these Confederates put to Sea, consisting of above Two hundred Sail. The King of *Ujantana* had sent an Embassadour to *D. Pedro de Silva*, Commander of *Malaca*, whose chief business was to discover what Force was in *Malaca*. *D. Pedro*, on the other side,

was

was privately informed by *Laximena*, the Embassadour's Father, of the King's design, which was to surprize *Malaca* by giving out, His Preparations were against *Achem*. He had like to compass his Ends, for the time was very short to provide. The King entred the Port, and burnt what Ships were in it, and at the same time possessed himself of the Suburbs. Then he intrenched, planted his Cannon, and began to batter the Fort furious and successfully, and at length reduced the Inhabitants to feed upon such things as are loathsom.

10. *D. Garcia de Meneses* sailing for the *Maluco's*, put into *Malaca* with his Caravel, where he had a hot Dispute with *Laxemena*, the Kings Admiral, who had betrayed his Masters Counsels to the Portugueses, and was then killed by them, with his Son, and his Ship sunk. But *D. Garcia* did not long survive this Honour; for attempting to gain a Gun that did much damage to the Town, he was killed, and with him above thirty Portugueses, brought by *D. Pedro de Silva* to rescue him. Mean while several Portugues Ships came into the Harbour from divers parts, the News of the danger *Malaca* was in had reached. The Enemy endeavoured to oppose them, and *Gomes Barreto* conducted them in with safety.

11. The Enemy resolved to Assault the City, and the Commander *D. Pedro* having Notice of it, provided to receive them. Scarce did they begin to mount their Ladders, when there fell on them a Storm of great pieces of Timbers, Stones and Grano's, so that in an instant above Eight hundred of them lay dead under the Wall. This obliged them to retire to their Works, and they resolved to starve the City. Our Commander fearing the Consequence of this Resolution, was advised by an unknown Souldier, (who before at the Assault promoted the throwing of Beams) to send abroad some Ships, and give out, They were going to put those Kings Countries to Fire and Sword. They believing it, left the Siege, which was prosecuted by the Queen of *Japara*, with the Men of *Java*, till *Giles Fernandez de Carvalho* coming unexpectedly with Two hundred Men, there ensued a bloody Fight; and at length the Enemies were put to a shameful flight, having lost above Two thousand Men, many Ships, and all their Cannon and Ammunition, whereof was a great quantity, and it was of great consequence to the City. What the Enemy could not execute by force when present, they did by perfidiousness after their flight. They poisoned a Well, whereof our Men drinking, above Two hundred died, to the great terrour of all, till the Cause was known.

12. The Affairs of *Ceylon* were now in a very turbulent posture; for *Madune*, contrary to the Agreement, distressed the King of *Cota*, who had recourse to *Gaspar de Azevedo*, Commander of *Columbo*, and he (with the King's Men and 100 Portugueses) defeated the Enemy. But the King of *Cota* being killed by a Musquet-shot, he of *Ceytavaca* renewed his Pretensions. The success was not answerable to his expectation; for the New Prince, assisted by the Portugueses, gave him a total Rout. At the beginning of *September* the Vice-Roy prepared to go in Person to remedy these Disorders. At the same time arrived from *Portugal* five Ships, and soon after two more. One was forced back to *Lisbon* by ill Weather. The Vice-Roy set out the beginning of *October*, with 3000 Men in 70 Sail.

13. The first thing he did after his Arrival at *Ceylon*, was to put upon the Rack some Subjects of that King he went to succour, that they might discover where their Princes Treasure was buried, as if he had been an Enemy, or had sent for him to make him his Treasurer. In the second place, he searched the Dead Man's Palace, and found 80000 Ducats. Thirdly, He demanded 200000 Ducats for his Charges, which was immediately granted. And, Fourthly, he took the Field with his Three thousand Portugueses, and Four thousand of the Kings Men. The King of *Ceytavaca* met them with a like Number; but soon fled into the Mountains, followed only by 100 Men.

His

His City was plundered, and the Booty very considerable. The Vice-Roy turned over the Earth, and dug up the Foundations of Buildings, to discover hidden Treasures. One was found, consisting of many Gold and Silver Idols of a large size, and other things. One half of right belonged to the King we pretended to Relieve, according to Agreement; but the Wants of *India* permitted no performance of Promises. Had the Indian broke his Word with the Christian, he had been a Barbarian. I know not what a Christian is, that breaks his with the Barbarian: Perhaps wiser Men know. It appeared we went in search of hidden Treasures, not to Relieve distressed Kings; when this King desiring Five hundred Portugueses might be left with him, to prevent his Enemies making Head again, he was left without any, because there was no more hopes of Treasure. But we shall soon see the King of *Cota* revenged by the King of *Portugal*, that it may appear the Actions of Kings are Divine, when they are their own.

14. Mean while *Don Antony de Noronha* scoured the Sea of *Calicut*, making great havock in it, and along the shoar. The Vice-Roy returned to *Cochin*, bringing with him a Kinsman of the King of *Cota*, who was become a Christian; went to *Portugal*, where he was received with Honour, and sent back to *India*, and died in the Faith. The Vice-Roy found the dispatch of the Homeward-bound Trading Ships, was retarded

tarded by the Prince of *Chembe*, he resolved to punish him, and set out with a Fleet that contained Four thousand Men. Thirty thousand were gathered from *Calicut* to oppose him, and some endeavoured to hinder the Landing, but were soon put to flight.

15. Our Men landed and marched to the City; the Enemy met them, and there followed a bloody Battle, in which we lost forty Men; but the Enemy was put to flight, and the Vice-Roy satisfied with ravaging the Country, returned to *Cochim*, and dispatched the Ships for *Portugal*. In them went an Embassadour from *Nautaquim*, Prince of *Tanixumaa*, or *Taquixima*, one of the Islands of *Japan*, and a rich Present; he desired Five hundred Men to conquer the Island *Lequio*, and in return offered to pay Tribute. The Embassadour was one *James Gomez de Almeyda*, who was lost in the Unfortunate Ship in which *Emanuel de Sousa & Sepulveda* was Cast-away, with his Wife *D. Leonor de Albuquerque & Sá*, who being put ashore at the Cape of *Good Hope*, endured incredible hardships, and at length died miserably, giving occasion to sundry Relations that are spread about the World, which being in part false, I will here give a brief Account of the whole Matter.

16. They got ashoar at the Cape of *Good Hope*, to the number of Five hundred and thirty Souls; and at first marched in good Order, with Colours and a Crucifix on high, designing for *Mozambique*. They began their march the 3<sup>d</sup> of *July*, and about the end of it several were left behind Famished, and among them a Natural Son of *Emanuel de Sousa*. *D. Leonor* marched afoot; for those who had carried her were no longer able to support themselves. At the end of three Months and a half they came to the Cottages of *Oinhaca*, a little Prince on the Banks of the River *Del Espiritu Sancto*: This good Old Man entertained them with great kindness, offering to relieve them till some Portugues Ships came to the Neighbouring Shoars, whereof his People had always Notice. He also warned them, That further on was the Little Prince *Ofumo*, who would do them all the harm he could, if they proceeded on their Journey. *Emanuel de Sousa* following his Destiny, went on; but seeing that of Five hundred and thirty Persons, he had but One hundred and twenty left, and that his Wife *D. Leonor* could hardly go farther, taking her turn with the Slaves in carrying her little Children, he began to shew some signs of Distraction, which was an incredible Grief to his Wife, who doted on him. Being come to *Ofumo's* Country, forgetting the Warning *Oinhaca* had given, he trusted him, and resolved there to wait for Portugues Ships. *Ofumo* designed to rob him, but feared his  
Mens

Mens Arms. He persuaded him to deliver them up, and he should have all Necessaries abundantly provided; pretending his Subjects did not supply him for Fear. Notwithstanding all Persuasions to the contrary, he delivered them, and had scarce done it when he was robbed of all his Jewels, and only their Cloaths left them. At this he run quite Mad, and his Wife taking him by one hand and her Son in the other, her Slaves following, and some few Men, they went on till the *Cafres* fell upon and stripped them. *D. Leonor* endeavoured to defend her self to no purpose, and with hazard of her Life, till her Husband persuaded her to choose the lesser Evil; but she thought it less Ill to dye, than be seen Naked by any, but her Husband. As soon as she was stripped, she made her Slaves stand about her, and sitting down on the Sand, made a Hole, where she covered her self to the Waste: Then looking upon the Pylot, *Andrew Vaz*, said, *You see how God permits, as a punishment of my sins, that my Husband, Children and I perish in this miserable manner. If you get to Portugal, or India, give an account of it.* The Pylot not able to return an Answer for grief, went whatever way Chance guided him. *Emanuel de Sousa* had run to the Wood, to gather some wild Fruit for his Wife and Children, who were perishing with Hunger, and returning found one dead, and her with the other scarce alive. He buried the dead Child, and returned for more Fruit, but too late; for

M

when

when he came they were both dead. After pausing a while, he made a Hole and buried his Son, and then his Wife; after which he ran into the thickest of the Wood without once looking back. Three of his Slaves got to *India*, who gave this Relation, as others who reached *Moçambique* did, of other Passages. Among these was *Sebastian de Sá*, who in this Misery experienced two Notable things: One, That the Gravity even of a Portugues Gentleman (as he was) must yield to Misfortunes; for he, to oblige the *Cafres* to give him some Sustainance, played the Antick, or Buffoon. The other, That this sort of Life is the surest in the World.

CHAP.

## C H A P. X.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy, D. Alfonso de Noronha.*

I. **T**HE Great Turk offended at what we had done at *Caxem*, or *Catifa*, and attempted at *Baçora*, studied Revenge; and to execute it set out *Pirbec*, an Old Pyrat, with Sixteen thousand Men in strong Gallies and other Vessels. *D. Alvaro de Noronha*, Commander of *Ormuz*, concluded this Storm threatned him. He sent some to discover the Enemy, and among them *Simon de Costa*, who met *Pirbec's* Son sent also before in a Galley to discover. Our Barque slipped under his very Oars so swiftly, that two of the Men were left hanging at them; the Galley pursues, but *Simon* scattering Money among his Men, may be said to have got off with *Golden Oars*. The young Man raged that this Prize should escape him; but was somewhat appeased when he met another Barque, in which was the Wife of *John de Lisboa*, Commander of *Mascate*, and those of some other Portugueses that lived there, with two Old Men, all sent away to *Ormuz* for fear of the Enemy. The Women were secured, and the Men put to the Oar.

2. The Enemies Fleet came before *Mascate*, which held out almost a Month against that great Power ; but was forced to submit and capitulate. *Pirbec* broke the Articles, putting the Captain and sixty Men to the Oar ; some of them were afterwards ransomed. This done, *Pirbec* goes on to *Ormuz*. *D. Alvaro de Noronha* had Nine hundred Men in that Fort, and in it was the King, his Wife, Children, and the Chief of their Court, who had taken Sanctuary there. He laid up Ammunition for a long Siege, and secured forty Sail that were in the Bay, among them one of those that the year before went from *Portugal*. The Turk being come to an Anchor, presently Landed and Encamped. He Intrenched, raised Batteries, planted much Cannon, and played it furiously without intermission for a whole Month. Finding he sustained much Loss, and laboured in vain, he plundered the City and went over to the Island *Queixome*, whither many considerable Men of *Ormuz* had withdrawn themselves ; here he got a great Booty, and retired.

3. Before *Pirbec* departed from *Ormuz*, he offered our Commander to ransom the Prisoners taken at *Mascate*, and sent him as a Present the Wife of *John de Lisboa*, the two Old Men, and the two Souldiers that hung to the Oars of his Sons Galley. *D. Alvaro* received the two last, and sent back the others with some Presents, and this Message ; *That the Present was in return for the Men he received : That the Old Men he sent, because they had not rather chose to lose their Lives,*  
*than*

than Liberty; and the Woman (though Innocent) to punish her Husbands guilt, by seeing her return into slavery. This Proceeding was no ways justifiable; and Pirbec to shew he did not again receive what he had once given, ordered them to be left upon the Shoar.

4. The Governour informed of the danger that threatned Ormuz, but not of its deliverance, with great diligence fitted a Fleet to go in Person to relieve it. All Ranks vied in aiding him towards this Work, at such time as six Ships arrived from Portugal, it being the beginning of September. He sailed as far as Diu, and hearing Ormuz was out of danger, returned to Goa. At this time D. Duarte Deça sailed for Ceylon, to succeed D. John Enriquez, deceased; with him went St. Francis Xaverius, carried by the desire of making a Spiritual Conquest.

5. A bold Turk, by Consent of Zamori, scoured the Seas with fifteen large Vessels well Manned. He fell upon Punical, where Emanuel Rodriguez Commanded with seventy Portugueses. The Fight was sharp, till Antony Franco taking the Enemies Colours, they fled. The Turk enraged sent again Fifteen hundred, who put all our Men to flight, except the Captain and seventeen, and these made a desperate resistance; but at last were obliged to quit the Town and fly to Bisme Naique, a Subject of Canara, who made them all Slaves. The Turk, after plundering the Town, returned to his Ships Victorious. The News being brought to Cochim, stirred up a general desire of Revenge. Whilst

things were debating, *Giles Fernandez de Carvalho* offered himself to go, and bear all the Charge, desiring only Shipping. All was provided with great diligence, and he set out in search of the Enemy; but by ill Luck *Lawrence Coello* fell into their hands, and was slain with all his Men, having fought bravely, *Carvalho* being no way able to come to his Relief, by reason of the contrary Wind.

6. On the 15th of August he fell upon the Turks with great Fury, and was received with no less Courage. The Fight lasted some hours with much bravery; all the Enemies Ships were boarded and taken, but much shattered; many killed in them, and others swimming to the Shoar. Then *Giles Fernandez* went to ransom the Prisoners, and restored *Emanuel Rodriguez*, not only his Liberty, but also Goods of great value the Turk had taken from him at *Punicale*.

7. At this time the two Brothers, *D. Alvaro de Ataide* and *D. Pedro de Silva*, at *Malaca*, were at Variance about that Command; the former was most to blame, endeavouring to Remove the other before his time. *James de Melo Coutino* and *D. Duarte Deça* acted worse in *Ceylon*; for, after the Example of the Vice-Roy, having taken Mony of that Prince to assist him with each fifty Men against his Enemy, the King of *Ceytavaca*; the first after demanding more Mony, sent but Twenty; the other after receiving his, sent none, and because he refused, more increased the Feud he ought without any Bribe  
to

to appease. *Melo* had secured that Princes Father by *D. Alfonso* his Order; upon pretence of Suspition; in reality, because he owed him 12000 Ducats of 100000 he promised on account of being succoured. *Deça*, instead of mending this Fault made it worse, keeping the Old Man with more rigour, and much more when he heard he was converted to the Faith, which might hinder his wicked Designs. A wicked practice of many Portugueses, who hindred the Conversion of many Souls, because it was an obstacle to filling their Purfes. The Prisoners Wife bribing the Guards got him out, and set him at the Head of a Body of Men she had in readiness to revenge this Outrage. He began to act successfully, till his Son appeased him. This year departed this Life *St. Francis Xaverius*, and the next was brought to *Goa* with great solemnity.

8. At *Constantinople* *Pirbec's* Head was cut off, for going beyond the Commission he received from the Turk, notwithstanding he made him a Present of all the Riches he carried. At the same time *Moradobec* set out by that Prince's Order with fifteen Gallies, to prevent the harm the Portugueses might do in revenge for what they had received. *Moradobec* was the Captain that lost *Catifa*, and desired to recover his Reputation. On the Coast of *Persia*, *D. James de Noronha* met him with his Fleet. They saluted one another with showers of Bullets and Arrows. In the height of the Engagement the Wind calming, left our Gallies

without motion. That of *Gonzalo Pereyra Marramaque* was far distant from the rest. The Turk laying hold of this opportunity besets him with his Galleys, tears all his Rigging and pierces him in a thousand places. However *Pereyra* stood firm, and did much Execution among the Enemies, but receives more harm; for almost all that was above Water of the Galleon was torn in pieces. The Gentlemen, Souldiers and Seamen fought with incredible Courage, and appeared wherever there was occasion, though weakned with several Wounds.

9. The Captain was always where the greatest danger threatned, and the Turks never durst board him. Our Admiral raved that he could not relieve and share with him in that Honour, and after making his Vows to Heaven, without being heard, even railed at Providence, stamped and tore his Beard for madness. He sent some Boats, but they could not reach the Galleon, because the Galleys compassed it round. Towards Night the Wind began to freshen, and the Admiral to move. The Turk not daring expect him, retired. The Admiral came up to the Galleon, admired the Bravery; but scarce knew the Men, they were so disguised with Wounds, Blood and the Smoot of the Powder. He embraced every one, and bestowed due Praises on them.

10. *Pereyra* his Galleon and Men were not in a condition to proceed, so they were sent to *Ormuz*, with some Barques. The Admiral pursued the Galleys, which kept close in with the Shoar. Our light Vessels forced a Ship that had been taken by *Pirbec* to run aground; the Men leaped Over-board to save themselves and were killed. The Ship was taken and brought off, and our Admiral returned to *Ormuz*, having in vain endeavoured to overtake *Moradobec*, who run up the *Euphrates*, where there was not Water for our Galleons. At this time arrived in *Goa* only one Ship from *Portugal*; four set out thence, one of them was forced back, the other two came later. In the first Ship went our admirable Poet *Luis Camoens*, to try if he could advance his Fortune by the Sword, which had been so little favourable by the Pen.

11. Now comes the King of *Cota's* Revenge (as was promised before) for those Wrongs done him by the Portugueses. One of the Orders *Fernandalvarez Cabral*, Captain of the Ship newly come from *Portugal*, carried, was, *That all that had been exacted from that King, should be restored*; Which, though slowly, was executed. Another, *That Bernardin de Soufa should be Imprisoned for what he had done at the Maluco's*: He was Imprisoned, but not long. And another, *That the Vice-Roy should no way employ D. James de Almeyda Commander of Diu*; for that the King had struck him out of his Books, never to be received into Service: This also was put in execu-

execution. *Almeyda's* Crime was, That he had seemed to undervalue the Kings Favour, refusing some Grace offered him. The Vice-Roy was concerned, that the differences between the Kings of *Pimienta* and *Cochim* grew daily greater. Towards the End of *November*, the Vice-Roy sailed with a good Fleet to assist the latter, who was our Friend. He was met at Sea by *D. James de Noronha* and his Fleet, with whom came *Gonçalo Pereyra Marramaque*, who was received with much Joy, for his great Bravery in the late Action with the Turks. It was agreed, after some Consultation, to land in the Islands called *Alagada's*, belonging to the King of *Pimienta*. The Natives in crowds opposed our Men landing with showers of Arrows; but the Cannon made way. After a vigorous Resistance all was destroyed with Fire and Sword; only one Man was lost on our side.

12. *Gomes de Silva* was left to prosecute the War, which he did so successfully that the King sued for Peace, which was concluded to our advantage, and he was satisfied with the restitution of the Islands, his Wife, and the People taken in them. The Vice-Roy dispatched the Ships for *Portugal*. That of *Ferdinand Alvarez Cabral* was Cast-away at *Aguada de S. Blas*; some of the Men got ashore in Boats. After a tedious Journey by Land, *Cabral* and *D. Alvaro de Noronha*, with his Family, were drowned in a River. The Vice-Roy sent his Son *D. Ferdinand*, with a good Fleet to the *Red-Sea*. He attempted

tempted to gain the Fort of *Dofar*, but was repulſed with loſs of ſeven or eight Men; ſo he returned without any effect.

14. At *Diu* aroſe New Troubles on account of the death of the King *Sultan Manaud*. He was bred with Poiſon (like *Mitbridates*,) that none might hurt him. When his Women were near their time, he opened them to take out the Children. He was one day hunting a Deer with ſome of them, and falling off from his Horſe hung by the Stirrup; the Horſe dragged him, and one of the Women running cut the Girts with a Cimiter; in requital he killed her, ſaying, *A Woman of ſuch courage, had enough to kill him.* A Page, in whom he had great confidence, murdered him; for Tyrants always dye by the hands of thoſe they truſt. A Child, accounted his Son, ſucceeded him. The Nobility offended at the Inſolence of *Madre Maluco*, who with the Title of *Governour* managed the Affairs of the Crown, rebelled in ſeveral parts. One of theſe was *Abixcan* at *Diu*, who ſuffering his Men to Affront ours, obliged *D. James de Almeyda* to enter the City with Five hundred Men, killing a great number, and plundering their Houſes. *Abixcan*, though late, ſaw his Error, and came to Compoſition; and was afterwards more ſubmiſſive than had been at firſt deſired of him.

14. *D. James de Noronha* succeeded *Almeyda* in that Post, in pursuance of the Kings Order before-mentioned. The Moors forgetting their Fault, and the Punishment they had incurred, relapsed again. *Noronha* with Six hundred Men so refreshed their Memories, that they abandoned the City. *Cide Elal*, who Commanded in the Castle that was in the City, offered to defend himself; but seeing our Men begin to scale it, submitted to march away without Arms. The Castle was demolished. Scarce was it done, when *Abixcan* appeared with Four hundred Men. *Ferdinand de Castanoso* advanced to meet him with One hundred and twenty; but Three hundred of the Enemies Horse obliged him to retire in such disorder, that on a sudden he found he had but seventeen Men left. He posted himself where the Horse could not come, and the Three hundred Enemies dismounting beset the 18, who back to back defended themselves till they were all killed, their Hearts cut out, and carried to the General.

15. *D. James de Noronha* marched on with the rest of the Men, ignorant of what had happened; but so impatient to engage with *Abixcan*, that he could no way be dissuaded from pressing forward. Meeting the Three hundred Horse, he fell on furiously and put them to flight; but *Abixcan* coming on with his Cannon, *D. James* was forced to retire, rather losing than gaining Reputation in this Action. Common Conveniency brought them to an Accommodation. *Noronha* this day

day lost by his Rashness, what he often deserved for his Valour; for the Factor endeavouring to stop his fury, and saying to him, *He ought to consider the King's Fort would be lost.* He Answered in a Passion, *No matter, when I am gone, all is gone.* This saying was remembred when he was in election to be Vice-Roy of *India*, and deprived him of that Post; because it was thought, so great a Trust could not with safety be reposed upon so rash a Man.

16. The Great Turk hearing *Miradobec* was come off worse than the Unfortunate *Pirbec*, and *Alechelubij* making great boast of what he would do, gave him the Command of fifteen Galleys. *D. Ferdinand*, who was come out of the *Red-Sea*, went after them. On the 25th of *August* he had sight of them near *Mascate*. *Alechelubij* not daring to give Battle, endeavoured to get off with all his Galleys; but six of them could not escape, being taken by our Caravels.

17. *D. Ferdinand* put into *Mascate*, refitted the Galleys, bought the Slaves, and appointed them Captains. *Alechelubij* pursued by some of our Vessels was drove into *Suratt* with seven of his nine Galleys, and there shut up by *D. Hierome de Castello Branco*, *Nuno de Castro* and *D. Emanuel Mascarenhas*. The other two were pursued by *D. Ferdinand de Monroy* and *Antony Valadares*, till they were beaten to pieces on the Coast of *Damam* and *Daru*.

18. But because one is coming to succeed our Vice-Roy, let us say somewhat of him. He was modest, easie, and not active, which was the Cause his Government answered not expectation. As to his Person, he was of a middle S stature, a graceful Countenance and agreeable Behaviour; his Complexion swarthy; his Hair black. In the number of *Vice-Roys* he was the 5<sup>th</sup>, in that of *Governours* the 17<sup>th</sup>, and held it four years, the second of the Name and Sirname.

---

## C H A P. XI.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Peter de Mascarenhas, from the Tear 1554 till 1555, King JOHN the Third still Reigning.*

1554. 1. **D**On Peter de Mascarenhas was of one of the best Families of *Portugal*, and had born the most considerable Offices in the Kingdom, and was 70 years of Age when named Vice-Roy of *India*. He set out of *Lisbon* with six Ships, one of them was drove back, and that in which he went, as soon as he Landed at *Goa*, sunk downright. In these Ships were Two thousand Landmen. The first thing the Vice-Roy did, he

he appointed his Nephew *Ferdinand Martinez*, Admiral, to the great dissatisfaction of all Men. *Martinez* had 32 Sail given him, and Orders to bring to *Goa* the 7 Turkish Galleys that were blocked up at *Suratt*. *Caragen*, Commander of that place, would not permit it, and gave good sufficient Reasons for his refusing; so by consent of both sides they were taken to pieces, and the Turks fled into the Woods and Mountains: The late Vice-Roy *D. Alfonso de Noronha* now sailed home with the Trading Ships; whereof that Commanded by *Belchior de Sousa* was lost, with all the Men.

2. The Great Turk (as it were) foreseeing the Fate of *Alecbelubij*, immediately sent after him *Zafar*, a Janizary, to take upon him the Command of the Galleys: But too late; for he only came time enough to hear the News of their Destruction. He took four Merchant Ships of ours bound for *Ormuz*, and returned rich to *Suez*. About the same time *Gemes de Silva* took several Prizes in the Sea of *Calicut*.

3. The Vice-Roy sent *F. Gonçalo Rodrigues*, and *Bro. Fulgentius Freyre*, of the Society of *Jesus*, to persuade the Emperour of *Ethiopia*, to redress the Abuses introduced among his People in Matters of Religion, and with them went *James Diaz*, well versed in the Affairs of that Empire. The Emperour could not be moved to admit our manner of Baptism, and abolish Circumcision; the Priest continued at his Court, but to no effect. In *February* set out *Emanuel de Vasconcelos*

*concelos* with three Galleons, and five small Vessels, to discover what *Zafar* was doing at *Suez*. He spent some time under Mount *Felix*, and returned without doing any thing. With him went the Famous *Luis de Camoens*, who finding no employment for his Sword, exercised his Pen.

4. Some great Subjects of *Hidalcan* at this time, Treated with the Vice-Roy about making *Mealecan*, who had lived long at *Goa*, King of *Visapor*; and assisting to support him in that Title. In Return, they offered to make over to the Crown of *Portugal* the Lands of *Concan*, worth a Million of yearly Revenue. A great Bait for our Avarice. The Profit was considered, but not the Difficulties, and *Peter de Faria* his Advice to *Martin Alfonso* on the same occasion was now forgot. We shall see in its place, how much more proper it had been to consider the Difficulties, than the Profit. The Offer was admitted, and *Meale* immediately Proclaimed King of *Visapor*; and his Wife and Children left at *Goa* as Hostages for the performance of our Hopes. Three thousand Portugues Foot, and Two hundred Horse, marched with a Body of the Natives of the Island. After a small Resistance they took the Fort of *Ponda*, and sent Advice to the Vice-Roy, who set out with the New King, and at *Ponda* delivered him to his People that there waited for him. He left *D. Antony de Norona* to Command the Fort with 600 Men.

5. The

5. The Vice-Roy returned so sick to *Goa*, that he died in a few days; and it was believed if he had continued in that Government some years, he had re-established Truth, Justice and Honesty in *India*. It is a mark of his Justice, That he gave no Employment to any of his Servants; because he would not deprive them of it to whom it was due by Merit. A Friend of a Court-Favourite, complaining he did not dispatch him after serving Three years; He Answered, *I am now busie about those that have served twenty, fifteen, ten or five years; as soon as I come to those that have served three, I promise I'll remember you.*

6. *D. Peter Mascarenas* had such an awful Presence and majestick Deportment, that no Body before him durst do or say any thing undecent. He is famous on six several accounts, any one whereof might give another a Name after death: He was a Valiant Souldier, a Wise Commander, a Magnificent Embassadour, a Singular Tutor, a Just Vice-Roy, and what is best of all, a very Good Christian. He was Tall, and though lean, Graceful; his Complexion brown: His Gravity no ways made him intractable. Of Vice-Roys he was the 6<sup>th</sup>, of Governours the 18<sup>th</sup>; held it ten Months, and was the second of the Name and Sirname. He is Buried in the Church of *Alcazar do Sal*, where he had built a Tomb worthy of him.

## C H A P. XII.

*The Government of Francis Barreto, from the Year 1555, till 1558, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

1. **F**Francis Barreto succeeded D. Ruyter Mascarenas with the Title of Governour. He was a Gentleman of Merit, and qualified for this Post, and had gained much Esteem, being Commander of *Bazaim*. His Government began with a Fire kindled by a Squib, which burnt Ten the finest Vessels in *India*, notwithstanding he used the utmost diligence, and promised great Rewards to save them: Yet this Care saved the rest of the Fleet. He soon repaired this Damage, building others no less beautiful.

2. He went to *Ponda*, to carry on what his Predecessor had began, by Installing *Mealeacan* King, and appointed Officers to receive the Revenues about *Ponda*, leaving D. Ferdinand de Monroy in that Fort, and sending D. Antony de Noronha, who had it before, to receive the Revenues at *Concam*. *Xacolim* Aga, who was gathering the same for *Hidalcan*, with Seven thousand Men prevented him. The Governour sent a supply of Ammunition to *Noronha*, which he no sooner received, but he marched to *Curalé*,  
of

of which he took possession, (the Commander of it being fled) and with Kindness attracted the Natives to come and inhabit the Town and Country, leaving Portugues Officers to look to the Revenue. Then hearing that *Xacolim* continued gathering the Rents, he went to find him. By the way he met two Ships, in which was *Xacolim's* Wife, Children, and Goods of Value, which he fearful of some danger sent to *Cambaya*. *Noronha* easily made himself Master of all.

3. Not far from *Achara* he halted, and designed to pass the Night. *Xacolim* sent a Thousand Men to surprize ours; but they were upon their Guard, and *D. John* the *Morisco* falling upon them killed Seventy, and put the rest to flight; after the Pursuit he returned to *D. Antony*. They marched together to meet *Xacolim*, who was drawn up in good Order on the other side of a River. After a vigorous opposition our Men forded it, and there ensued a bloody Battle, in which *D. Antony* and *Xacolim* met, and having tryed each other parted. In this Action were lost 24 Portugueses, above 1000 of the Enemy were slain, the rest fled. Our Men proceeding, gathered the Revenue.

4. Mean while *Meale* was solemnly Proclaimed King at *Visapor*. He enjoyed it not long; for there were some of those who set him up, that designed to betray him to *Hidalcan*, who offered great Rewards for him. He succeeded not this way; but did,

purchasing Fifteen thousand Men of the King of *Bisnagar*, that were so successful, they killed the Chief of those had made *Meale* King, and took him Prisoner. *Hidalcan* immediately sent Forces to recover the Lands where *D. Antony* was employed. The Governour hearing of it sent him Orders to withdraw, as also to *Ferdinand de Monroy*, who was at *Ponda*. They unwillingly obeyed, remembering how prudently *Peter de Faria* had before dissuaded this Undertaking.

5. This year sailed from *Lisbon* five Ships, one of them was Cast-away at the Island *Tercera*, and another at the Islands beyond *Madagascar*. The Captain of this last left about Four hundred of his Men on that Shoar, and in his Long-Boat got to *Goa*. These Four hundred who were left, built a small Vessel and arrived at *Cochim*. In the other Ships went the Bishop *D. Belchior Carnero*, a Jesuit, and some other Religious Men, sent by the Pope to the Emperour of *Ethiopia*. *D. Alvaro de Silveyra* was now made Admiral of a Fleet of 21 Sail, provided for the Sea of *Calicut*, and against the Queen of *Olala*, who refused to pay her Tribute. He over-run all those Coasts with Fire and Sword, destroying many Towns and Ships, and all things that stood in the way; particularly the City *Mangalor*, and a sumptuous Pagod. *Zamori* sensible of his Losses, desired Peace, which was concluded. *Silveyra* returned Victorious.

6. Let us return to *Ceylon*. *Tribuli Pandar* having made his Escape (as was related) out of Prison, fled to *Balande*. *Madune* subtilly exasperates him against the Portugueses, and sent him Six hundred Chingala's, with whom and his other Men he was so successful, that he reduced the Towns of *Paneture*, *Caleture*, *Maça*, *Berberi*, *Gale* and *Beligam*, to the last Extremities, destroying our Churches, and killing many Christians, Converted by the Religious of *St. Francis*, who first Preached there. Now comes *Alfonso Pereyra de Lacerda* to take upon him this Command: *Madune*, who before had assisted *Pandar*, now offers to aid *Lacerda* against him. He accepts the Offer. The King sent his Son *Raju* by the way of *Caleture* with an Army. *Lacerda* sent *Ruy Pereyra* with Two hundred Men, and *Antony de Spinola* with One hundred two other ways to assault the City *Palandu*, where *Tribuli* was. They beset the Town at one time, and after a vigorous Resistance the Portugueses entred it; the King fled, his Wife was taken, and many of his Men killed. The Portugueses returned Victorious, and *Madune* obtained one of the Ends he had proposed to himself, which were either, That the Portugueses should destroy *Pandar*, or he them.

7. The beginning of this Year sailed 1556.  
*John Peixoto* with two Gallies for the *Red-Sea*, to discover what was doing at *Suez*. He found all quiet, and being loath to return without doing something, he Landed

before Day in the Island *Suanquem*, with the King whereof we were at Variance. It being a dead time of Night, he found all asleep, and might say (as a Prince who killed a Man that was sleeping) that he left those Islanders as he found them; for many were killed before they awaked, others after. The same fate befell the King in his Palace. *Peixoto* returned to his Galliot, carrying Slaves and Booty without receiving the least damage. Next day, keeping along the Coast he destroyed several Towns, and returned to *Goa*, having purchased as much Honour with two small Vessels, as others with many. He brought away *F. Gonçalo Rodriguez*, whom he found at *Arquico*, much dissatisfied that he had not prevailed with the Emperour of *Ethiopia*, to admit of the Rites of the Church.

8. The King of *Bafora*, oppressed by the Turks, made now the same Offers to the Governour, he had done before to the Vice-Roy *D. Alfonso de Noronha*, in case he would assist him to throw off the Turkish Yoak. The Conditions were admitted, and neither this time did it succeed; for *D. Alvaro de Silveira* going upon this Design with twenty Sail, met not with the success he had the year before against the *Malabars*. A terrible Storm so disabled him in that Port, that he was not in a condition to attempt any thing a second time. *Michael Rodriguez Coutino* prospered better, going to the Lands of *Salfete* and *Bardes* against some Parties of *Hidalcan*, who sought Revenge  
for

for our favouring *Meale*. All the Sea-Ports were destroyed with Fire and Sword, and many Ships perished. He killed and took many Prisoners, and returned with Honour and Riches to *Goa*. The chief of the Booty was a great Ship of *Meca*, taken at *Dabul* after a sharp engagement; for there were Two hundred Moors in her, who killed eight of our Men.

9. This Misfortune the more enraged *Hidalcan*; and to mend it, he sends a numerous Army into those same Lands. The Governour set out with a strong Body to oppose him. The War lasted all the Winter, without any Action worthy relating. In *September* arrived four Ships from *Portugal*; in them went *Ferdinand de Sousa* and *Castellobranco*, Embassadour to the Emperour of *Ethiopia*, and *F. John Nunes Barreto*, Patriarch of that stubborn People. His Companion was the Bishop *Andrew de Oriedo*, who did nothing, because the Emperour could not be reduced to change his Old Rites. With these came to *India* *F. Gonçalo de Sileyra*, to be Provincial; he afterwards received the Crown of Martyrdom in *Monomotapa*. All this shall be related in its proper place.

10. The Governour set out to Visit our Forts in the North, with a Fleet consisting of One hundred and fifty Sail of all sorts. He gained the Mountain and Fort *Azarim* for a small purchase, by the means of *Cose Mahomet*, a Trusty Moor, living at *Bazaim*. This Mountain is not far from the City,

and rises very upright for the space of a League; a little below the Top it is girt with a sort of Border standing out, which renders it almost inaccessible, the rest being very difficult of ascent. It is kept by Three-score Men, who need no other Arms to defend them but the Stones that lye there, which rolled down the Passes, must carry before them all that is in the way. The Garrison lives upon the Top, which is plain and almost round. They light themselves with sticks of Wood that grow there, and burns like a Torch, with that odds, that they cannot be quenched by Wind or Water.

11. *Antony Moniz Barreto* was sent to take possession of this place; he left there a Captain and 60 Portugueses, and went on to take the Fort of *Manora*, not far distant, which the Inhabitants abandoned; he left there *George Manbans* with 120 Men, and returned to *Bazaim*, where he found the Governour receiving an Embassy from the King of *Cinde*, who desired Succour against a Tyrant that infested him. We were desirous of this Prince's Friendship, and thought fit to purchase it by Relieving him. Seven hundred Men were sent to him in Twenty eight Vessels, all Commanded by *Peter Barreto Rolim*.

12. The Fleet arrived safe at *Tatá*, the Court of the King of *Cinde*. The Prince, who was there, visited *Barreto*, and sent word of his Arrival to his Father, who was absent in the Field: He Answered, desiring  
our

our Commander to wait till he Advised what was fit to be done. *Barreto* stayed, and soon after hearing the King was agreed with his Enemy without giving him notice; he asked of the Prince leave to depart, and that he would pay the Charge of the Fleet, as was promised by the Embassadour. The Answer was so little to satisfaction, that *Barreto* landed his Men, entred the City, and in the Fury killed above Eight thousand Persons, and destroyed by Fire the value of above two Millions of Gold, after loading the Vessels with one of the richest Booties that had been taken in *Asia*. He lost not one Man in this Action. He spent eight days, destroying all on both sides *Indus*. The Fort of *Bandel* made some Resistance, but being taken was demolished.

13. *Gaspar de Monterroyo*, a Souldier of Note, going accidentally into a Wood, met some Blacks, who bid him go no farther; for hard-by there was a Serpent had just then devoured a Bullock. He desiring to see such a Monster as they described, went on till he discovered the Head, which was of a wonderful bigness; and not satisfied, came so near as to touch it with the Point of his Sword, and the Monster lifted up its Head; and he gave it such a fortunate stroak on a soft place, that it soon after died. It was thirty Foot long, and proportionable in bigness. *Barreto* returned thus Victorious over Men and Monsters to *Chaul*. There he found Orders to go to *Dabul*, where he would find *Antony Pereyra Brandao*

*dam* Admiral of that Coast. They were to joyn in order to destroy that City in part of Revenge, for the damage *Hidalcan* did us. Being joyned they attacked the City, and though vigorously defended, it was taken, and wholly reduced to a heap of Rubbish. Then they did the same to all the Villages upon the shoar of that River.

---

### CHAP. XIII.

#### *The End of the Government of Francis Barreto.*

1557. 1. **H***idalcan's* General, *Nazer Maluco*, entered the Lands of *Salsete* and *Bardes* with 2000 Horse, and 18000 Foot. The Governour with 3000 Portugueses, 1000 Canara's, and 200 Horse, met him in the Fields of *Ponda*, having then but 17000 Men, and a Mountain on his back. He furiously attacked, put him to flight, and returned victorious to *Goa*. *D. Peter de Meneses*, who Commanded the Fort of *Rachol*, did what he could, which was not much, because the Enemy was too numerous. *John Peixoto* vigorously opposed *Moratecan* in the Lands of *Bardes*. A Renegado Portugues, who had fortified himself, doing him much harm, he assaulted and routed him twice, killing 200 of his Men,

Men, and a Captain. *Nazer Maluco* intrenched himself again at *Ponda*.

2. Five Ships arrived now from *Portugal*, three of them were Cast-away in their Return home; one at *Tierra del Natal*, another at the Island *St.Thomas*, and the third at *Madagascar*. The arrival of these Ships, and some damage we had done *Hidalcan*, obliged him to conclude a Peace, which we sued for, yet was not dishonourable.

3. *D.Duarte Deça*, Commander of *Ternate*, was not idle. He was harsh and covetous, so easily falling out with the King, he Unchristian-like Imprisoned him, his Mother and Brother *Cachil Guzarate*, using them very unworthily, and to compleat his Cruelty, ordered they should have nothing to eat. Publick Complaints obliged him to consent the Hospital of *Misericordia* should maintain them; and his desire of killing them made him so base as to poison their Water, which was discovered by a Stone the King had in a Ring. The *Ternatenses* took Arms, and called in the *Tidores*, so that the Fort was in great danger.

4. *D.Duarte* having received Relief, ventured to fight at Sea with as good success, as if Justice had been on his side: But the Portugueses themselves no longer able to endure his Obstinacy, put him into Custody, and discharged the Prisoners, which put an end to that Discord. No Man would take upon him the Command of the Fort, till *Antony Pereyra Brandam* was forced by the People to accept of it in Trust, till the Governour disposed

disposed of it. Whilst some Portugueses in the *Maluco's*, by their Actions, appeared most barbarous Heathens, some Infidels became Christians; a thing to be admired, having such ill Examples before them. The King of the Island *Bacham* was converted by *F. Antony Vaz*, a Jesuit.

5. The War continued at *Goa*. A Moor with Five hundred Men waded over the Ford of *Zacorla*, in the Island *Choram*, and surprizing those few Portugueses that were in it, gained some advantage, till others coming in from several Parts, drove them headlong into the Water, where many of them were drowned. The Governour hearing of this, marched to their Relief, and sent before *George Mendoca*, Commander of the City, with some Gentlemen, who behaved themselves well, and brought many Heads of Moors to the Governour. All was kept quiet afterwards by *D. Francis Mascarenhas*, who was left in the Island with 300 Men.

6. The Governour desiring to secure the Promontory of *Chaul*, asked leave of the King *Nizamuxa* to fortifie it. He not only refused it, but secured the Messenger, and sent 30000 Men, who began to build an impregnable Fort there. The Governour sent *Alvaro Perez de Sotomayor* with some Ships, to keep the Mouth of the Port till he came, which was soon after. He brought 4000 Portugueses, besides Natives. The Enemy better advised, proposed a Peace, which was concluded to our content, on  
Condition

Condition the Work of the Fort should not advance. The Governour returned home. A Miracle was seen here, which was, That the Moors could never cut down, or remove with force of Elephants, a small Wooden-Cross, that was fixed upon a Stone.

7. The Governour having settled Affairs at *Goa*, was wholly employed in fitting out a mighty Fleet against the King of *Achem*, who is the only Terrour of *Malaca*. In a few Months he provided 25 Galleons, 10 Gallies, and 80 Galliot, all so well furnished, it renewed the hopes of fixing our Empire in *India*. But all this Industry falls to nothing; for now a new Governour comes, and the New ones never prosecute the designs of the Old. However this Force was well employed, though not as our Governour designed.

8. *Francis Barreto* brought to *Lisbon* a Jewel wrought by the hand of Nature. A Portugues Souldier on the Coast of the Island *Ceylon*, met a *Fogue* (that is, a sort of Penitent Heathen,) who among other things had picked up a brown Pebble, of the shape and bigness of an Egg, on which were represented the Heavens in several Colours, and in the midst of them the Image of our Blessed Lady with our Saviour in her Arms. The Souldier gave him some small thing for this Stone; and afterwards it came to the hands of *Francis Barreto*, who presented it to *Queen Catherine*, and by virtue of it God wrought several Miracles in *India* and *Portugal*.

9. *Francis Barreto* was a couragious, discreet and generous Gentleman, and such a Governour as *India* now mourns for. He afterwards returned as Governour and Conquerour of the Empire of *Monomotopa*, where he died, as shall be seen in its proper place. He had a stately Prefence, his Complexion tawny, and black Hair. He Governed three years, was the 19<sup>th</sup> Governour, and second of the Name.

---

#### C H A P. XIV.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Constantine de Braganza, from the Year 1558, till 1561, in the Reign of King SEBASTIAN.*

1558. 1. **A** Bout the End of the Government of *Francis Barreto*, died King *John* the Third. In him ended the good Fortune of *Portugal*, as did that of *India* in the Vice-Roy sent thither, after his death, by those who managed the State during the Minority of King *Sebastian*. *D. Constantin*, Brother to *Theodosius*, Duke of *Bragança*, was 30 years of Age when he accepted this Charge. What he wanted in Age for so great an Employ, was made up by being of the Blood Royal, and by his great Parts and natural Endowments.

2. He

2. He sailed from *Lisbon* on the 7<sup>th</sup> of *April*, with four Ships and two Thousand Men, and arrived at *Goa* about the beginning of *September*. Three things remarkable happened in his Voyage and at his Arrival; the first, that he had not the least bad Weather in his Passage; the second, the great demonstrations of Joy wherewith he was received; and the third, that he no way affronted the Governour that went off, as was always used in *India*.

3. Our Vice-Roy commenced as usual, by sending Commanders to Forts. *D. Payo de Noronha* went to *Cananor*, and by his Ingratitude in receiving some Presents sent by that King (though not with sincere meaning) gave occasion to his resentment, signified by not suffering the Portugueses to resort to the City. The Vice-Roy sent fourteen Sail to their assistance, and gave the Command of them to *Luis de Melo de Silva*. The Vice-Roy was bent upon possessing himself of the Town of *Damam*, a place of consequence, to secure the Lands of *Baçaim*, and whereof *Francis Barreto* had obtained a Grant from the King of *Cambaya*. The difficulty lay in wresting it out of the hands of *Cide Bofata*, who was in Rebellion against his Prince, which was the chief Motive why he so freely gave what he could not get for himself. *Bofata* was well provided, and with a Resolution not to sell the place at an easie rate. The Vice-Roy having held a Council about it, the result was, he should go thither in person.

4. He first dispatched the Trading Ships for *Portugal*, in which went his Predecessor; the Ships were seven, and only three of them came to *Lisbon*. One was lost at the Island *St. Thomas*: Two were forced back to *Mozambique*, in one of which was the late Governour *Francis Barreto*: The Captain of a fourth finding her sinking, got into a Long-Boat with 60 Men, and came to *Goa*, the rest of the Men all perished. *Francis Barreto*, at *Mozambique*, spent 20000 Ducats of his own in refitting the two Ships. They set out again, and being in distress, the other Ship ungratefully forsook him; yet he afterwards seeing her perishing saved all the Men, so that he had 1137 Persons aboard. In this condition, not able to go forward, he almost miraculously returned again to *Mozambique*. This year ended with the Foundation of that Fort, and return of *Barreto* to *Goa*.

5. *Luis de Melo*, at *Cananor*, being assaulted in his Trenches by 3000 Moors, put them to shameful flight; and while he sent for Succours to the Vice-Roy, followed Fortune that now seemed to Favour him. Mean while the Vice-Roy set out with the Fleet, had been fitted out by *Barreto*, having increased it to 100 Sail.

6. The Vice-Roy arriving at *Damam*, sent *D. James de Noronha* to take a view of the Works; he found them strong, and defended by 4000 Men. Notwithstanding all this Preparation, no sooner our Men landed but the Enemy fled, abandoning both City and Fort. The Vice-Roy entred, and giving

Thanks.

Thanks to Almighty God for this Bloodless Victory, blessed the Mosque under the Invocation of the Purification of the Blessed Virgin, on which day it was taken.

7. The Enemy, after their flight, encamped at *Parnel*, two Leagues off, and thence with 2000 Horse infested the Vice-Roy. *Antony Moniz Barreto* offered with 500 Men to remove them. He marched all Night towards the Enemy, and being come up with them, found that he had but 120 Men, the rest wandring in the dark through unknown ways; yet thus he attacks and puts them to flight, as believing the Vice-Roy was there with his whole Force. The Morning discovering from how small a number they had fled, *Bofata* and his Men come down from a Hill, whither they had retired, and falling upon *Barreto* pressed him hard, till those that were scattered coming up, he again routed the Enemy, killing 500 of them. In their Camp were found 36 good Pieces of Cannon, some Cart Loads of Copper-Mony, and other Plunder.

8. The Vice-Roy with Liberality and good Usage attracted the Country People, who were fled for fear; and confirmed to the Neighbouring King of *Sarçeta* the Duties he had in *Damam*. For the more security he resolved to possess himself of the Island *Balzar*, not far distant. He intended to go thither in Person, but sent before *D. Peter de Almeida* with 150 Horse, and as many Foot. The People of *Balzar* abandoned the Town, which *D. Peter* entred, and the Vice-Roy  
 O being

being come, left *Alvaro Gonzales Pinto* to Command there with 120 Men, and some Cannon. Being returned to *Damam*, he sent *D. Alvaro de Silveyra* with 20 Sail to the *Red-Sea*, being informed *Casar* was fitting out his Gallies. This Fleet was disperied by Storms, and put into several Ports of *India*, without effecting any thing.

9. *D. James de Noronha* was appointed Commander of *Damam*, and had 1200 Men given him under five Captains, who were to keep Tables for them. Tables are kept in *India* for such as have not any thing of their own; or if they have, yet will accept of this Liberality. I admire there are men that will stoop to receive this, but much more there are any that give it; for the same Men when they come to *Spain*, have not the Heart to give a stick of Wax, which there is worth nothing, and here a Half-peny. The Vice-Roy after this success returned to *Goa*.

10. In the City *St. Thomas*, or *Meliapor*, a Portugues, one of those who more religiously worship their Interest, than the Heathens their Idols, and of those there are many in *India*; persuaded *Rama Rajo*, King of *Bisnagar*, to march against the City, telling him the Plunder would be worth two Millions, and it would be a great Service to the Idols he worshipped, which were there thrown down by the Christians. He was a good Christian, that was so zealous for Idols. The King hearkning to the hopes of Gain, set out with 500000 Men. *Peter de*

*de Ataide* encouraged the Inhabitants to defend themselves; but they, to palliate their Fear said, *It was but Reason the King should be admitted to what was his own.* *Ataide* went away to *Goa*; the Townsmen prepared for the reception of the King, and sent him a Present of 4000 Ducats, where-with he was somewhat appeased. He Encamped and would not enter the City; but ordered all the Inhabitants of both Sexes, and all Ages, and all their Goods, to be brought to his presence. Which being performed, he found the whole Value did not exceed 80000 Ducats. Enraged at the Wickedness of the Informer, he ordered him to be thrown to the Elephants, who tore him to pieces. He discharged the Citizens, and restored all their Goods so punctually, that only a Silver Spoon being missing among them all, it was sought and restored.

11. *Luis de Melo de Silva*, who sailed last year for the Coast of *Malabar*, did much harm there, and ruined the Trade of the Moors. At *Mangalor* he ordered two Captains to bring him a Vessel belonging to our Enemies of *Cananor*, that was in the River, but the Owners and some of the Townsmen coming to defend it, our Men were worsted. *Melo* enraged hereat assaulted the Town, and put all Living Creatures to the Sword; then fired it. An old Moor leading a Company of the Inhabitants that fled, with a Dagger in his hand met our Commander, and struck him through the Arm.

He laying hold of his long Hair, delivered him to those that were near, saying, *Take away that Devil.* He had scarce said it, when the Moor was cut in pieces. *Melo* having burnt the City with loss of some few Men, returned to his Ships.

12. Thirteen Ships of *Calicut* and *Cananor* were coming up to attack *Melo*; but he went out to meet them with only seven. He was formost in his Galliot, and the Admiral of *Calicut*, a Turk, advanced before the rest to meet him. As soon as they came within Cannon-shot, our Gunner made one so fortunate, it swept him from Stem to Stern, and in a Minute the Keel of the Ship appeared above Water, all the Men perishing. Three other Ships board the Galliot, and kill many of the Men; but *Melo* stepping forward, not only cleared his own Deck, but pursued into the Ships, in which not one Man was left alive. Our other Vessels took the other three Ships of *Calicut*, so that not one of them escaped; and the Admiral of *Cananor* fled with his seven, having only stood by as a Witness of what the others did. The Enemy lost above 400 Men. For a long time after the People along that Coast would not eat Fish, because a man's Fingers were found in the Belly of one.

13. *Luis de Melo* went thus Victorious to *Goa*, and the Vice-Roy confined him; because he had done those Actions when his Presence was required at *Cananor*. His Confinement was censured, and the Vice-Roy  
being

being none of those that will obstinately persist in their Opinion, though it do never so much mischief; he went in person to be Friends with *Melo* at *Pangim*, where he was in Custody. *Melo* knowing well how to esteem such Favours from Superiours, was abundantly satisfied, and returned with his Fleet, by the Vice-Roy's Order, to *Cananor*, because *D. Payo de Noronha*, was in some distress there. *Emanuel de Vasconcelos* went to *Ternate* with three Ships, and other small Vessels.

14. *Luis de Melo* was the Life of *Noronha*: who was in great danger at *Cananor*, being threatned with a Siege by all the Princes of *Malabar* stirred up by *Ade Rajao*, not without some provocation given by *Noronha*. *Rajao* with 100000 Men attacks the Fort, and enters the Trenches. *Melo*, who was in them with 60 Men, flew about like Lightning; *Antony de Villena*, with Fifty, did Wonders among the Moors, who had entred his House. In fine, the whole number, which was 500 Men, did more than human Actions among that multitude of Enemies. It is said, *A Religious Man at his Prayers saw the Holy Ghost in the form of a Pigeon on a Beam of the Church, and shewed it to many others*. Our Men hearing of it fell on with new Vigour, and so effectually that they put the Enemy to flight, having killed 15000 of them. Of the Portugueses 25 were lost. The fight lasted 12 Hours. *Luis de Melo* played the part of a Souldier as well as Commander. *Francis Riscado*, a Man of ordinary Extra-

tion, performed extraordinary acts of Valour. The Enemy went home admiring the Valour of our Men, and Peace was restored to *Cananor*.

15. It is strange, that among all the Churches erected in *India*, none till this time had been dedicated to its Apostle *St. Thomas*. Our Vice-Roy taking this into Consideration, began to build at *Goa* a sumptuous Church to him, which was not finished, because the time of his Government expired, and remains to this day as a heap of Ruins, none of his Successors having put his Hand to advance so good a Work.

## C H A P. XV.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy D. Constantin, in the Reign of King SEBASTIAN.*

I. **A**T this time the Emperour of *Ethiopia* was much molested by the Turks and Moors, and obtained some Victories over them, having some Portugueses in his Service. Our Bishop could not work upon him to leave his Heretical Customs, and therefore resolved to leave him; but stayed at the Request of the Portugueses.

The

The Emperour being Invaded by the King of *Mallaffays*, contrary to the Advice of the Portugueses, marched to meet him, and they followed. He was slain by *Mallaffays*; and they seeing his Subjects fly, cast themselves among the Enemies, and after doing more than is credible, were most of them killed.

2. The Turk desiring to possess himself of the *Arabian Ports* on the side next *Persia*, sent this Year an Officer with two Gallies and seventy Barques, with 1200 Turks and Janizaries, against the Fort of *Babarem*. *Rax Morado*, a resolute Commander, was in it, who provided the best he could, and sent Advice of the danger he was in to the King of *Ormuz*, and *D. Antony de Noronha*, then Commanding that Fort. *D. John de Noronha* went to relieve him with ten Ships; he was near taking the Turkish Gallies, but missed for want of pursuing, and the next day they obliged him to take shelter in the Creeks along that Shoar. *D. Alvaro de Silveyra* receiving Advice from *Ormuz*, came up, and joyning *D. John* took the Gallies. The Bassa having lost them, concluded he was also lost, if he took not the Fort, and therefore pressed on his Attacks. *Rax Morado* and *D. Alvaro* had a Meeting, and agreed it was not convenient to fight, but besiege the Besiegers; yet such was the Insolence of the Soldiers, that Mutinying they obliged them to give Batle. *Rax* joyned the Portugueses with 300 Persians, well Armed, they attacked the Turks, who purposely (though with loss) gave way, till they drew them to

an Ambush, which put them into disorder in spite of all *D. Alvaro* could do, till he fell by a Musquet-Ball that hit him in the Throat. The Portugueses fought desperately, some to defend, and others to bring him off, but to no purpose, for the Turks cut off his Head. Above 70 of our Men were killed, and several taken. *Rax Morado* retired with many to the Fort, after behaving himself in such manner as might be envied by the Portugueses. Thus was the rashness of those that were so hot for fighting punished.

3. *Peter Peixoto* succeeded in the Command of our Men, and following the Advice before despised, besieged the Island, and so streightned the Turks they sued for Mercy; whereby it appeared how great a Fault it was not to take this course at first. *D. Antony de Noronha* receiving Advice at *Ormuz* of our loss, presently set out to revenge it. The Siege continued, and in conclusion the Turks surrendered on Condition to return our Prisoners (they were about Thirty,) and deliver up their Cannon, Arms and Horses, and 10000 Ducats. They were to be carried to *Bağora*, but were so weak with Hunger and the Pestilential Fever, which about that time rages at *Babarem*, that only two hundred of them lived. Many of our Men died of the same Disease.

4. About the end of this Year arrived in *India* five Ships from *Portugal*; six sailed thence, but one was drove back. In them went *F. George* of *St. Lucy*, and *F. George Tesquido*, the first was Bishop of *Malaca*, the latter

latter of *Cochim*, both Dignities new Created; for Queen *Catherine* seeing the See of *Goa* was over-burthened, had obtained of the Pope the Instituting these Bishopricks; but subordinate to *Goa*, as were to be all others that should be Instituted.

5. The Vice-Roy understanding the Enemy was fitting out Ships on the Coast of *Malabar*, where *Luis de Melo* was, sent to his Aid 17 Sail with 600 Men. *Melo* distributed them about the Mouths of the Rivers, and he himself ran along destroying the Towns and Woods. Seven strong Parao's, well manned and equipped, came down the River *Maim*, where *Gonçalo Perez de Alvelos* was, firing their Cannon upon him, and he answering sunk one of them: But the Powder taking fire in one of our Ships, blew it up and all the Men in it; so the Enemy escaped. *Melo* continued the War this Year and the next with success, and utter desolation of all that Coast.

6. *Bofata*, not long since defeated, now marched towards our Fort of *Balzar* with 600 Horse, and a great Body of Foot. Our Commander *Alvaro Gonçalez Pinto* boldly meets him with 20 Horse, 100 Portugues Foot, and 500 Natives. The first Charge they killed 50 of the Enemy; but being overpowered by the Multitude were routed, the Captain and most of the Portugueses killed, and 150 of the Natives, the rest fled. *Bofata* immediately attacks the Fort, not at all doubting to carry it; but was vigorously opposed by the Valour of *Gomez de Silva*,

*Silva*, who though not born a Gentleman, in this Action shewed how Gentlemen are Created. The Enemy encamped, and *Silva* did great Execution on them, till *Tristan Vaz de Vega* came to his Relief, from *Damam*, with ten Vessels well furnished. In spite of all opposition he Landed and got into the Fort, and *Bofata* seeing no hopes of prevailing drew off. Not long after he returns, and our Commander *Alfonso Diaz Pereyra* meeting him in the Field, had the same success as *Pinto*, and was killed as well as he; all the difference was, that the Enemy now entred the Fort pell-mell with our Men; but *Vincent Carvalho* drove them again out headlong. *Calisto de Sequeyra* killed 20 with his own hand. They were quite spent with continual Fatigue when *Luis Alvarez de Tavora* brought Relief from *Damam*, at sight whereof the Enemy retired.

7. However, by the Vice-Roy's Order, the Fort was abandoned, and the Enemy returning razed it; then went on doing great harm in the Villages, till they came to *Tarapor*, where *Martin Lopez de Faria* was with 40 Men; they attacked his Works and were repulsed with such loss, that they desisted and went on. This Action cost *Lopez* his Life, being mortally wounded, whereof he died at *Damam*. *D. James de Noronha* marched after the Enemy, and found them in the Country of *Vaypim*, being 600 Horse and 1000 Foot; with him were 150 of the former, and 350 of the latter. He fell on with such Fury, that 60 of the Enemy fell  
the

the first Charge, and after a sharp Dispute they all fled, leaving him many Prisoners, their Women, Mony, Baggage, Horses, Arms and Ammunition, with which he returned triumphant to *Damam*, notwithstanding the Enemy rallying attacked him in the Rear; but at last fled to lament his Loss in the Woods, whilst it was celebrated in the Town.

8. *Christopher Pereyra Homem* sailing for *Ethiopia* with three Vessels, only to see ashore there *B. Fulgentius*, a Jesuit, sent by the Vice-Roy to the Bishop with some Church-stuff, near *Arquico* met *Casar* his four Gallies, and with difficulty escaped them. But the Admirals Galley coming up sometime after, the Fight could not be avoided, and *Pereyra* boarding her with 30 Men, the Turks who were 150 killed every Man of them. The other two Vessels leaving him in the danger got to *Goa*, where *Vincent Carvalho* and *Rock Pinbeyro* were put in Gaol for their Cowardize; for had they done their Duty, *Casar* had been taken.

1560.

9. *B. Fulgentius* was taken, and afterwards ransomed; the loss of him and what he carried, was lamented by the Portugueses in *Ethiopia*. *Adamas Sagad* succeeded the Emperour that died, and defeated many Rebels, in which Victory the Portugueses had a considerable share. The Turkish Bassa returning with a greater Power, defeated *Sagad* with the assistance of some Portugueses; for they can be Turks when they please. This was the cause that Emperour never after trusted them.

10. *Bisminaique*, Lord of the Pearl-Fishery, seeing those of *Punicale* would pay no greater acknowledgment than One days Fishing, resolved to right himself by force. He marched with 1000 Men, *Melrao* lead the the Van, doing much harm. *D. Duarte de Meneses* after several Skirmishes killed him, and stopped the current of his Men, till the useles People, as Aged Men, Women and Children, with the best of their Goods, got off in a Ship, where they suffered much Hunger, and such Thirst that they drank their own Water. The Commander of the Fort, *Emanuel Rodrigues Coutinbo*, Charged a Body of those that *Melrao* had Commanded, and did good Execution; but *Bisminaique* coming up with his Army, *D. Duarte* was forced to retire to his Ship, and *Coutinbo* to another, where he was taken with all his Men, and after ransomed. The Enemy entered and plundered the Town.

11. Four Ships arrived now in *India*, of six that sailed from *Lisbon*: In them went the first Archbishop of *Goa*, and the first Inquisitors, sent to suppress the Jews. One of the six Ships was forced back to *Lisbon*. Another Commanded by *Ruy de Melo*, was drove to *Brasile*, and thence set out again so unsuccessfully, that she was lost beyond the Cape of *Good Hope*. The Men got ashoar, and part of them Coasted along in the Long-Boat and two Barques they made, the rest marched along in sight of them, till they took three little Ships which held them all, and so went up a River in the King of  
Menan-

*Menanchabo's* Country. Their neglect, and the Beauty of *D.Francisca Sardina*, Wife to *James Pereyra de Vasconcelos*, gave courage and opportunity to those Barbarians to assault them, and steal her. They fell on our Men on a sudden and killed 60, carrying away this Portugues *Hellen* or *Proserpine*. The rest arrived in *India*.

12. The late Governour *Francis Barreto* put to Sea the third time, and arrived safe at *Lisbon* with *D. Luis Fernandez de Vasconcelos*, who had before lost his Ship. The Kings of *Cochim* and *Cananor* were now at War, and the Portugueses intermedled not, because they were both Subjects to *Portugal*; in the end he of *Cochim* had the better. Those of *Cranganor* committing some Outrages, *John Pereyra* chastized and reduced them.

13. The Vice-Roy was now preparing to make War upon the King of *Jasanapan*, and Lord of the Island *Manar*, because he persecuted the Christians, and had usurped that Crown from his Brother, who fled to *Goa*, and was Baptized by the Name of *Alfonso*. He Landed near the City *Jasanapan* with 1200 Men, forcing the Prince to retire, who with 2000 opposed him. The Portugueses entred at a large Street in which were some Pieces of Cannon, which killed *N. Sardina*, Ensign to *Luis de Melo*. *John Pessoa* took up the Colours, and marched up to the Canon. *Luis de Melo* and *D.Philip de Meneses* were both Wounded.

14. The Vice Roy came on, and six or seven Men were killed about him. The Prince coming down another Street made some resistance, but to no effect. Night coming on the King retired to his Palace, and not thinking himself safe there, set fire to it and withdrew to a Fort a League off. Thus the Vice-Roy was left possessed of that beautiful City. He marched after the King, who thinking that Fort too weak, was fled farther off. *D. Constantin* took possession of it, and sent several parties to pursue the King, the first of them Commanded by *Luis de Melo*, the *Achilles* of those times. They pursued him till he cried for Mercy; and to purchase an Accommodation, offered to restore the Treasure taken from *Tribuli Pandar*, and his Mother-in-Law, Wife to the King of *Cota*, to pay an Acknowledgment to the Crown of *Portugal*, and give up the Island *Manar*. The Vice-Roy accepted the Conditions, considering how difficult it was wholly to deprive him of that Crown, and restore it to his Brother, though he had never so much right.

15. Fortune is as quick in over-turning, as bestowing her Favours. Whilst the Conditions were putting in execution, the Natives falling upon the Portugueses, who were secure in their Submission, killed many. The Vice-Roy escaped narrowly and got aboard the Fleet, whence he sent *D. Antony de Noronha* with 400 Men to relieve the Fort, where *Ferdinand de Sousa* was, and had killed many of the Natives in defence of it.

They

They two being joyned made themselves way and marched to the Shoar, carrying all that was in the Fort, and killing all that opposed them. The Vice-Roy thus successful at first, and afterwards unfortunate, set Sail, carrying with him the Prince, given as an Hostage for performance of the Articles of Peace. He sailed to the Island *Manar*, where he built a Fort, and translated thither the Inhabitants of *Punicale*, to redeem them from the Tyranny of that Nayque who would fleece them. *Emanuel Rodriguez Coutinho* was left to Command there, and with him some Franciscans and Jesuits, all satisfied with the equal distribution the Vice-Roy made of all things. Then he sent *Balthasar Guedez de Sousa* to Command in chief in *Ceylon*, and with him the King of *Cota*, his Grandmother and Kindred, whom the King of *Jafanatan* had delivered to him, being one of the Conditions of that unfortunate Treaty.

---

## C H A P. XVI.

*The End of the Government of the Vice-Roy D. Constantin.*

1. **A** Mong the Treasure lately taken from the King of *Jafanatan*, was an Idol adored throughout all the Coast of *Asia*, and so highly esteemed by all those Princes, particularly the King of *Pegu*,  
that

that he every year sent Embassadours with rich Presents, to get a Print of it. This so much worshipped Relick was nothing but a Tooth of a white Monkey. Some say, the rarity of the Colour was the cause of his being so much admired, as the King of *Siam's* white Elephant: Others affirm, besides his Whiteness, he came into such esteem by finding out the Wife of an ancient Indian King, that was run away from him, and had been sought for through all parts to no purpose, the King loving her beyond expression. The King in requital made much of the Beast while it lived, and after its death erected Altars to it: Others are of Opinion, it was a Mans, not a Monkeys Tooth, and perhaps the Man had the same Employ as the Monkey; for all was no better than Pimping, a great step to Preferment with Princes. However it was, the King of *Pegu* hearing our Vice-Roy had the Tooth, sent to offer him 300000 Ducats for it, and it was not doubted his Zeal would extend to give a Million, if the Bargain were well drove. Most of the Portugueses were for taking the Mony, and some wished they might be employed in carrying the Tooth to *Pegu*, not doubting but they should gather a Treasure by shewing it by the way.

2. The Vice-Roy doubtful whether he should accept, or reject the Offer, and to throw the blame of either Resolution from himself, had a meeting of the Chief of the Clergy and Laity, where the Question was discussed long, and with much heat.

heat. The Resolution was, That the Tooth should not be sold, but consumed to Ashes. The Vice-Roy accordingly, in the presence of them all, caused it to be beaten to dust in a Mortar, and then burnt. All men at that time seemed to applaud the Act; but not long after, (two Teeth being set up instead of that one, as shall be related in the Government of *D. Antony de Noronha*) they as much condemned and railed at it.

3. *D. George de Meneses Baroche* at this time did much in *Ceylon* in defence of the King of *Cota* against his Brother *Madune*. *D. George* was hard to please, because he loved to endure hardship; he hearing one Morning, in his Galley, a Souldier asking an Onion for Breakfast, said to him; *What do you ask for Dainties? There is no provision in this Store, but Powder and Ball.* A good Example for our Times, when a Portugues loads half a Galleon with Hen-Coops, and Chests of Sweet-Meats.

4. This Severity in *D. George* caused some Souldiers to desert to *Cota*; he went to bring them back, and at his return found that *George de Melo* his Lieutenant had fallen upon the Enemy so successfully, that he cut off a number of them. *Baroche* envious of this Honour, attacked them in another place and killed 200, and with the same heat run up a River after *Madune*, till a Cannon Ball killing 20 of his Seamen at once, he retired a little. Then marching by Land, after *Raju Madunes* Son, who had above 3000 Men with him, put him to flight, killing 150.

P

without

without losing one Man. The Enemy fortified himself in a convenient place; and *D. George* going on to attack him, was told there was no Powder; then says he, *Load your Muskets with Sand.* He advanced unfortunately; for what with an Ambush, and what with the assistance of the Elephants, he lost above 70 Men. *D. George* was in danger of being killed by an Elephant, had not *Pedralvarez Freyre* fortunately shot it. He retired in such a Rage for this ill success, that he bit the Sand, perhaps because it had not served him instead of Powder.

5. *Madre Maluco*, King of *Cambaya*, taking the advantage of the Vice-Roys absence from *Damam*, resolved to recover that City, and was ready to march with a formidable Power. *D. James de Noronba*, who spent much Mony in Intelligence, soon understood his design, and finding he could not oppose him with open Force, had recourse to Artifice. He dexterously persuades *Cedemecan* Lord of *Suratt*, his Neighbour and Friend, that his Brother-in-Law, *Madre Maluco*, was coming to expel him that City, and therefore gave out his design was upon *Damam*. *Cedemecan* gave credit to the Fiction, and going to Visit his Brother-in-Law in the Camp, persuaded him to Sup with him in the Town, and carry with him the principal Heads of his Army. Scarce were they in his House when he killed them all, and falling upon the Camp put the Army to the rout with great slaughter. Thus *Noronba* avoided this Danger without drawing Sword, and *Cedemecan* drew on himself

self another, to shun that which did not threaten him. The Manager of this Intrigue was, *D. James Pereyra*, a Gentleman of great Prudence and Vigilance, who performed it very dexterously, not without great danger to himself.

6. *Chinguiscan* with a prodigious Power marches to *Suratt*, to revenge the Death of his Father, and enters the City; *Cemedecan* retiring into the Fort, *Chinguiscan* sets down before, and begins to batter it furiously, and *Cedemecan* omitted nothing towards his defence, when 10 Ships arrive, sent by *D. James* under the Command of *Luis Alvarez de Tavora*, with Orders so to manage himself, that either of the two Enemies might believe he came to their assistance. *D. James* under-hand writ to *Chinguiscan*, acquainting him he had sent those Ships to his Aid; *Tavora* had a Letter from him to *Cedemecan* of the same purport. All this Preparation vanished; for the Besieger hearing another Enemy invaded his Kingdom, agreed with the Besieged and returned home. So did *Luis Alvarez*, having given much Content to our Neighbour, who had he known all, had more cause to be highly dissatisfied. *Alvarez* coming to *Damam* found *D. James de Noronha* at Death's door, and he soon after expired at the Age of 44. He died Poor, having spent all he got in the Service of his King and Country. *D. Antony de Noronha*, after Vice-Roy, used to say, *That a man must be mad to practise this sort of Liberality.* After that rate now-adays all Men are very Wise.

1561.

7. The Vice-Roy being at *Cochim*, dispatched three Ships for *Portugal*, two of them arrived safe, the other was forced back. Then he had a meeting with the King of *Pimienta*, with whom he was at variance, and they agreed. The Princes of *Calicut* being sent to be bred at *Cananor*, and those of *Cananor* at *Calicut*, caused such a Confusion, that *John Pereyra*, Commander of *Cananor*, was in some danger, attempting to hinder the Passage of the *Malabars*, who had possessed themselves of the Island *Primbalam*, belonging to *Cochim*, which might prove the loss of our Fort. The Vice-Roy sent first *D. Francis de Almeyda* with ten Ships, and after him *Luis de Melo de Silva* with 500 Men, and the King of *Cochim* assisted with his Forces. There was a great Fight, many of the Enemies were killed, and the rest expelled the Island. *Martin Alfonso de Melo* afterwards cleared all the Passes, and restored the Island to the King. *D. Constantin* returned to *Goa*.

8. He sent Commanders to several Forts; and a Fleet of 21 Sail under the Command of *Sebastian de Sá*, to assist the King of *Bagora* against the Turks, for which he offered to permit us to build a Fort there. This Fleet was by bad Weather scattered and put into several Ports. *Cedemecan* sent to acquaint the Vice-Roy, That *Chinguiscan* was again marching towards him, and he being in no condition to oppose him, would deliver up that Fort to the Crown of *Portugal*, only upon Condition to be carried with his Family and Treasure where he should appoint.

Dom

*Don Constantin* immediately fitted out fourteen Ships, the Command whereof he gave to *D. Antony de Noronha*. With him went *Luis de Melo*, to receive the Command of *Damam* from *James de Silva*, who held it by the Death of *D. James de Noronha*. There they found four Galliots of *Sebastian de Sá* his Squadron that was dispersed, and so made up 500 Men, and passed to *Suratt*. They went up the River through such showers of Bullets, that there was scarce a Vessel but lost some Men. Then they Landed, and immediately entred a Work, and after a tedious Engagement *Chinguiscan* with above 20000 Men, was beaten by 500 Portugueses, and our Captain remained Master of the Field.

9. In the same Heat he entred the City, where *Chinguiscan* was, and retired honourably, though not without danger: But coming to Treat with *Cedemecan* about delivering up the Fort as he had promised, found him quite estranged from it. Some say, he durst not do it for fear his own Men should kill him; and 'tis likely it was so, for *D. Antony* being gone to *Goa*, they would have murdered him only for the Intention; so that he was forced to make his escape from them, and being taken by *Chinguiscan* had his Head cut off. *Caracen* his Brother-in-Law succeeded him in *Suratt*, and found the means of obliging *Chinguiscan*, so that he left him in peaceable possession.

10. *Emanuel de Vasconcelos* being arrived at the *Molucco's*, prevailed with the King of *Ternate*, to quit his claim to that Kingdom, as being left by the rightful Possessor, who died a Christian at *Malaca* to our King. Accordingly King *Sebastian* was Proclaimed in all the Neighbourhood, he that Resigned still keeping the Title and Government. *Vasconcelos* having made War against the King of *Tidore*, soon after died. *Sebastian Machado* his Lieutenant succeeded him, and sent *George Ferreyra* against the *Sangaje* of *Gilolo*, who brought him to Submission. The Christian Faith was now very much propagated in these Parts by the labour and industry of the Jesuits.

11. The Year ended the Government of *D. Constantin*, applauded by all lovers of Truth, though censured by the Vile Portugueses in *India*. He was endued with all those Parts that make a man Great, and was fortunate in his Undertakings; his Government such, that King *Sebastian* offered it him for Life, and he refused; and when that Excellent Vice-Roy *D. Luis de Ataide* returned thither the second time, he bid him Govern like *D. Constantin*.

12. His Countenance was beautiful and majestick, his Complexion white, his Beard thick and black. In the number of Vice-Roys he was the 7th, in that of Governours the 20th, and held it three years.

## C H A P. XVII.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Francis Coutinho, Count de Redondo, from the Tear 1561, till 1564, in the Reign of King SEBASTIAN.*

1. **I**N the beginning of September arrived 1561.  
 at Goa D. Francis Coutinho, Count de Redondo, no less known for his witty Sayings, than his Actions in Peace and War. He brought five Ships, and sailed from Lisbon the beginning of the Year. The Count having sent Commanders to several Forts, dispatched five Ships for Portugal, in one of which went D. Constantin. Next he sent D. Francis Mascarenbas with 650 Men in 23 Ships, to seek out *Casar's* Gallies that were abroad a pillering; but he missing of them through neglect, returned to the Coast of *Malabar*, where he secured the Trading Ships for the term of three Months, and then went into Port.

2. In February the Vice-Roy sent *George de Moura* with three Galleons, and some small Vessels, to secure our Ships that were to come from *Ormuz* against *Casar's* Gallies. On the Coast of *Caxem* he met a Ship of *Achem* of great strength and value, it carried 500 fighting Men and 50 Pieces of Brass Cannon. Towards Night *Peter Lopez de Rebelo* stood up with and boarded her, whereupon ensued a bloody Fight. The

Enemy fired the Galleon, and *Antony Cabral* coming up in the Night with another, thinking it was the Ship, attacks the Galleon. Perceiving his Mistake he drew off, and the Ship taking fire both were inevitably lost. *Cabral* saved *Rebello* and his Men. Of the Enemy only a few escaped in the Long-Boat. *Moura* was coming on with the rest of the Ships, when discovering a Sail he gave it chase, but in vain. He cruized there some time and saw several Ships, but could not fetch up any.

3. In September arrived in *India* 6 Ships from *Portugal*, with 3000 Land-men. The Vice-Roy was preparing to set out for the Sea of *Calicut*, whilst *Cide Meriam* was marching to besiege *Damam* with 800 Horse and 1000 Foot, after doing much harm in the Neighbouring Villages. Our Men went out to meet them, a *Dominican* carrying a Crucifix before them; at the first Charge several of our Men fell, and among them the *Dominican*; a Souldier took up the Crucifix and marched before till a Ball broke the Arm of it, which much stirred up our Men to revenge. In the heat of the Action *Cide* appears, calling upon *Garcia Rodriguez*, who spurring his Horse met, and with a stroak of his Lance dismounted him; but *Garcia* fell too, and *Meriam* recovering came at him with his Cimiter; *Garcia* embraces him fast, and so they struggled till one of our Souldiers run *Meriam* through with a Pike. Our Captain mounted again, and running into the thickest of the Enemy, they were disor-

disordered and fled; many were killed, many taken, and a considerable Booty.

4. About the beginning of *December* the Vice-Roy set out of *Goa* with 140 Sail, in which number were ten very large Gallies; in this Fleet were 4000 Men. All this Preparation was only to meet *Zamori*, and Swear to the Peace already concluded. They met at *Tiracole*, the Vice Roy walking through a Lane made by his 4000 Men, and the King through another of 40000. After the usual Ceremonies the Articles were read, and then sworn to by each after his own manner.

5. The Count returning to *Cochim*, dispatched the Ships for *Portugal*, which arrived safe, except one that was never heard of. The Portugueses of this great Fleet having no other employments for their Swords, fell to Challenging one another, by which means above 50 were killed. The grounds of these Quarrels are commonly so idle and ridiculous, that it is not worth time to mention any of them.

6. The Vice Roy began this Year, sending some Commanders to several Parts: But there was nothing of moment, but the Business of *Amboina*, one of the *Maluco's*, whither he sent *Henry de Sá* with some Relief. *Amboina* is an Island in that Eastern Sea, about 16 Leagues in compass; but contains in that little Space many good Towns. *Jordan de Freytas*, Commander of *Ternate*, got a Grant of it for himself (as is before said) from the King of it, who being converted

1563.

verted by his means repayed him with that Gift, which afterwards fell to the Crown of Portugal. Sá sent his Nephew *Vasco* thither to build a Fort; but he behaved himself so ill, that he estranged the Hearts of all the People, chiefly the Inhabitants of *Ative*, where he was; and those of *Aito*, not far distant. The better to compass their Revenge, they offered Subjection to the Queen of *Japara*, in the Island *Java*, that she might assist them with her Shipping. The other Islands also sent a Fleet, and joyning with those that were in Arms, killed many of the Christians newly converted by St. *Francis Xaverius*. One of these called *Emanuel*, gathering a Number, put a stop to this Current, till *Henry de Sá* joyning they totally defeated all those Enemies, with a great slaughter of them. Then *Sá* took in hand the punishing the Rebels, among which were two Infamous Portugueses, who had laid the muzzles of their Musquets to *Emanuel*, because he defended the New Christians; that it may appear, there are many New Christians better than the Old. Peace being settled, the Spiritual Conquest was carried on.

7. In *Ceylon Madune*, always aiming to deprive his Brother, the King of *Cota*, of his Kingdom, kept his Son *Raju* in the Field with a good Force. *Raju* with 30000 Men besieges the Fort of *Columbo*, Commanded by *Baltasar Guedez de Sousa*. He battered it several days with great Fury, but found such opposition he was forced to draw off, and  
marched

marched to the City *Cota*, two Leagues distant, not doubting to carry it, having been reinforced and believing the Portugueses were not in condition to Relieve it. Yet *Baltazar Guedex* was there as soon as he with 400 Men. The City was besieged, and the Attacks carried on vigorously, and backed with Elephants. Many Portugueses were here seen fight with those Beasts single, and with many Wounds drive them back upon their own Men.

8. Though bravely defended, the Town was in great danger by reason of the Enemies great number, had not *James de Melo Coutinho*, Commander of *Manar*, come opportunely with 400 Men and Provisions. *Raju* seeing this Relief raised the Siege, having lost 2000 Men. On our side twenty were killed, and three *Franciscans*. The King repaired his Works, and *Coutinho* returned to his Command, leaving the Men he brought.

9. This Year sailed from *Lisbon* four Ships, one of them was forced back, three arrived at *Goa*, one whereof sunk there. The Vice-Roy sent *D. Francis de Mascarenhas* to *Cananor* with fifteen Sail, we being then at War with that King. *Hierom Diaz de Meneses* staid behind with his Ship, in which were forty tried Souldiers. He met three *Parao's* of *Malabars*, and could not with Honour avoid them; so making up to the formost layed it aboard, and killing most of the Moors, had taken it, but that the other two coming up forced our Men to defend

defend their own Ship, and though they behaved themselves with great bravery, were by the multitude of Enemies drove into the Poop, whence breaking out again they cleared their Decks, killing 60 Moors. They parted, and *Diaz* pursued his Voyage.

10. The Vice-Roy dispatched two Ships for *Portugal*, which after a dangerous Voyage arrived safe. Hearing what had hapned, *Hierom Diaz* with the Malabars, who continued their Piracies contrary to the Peace so lately sworn, he complained to *Zamori*. He Answered coldly, because his Intentions were never sincere, *That those were some Rebels, and whosoever met them might punish them.* The Count meditating Revenge, heard above 80 Vessels of Malabars were sailing for *Calicut*; these he resolved to destroy, and if *Zamori* complained, to Answer after this manner, *That they were some Rebels had done it, whoever took might punish them.* To this he sent *Dominick de Mesquita*, a Man of Valour and no nice Conscience, as was requisite for such an Action, with 120 Men in three Ships. He cruised upon the Coast of *Carapatan*, and took by two and three at a time twenty four Sail. The Vessels he sunk, some of the Men he beheaded, others he sewed up in their Sails and threw them into the Sea. Above 2000 died after this manner, so that all the Coast of *Malabar* was filled with Cries for the loss of Friends and Goods. This Action soon after produced a very tedious War.

11. This was the Vice-Roys last Action, and scarce came to his knowledge; for he died very suddenly about the end of *February*. His Death was lamented, because he was beloved. He was neither Prodigal, nor Covetous, a great lover of Justice, and so happy in witty Expressions, that all pleasant Sayings were Fathered upon him. His Countenance was jovial, his Eyes lively. In the number of Vice-Roys he was the 8<sup>th</sup>, and the 21<sup>th</sup> of Governours, and held it two years and five Months; the third of the Name, first of the Sirname, and second that had the Title of Count, for *D. Vasco de Gama* was the first.

12: At this time our Famous Poet, *Luis de Camoens*, was at *Goa*, and had been well looked upon and favoured by the two last Vice-Roys. The Governour *Francis Barreto* had Imprisoned, and then banished him for Debts and some youthful Extravagancies; and the Count towards the End of his Government, had again given him up to the Law, and he was cast in Prison. We shall hereafter see him deceitfully carried to *Zofala*, and there sold. Such is the hard Fate of great Wits.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*The Government of John de Mendoza, for six Months of the Year 1564, in the Reign of King SEBASTIAN.*

1564. 1. **J**ohn de *Mendoza*, late Commander of *Malaca*, succeeded the Vice-Roy with the Title of Governour. As soon as he had taken the Sword, there came to him Embassadours from *Zamori*, complaining of the Harm *Dominick de Mesquita* had done the beginning of the year to his Subjects, contrary to the Peace so solemnly sworn. The Governour answered as the Count designed to have done; *That it was perhaps some Portugues who was in Rebellion; that they might punish him if taken, and he would do the same.* The Embassadours had nothing to say; but before their departure came in *Dominick de Mesquita*, and the Governour (not to carry on the Shew too far) caused him in their presence to be apprehended. As soon as their backs were turned he released, and rewarded him as his good Service deserved.

2. A Woman of a bold Spirit, and of good Repute among her People, Wife to one of those killed by *Mesquita*, running about the City of *Cananor* with loud Cries and Complaints, stirred up the Moors to revenge

revenge that Action. They all run to Arms, swearing not to lay them down, till they had rooted out the Portugueses from among them. They beset the Fort where *D. Payo de Neronba* Commanded, and the King unexpectedly set fire to above thirty Ships that rode under the shelter of it. The Governour sent immediately *Andrew de Sousa* with six Sail to the relief of that Fort, where *Adé Rajao* already was with a great Power. Thus began the War of *Malabar*, and went on slowly.

3. It being now the beginning of *September*, the Ships arrived from *Portugal*, in which went the Vice-Roy *D. Antony de Neronba*, to whom the Governour delivered the Sword, and went out of *India* poor, after bearing honourable and advantagious Employments. He was the 22<sup>th</sup> Governour, and held it half a year, was the second of the Name, and first of the Sirname.

4. Since the short time of his Government afforded not Matter enough for a Chapter, I will give some Account of the *Zamories* and Preaching of *St. Thomas* the Apostle. It is before related how *Perimal*, who divided the Empire of *Malabar* into several Kingdoms, was persuaded to Mahometanism, and went to end his days at *Meca*. This was a false Invention of the Moors; for there were several Sovereign Princes in *Malabar* 500 years before the Birth of Christ. *Malabar* lies between the Points of *Cananor* and *Cape Comori*, 150 Leagues in length, and about 15 in breadth up the Inland,

land, expiring at the Foot of a Mountain that runs through all that length. The chief Sovereignities therein are *Cananor*, *Tanor*, *Moringue*, *Cranganor*, *Parum*, *Mungate*, *Repelim*, *Cochim*, *Diamper*, *Pimienta*, *Turun-gule*, *Maturte*, *Porca*, *Marta*, *Pitimene*, *Cale-coulam*, *Coulam*, *Changernate*, *Gundra* and *Travancor*.

5. The differences that often arose between these Sovereigns, obliged them to chuse an Arbitrator, who was to be but of indifferent Fortune, to prevent his growing too powerful; and the Office was not to be hereditary, but he always chose by consent of those Princes. This Arbitrator they called *Xara Perimal*, and appointed his residence to be in the City *Calicut*; so ancient is this Employment. The great concourse of Merchants from all parts to that City, caused it in time to rise to an Empire, though such care had been taken to prevent it. This Dignity of Emperour (which is signified by the word *Zamori*) continued till the Year of Grace 347, according to the Records of *Calicut*; but according to those of *Cochim*, till 588. Whensoever it was, *Xara Perimal* then Reigned, who tired with the Cares of a Crown, and having some knowledge of the Evangelical Doctrin, as being a great Favourer of the Christians of *St. Thomas*, inhabiting at *Cranganor*, he resolved to end his days at *Meliapor*, serving in that Church. By Consent of all his Princes he resigned the Crown to *Manuchem Herari* his Page, esteemed worthy and able

to Govern that Empire. *Perimal* died at *Meliapor*, and it is thought one of those Bodies found with the Apostles was his. Since his time till now have been above 110 *Zamories*, of whose Names we do not make a Catalogue, because they are all called *Manuchem* and *Zamori*, in memory of that first Successor of *Perimal*. Another Relation says; This *Perimal* was one of the three Kings that went to adore our Saviour, new Born at *Betlehem*, and perhaps that might be the Reason of his following the Apostle *St. Thomas*. In an ancient Manuscript of two hundred years standing, I have found what follows: *Melchior* was King of *Nubia* and *Arabia*; *Baltasar*, of *Goli* and *Saba*; *Gaspas*, of *Tharsis*, *Insula*, and *Grisola*, where the Body of *St. Thomas* lies, and they were afterwards by him made Bishops, and suffered Martyrdom with him.

6. In this Empire (so in all the Kingdoms of it) the Sons do not Inherit, but the Nephews born of Sisters, by reason of the ill conceit they have of the Mothers, believing this way they secure the Royal Descent. The Princesses that bring forth these Heirs, get them in this manner: The Princess is Married to a Neighbouring Prince, who leaves her untouched; a Nays of the Family of *Naburii*, destined for this Employ, gets her Maidenhead, and then departs, never more to be seen in the Country upon pain of Death. The Princess afterwards chooses others among the *Naburii*, of whom she makes use till she has Conceived.

(P)

She

She has liberty to choofe among them all, but none of them can court her upon pain of Death. The Nayres are very poor, few of them can maintain a Wife; and he that can, need not fear another corrupting of her. For this Reason three or four of them joyn to maintain a Woman, and that is their manner of Marriage: When one goes to the Wife, he leaves his Buckler at the Door, which is a sign one is within; and if another comes, he must stay. The Kingdom of *Cochin* was subject to this Empire, though without paying Tribute, and made free by the Portugueses in requital, for the fidelity of the King *Uniramacoul*, who Reigned when we first discovered *India*, and exposed himself to utter danger of being ruined, rather than deliver up the Portugueses to *Zamori*. King *Emanuel* sent him a Crown of Gold by the Vice-Roy *D. Francis de Almeyda*, which he received, submitting himself as a Subject to *Portugal*, without any other acknowledgment; but is yearly presented with two pieces of Gold; the one a Portugues, being a Coin worth 18 Ducats, on the 1<sup>st</sup> of *January*; the other on the day of the *Epiphany*, is a Cup worth 640, Thus much of the Empire of *Malabar*.

7. As to *Meliapor*, for what relates to the Apostle: It is the received Opinion he was killed at *Antenodur*, a Mountain a League distant from the Town, where he had two Caves, whither he retired to Pray. The nearest now belongs to the Jesuits, the other is the Church of our Lady of the Mount.

He

He being one day at Prayer in the former, opposite to a Clift that gave Light to it, one of the Bramens, who was watching, thrust a Lance through that Hole in such manner, that a piece of it remaining in his Body, he went to the other Cave, and there died, embracing a Stone on which a Cross was carved. Hence his Disciples removed and Buried him in his Church, where he was found by *Emanuel de Faria*, or *Frias*, and the Priest *Antony Penteado*, sent thither on purpose by King *Emanuel*.

8. In the Year 1547, being about to repair that Oratory where the Apostle died, digging they found a Stone, which seems to be the same he held then. It is about a yard long, and three quarters wide, the Colour grey, with some red spots. In the middle of it is carved a Portal round at the Top, with Letters between the two Borders; within two Banisters, rather than Pillars; being turned, on which are two twisted Figures, like Dogs sitting, from whose Necks rises a graceful Arch of five Borders, and between every two are knots like Beads. In the hollow of this Door is a Pedestal of two Steps, from the uppermost of which rises a Branch on each side, and over them, as it were in the Air, is a Cross, the ends of it like to that of the Military Order of *Alcantara*, as the History relates; but the Print shews them like three half Moons, the Convex sides outwards, and the Points meeting, as commonly we see in many ancient Churches in *Europe*. Over all is a

UNIVERSITY OF GOLD COAST  
LIBRARY

Dove flying, as it were descending to touch the Cross with its Beak. There are ancient Pillars in the East with Doves after this manner. One preserved in the Pagod of *Negapatan*, has carved on it a Cock, a Rope and a Candle. There is a Tradition, it came of it self to those parts by Sea, with a Candle burning.

9. The Chappel being repaired, or beautified in the Year 1551, the Stone was solemnly set up in it, and at the time the Priest pronounced those words of the Gospel; *Missus est Angelus Gabriel, &c.* it began to change colour, and became black and shining, then sweating turned to its own colour, plainly discovering the spots of Blood which before were obscure. The Letters about it could not be understood till the Year 1561; a Learned Bramen said, they were 36 Hieroglyphicks, every one containing a Sentence, and were to this effect: ‘In the time of  
 ‘ the Son of *Sagad* the Gentile, who Reign-  
 ‘ ed 30 years, came upon Earth one only  
 ‘ GOD, and was Incarnate in the Womb  
 ‘ of a Virgin: He abolished the Law of  
 ‘ the Jews, whom he punished for the Sins  
 ‘ of Men, after he had been in the World  
 ‘ 33 years, and taught Twelve Servants the  
 ‘ Truth he preached. A King of Three  
 ‘ Crowns, *Cheralacone*, *Indalacone*, *Cuspandiad*;  
 ‘ and King *Alexander* of the Kingdom *Erti-*  
 ‘ *nabarad*, with *Catherine* his Daughter, and  
 ‘ many Virgins and six Families, voluntarily  
 ‘ followed the Law of *Thomas*, because it  
 ‘ was the Law of Truth, and he gave them  
 ‘ the Sign of the Cross to adore. Going up  
 ‘ to

'to the place of *Antenodur*, a Bramen run  
 'him through with a Lance, and he em-  
 'braced this Cross, which was stained with  
 'his Blood, and his Disciples carried him to  
 '*Masale*, and Buried him in his Church  
 'with the Lance in his Body. And because  
 'We the above-named Kings saw this, we  
 'carved these Letters here. Hence, besides  
 the Story, is gathered, That *Masale* was the  
 ancient Name of the City *Meliapor*, now  
 called *St. Thomas*. This Stone afterwards  
 sweated sometimes: Till the Year 1561 it  
 was a good Omen; since then a bad one.

10. In the time of the Priest *Penteado*  
 were also found three Brass Plates about a  
 Span long, and half as broad, in shape like  
 a Scutcheon, on the top a Ring. On the  
 one side was a Cross and Peacock, the  
 ancient Arms of *Meliapor*; on the other,  
 Characters which were explained by another  
 Learned Bramen. The first part was Titles  
 of the King; \* *Boca Raja*, Son of *Campula*  
 \* *Raja*, and Grandson of *Atela Raja*. He  
 'begins confessing, One God without begin-  
 'ning, Maker of all things. And says of  
 himself, \* That he is as Great a Gentleman  
 'as the Beast *Chigfan*, and as one of the  
 'five Kings who conquered 99: That he is  
 'as strong as one of the eight Elephants  
 'that the World stands upon, and that he  
 'Conquered the Kingdoms of *Orin*, *Tulcan*  
 'and *Canara*, cutting his Enemies to pieces  
 'with his Sword. The other Plates con-  
 tained Grants of Lands to *St. Thomas*, di-  
 rected to himself, and calling him *Abiderra*  
*Modeliar*,

*Modeliar.* Whence may be gathered, these Princes Reigned at the time that Christ suffered. One of them begins thus: 'After the Year 1259, in the first Year called *Icarrana Racban*, on the 12th day of the New Moon of the good Year, I give in Alms to the Saint *Abidarra Modeliar*, &c. Thus Another: 'This is a Token of Alms-deeds to purchase Paradise, and all Kings that perform them shall obtain much more, and he that disannuls them shall be 60000 years with the Worms in Hell, &c.

11. It has always been controverted, which way *St. Thomas* came into *India*. The Heathen History says, 'That *St. Thomas* and *St. Tbaddens* being in *Mesopotamia*, they parted at the City *Edessa*; and the former sailing with some Merchants came to the Island *Zocotora*, and after Converting the People, passed to *Mogodover Patana*, a City of *Paru* in *Malabar*, where he built a Church. The King keeping there the Wedding of his Son, some Jewish Women came to sing, and their Musick was Texts of Scripture, many of them fulfilled by the Life and Death of our Saviour. *St. Thomas* being present, was so rapt, hearing those Prophecies from them People, that a Heathen observing it gave him a Box on the Ear. Soon after going to fetch Water, a Tiger bit off his Hand. He came running to tell his Misfortune, and after him a Dog with the Hand in his Mouth. The Apostle took, and set it on again, so that no Mark remained. Then he went to *Calicut*, and converted

verted *Xa Perimal*. There is an Account, That he went to the Mogol's Country, where *Chefetrigal* then Reigned, and after being in *China* returned to *India*, visiting the Province of *Tibet*, and settled at *Meliapor*, where he ended.

12. In the Year 800 arrived at *Mogodover*, or *Patana*, a rich Christian *Armenian*, called *Thomas Cananeus*, who with his Company presented himself to the King: He received him with Kindness, and soon after won by his Presents, gave him the Lands of *Cranganor* and City *Patana*, where there was scarce any Footsteps of *St. Thomas* his Church. On those Foundations he built another; another at *Cranganor* by the name of *St. Thomas*, now standing within our Fort; another of our Lady, and another of *St. Ciriacus*. These being the Works of *Thomas Cananeus*, made them erroneously be believed the Apostles. Afterwards were found other Plates containing Grants of Lands to the Disciples and Successors of the Apostles.

12. It may reasonably be believed, that Pagod where *Gama* entred, as he went from *Calicut* to *Zamorie's* Palace, was of this Foundation, because the Image of our Lady was there called *Mary* by the Heathens; and it being believed one of the three Kings that went to *Betlehem* was of *Malabar*. The Heathens yearly celebrate a Feast to *St. Thomas*, to preserve their Ships; because formerly many of them used to be Cast-away sailing to *Parvi*.

*End of the Second Part.*

T H E

---



---

T H E  
P O R T U G U E S  
A S I A.

---

T O M . I I . P A R T I I I .

---

C H A P . I .

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Anton. de Noronna from the Year 1564, till 1568, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. **W**E concluded the Second <sup>1564</sup> Part with the Arrival at *Goa* of the Viceroy D' *Anton. de Noronna*. His good Service in *India* preferred him to the command of *Ormuz*, and his wise Conduct there to the Government of *India*.

2. With him went four Ships, and he was received with a general Satisfaction. He immediately sent Relief to *Cananor*, which was Besieged, giving the Command of the Land to D. *Antony de Noronna*, and that of the Sea

to *Gonçalo Pereyra Marramaque* with a good Fleet. *D. Francis Mascarenas*, who was there with a Squadron before, deliver'd it to him, and went away to his Command of *Moçambique*: This was occasion'd by that Morish Woman spoke of in the end of *John de Mendosa* his Government.

3. *Peter de Silva* and *Meneses*, had the command of seven Ships given him to secure the Boats that brought Provisions to *Goa*, whereof their was a scarcity. About the River *Cannaroto* he lost sight of three of his Ships by strefs of Weather, and after found them encreased to six, for the three had met and taken as many of the *Malabars*, and were sailing after their Admiral. Returning to the Place where they were disperfed, between the Islands and the Continent, they met the More *Murimuja* with seventeen Paraos well provided to meet all dangers. He instantly made to our Ships, and after the discharge of Cannon on both sides, they boarded, and having received some damage, the *Portugueses* sunk two and took five, one of them being *Murimujas* who was kill'd; the others flying, were pursued to the River *Pudepatan*, where three Paraos and above fifty Almadies or great Boats came to their Relief. Our Cannon repulsd them, and they run up the River: Of the Enemy five hundred were killed, and three *Portugueses*.

4. The Viceroy being in care for *Cananor*, sent thither *D. Paul de Lima Pereyra*, with four Ships. Being at Anchor in the Bay of *Batecala*, the *Malabar* Pyrat *Canetali* came upon

upon him with seven Paraos loaded with Booty taken on the Northern Coast. *Paul* seeing him come, sets out to meet him. After the usual Salutes with their Cannon, *Canatale* with three of his Ships lays D. *Paul's* Galliot on Board, the others did the like to the other three, whereof two shamefully fled, the third stood by it till he was sunk. Now all the Enemies force fell upon D. *Paul*, who, with fifty Men he had, did things beyond belief, killing above two hundred Mores, but with the loss of thirty *Portugueses*. D. *Paul* was so wounded, he was forc'd to sit down and gave order to make to the Enemy, who was drawn off. *Canatale*, who was preparing to fall on again, seeing the Galliot beyond Expectation make at him, stood away; D. *Paul* return'd to *Goa*, being in no condition to reach *Cananor*.

5. There our Men were much streightned by the number of the Enemies who were Masters of the Field. *Andrew de Sousa* made a good resistance, till he dying, and D. *Antony de Noronna* succeeding him, with the relief he carried, in several rencounters they kill'd above Two thousand Mores, and cut down Forty thousand Palm-trees. This is the greatest harm can be done that People, because those Trees are their principal Sustenance. The City enrag'd hereat, call'd together all the Neighbourhood to the number of Ninety Thousand, to take Revenge. They had the boldness to assault and scale the Fort with such confidence of carrying it, that they had before-hand divided the Booty.

*Nicarigoaripo a Nayre* did us great Service, advising *D. Payo de Noronna* then commanding there, to put the Men and Riches of the Town, as not tenable, into the Fort. All was drawn in, except *D. Antony de Noronna* and his Men, who said he would live and die by those Walls, and staid accordingly. The Men all prepared themselves for Death, and stood at their Arms all the last night.

6. By break of day the Enemy attack'd the Works with great crys, and above Two thousand of them entred the City. In one place *Emanuel Travaços* with Thirty Men did great Execution upon them. *D. Antony* appear'd in all Parts, *Thomas de Sousa*, *Gasper de Brito*, and the two *Betancores*, made great slaughter at their Posts. The Field was so cover'd, that never a Bullet was lost. The Enemy began to give back, when two *Cazices* brought them on again. The assault lasted till Sun-setting, then the Enemy retired to their Camp, with a resolution to protract the Siege. About Five thousand of them were kill'd.

7. At this time came *Gonçala Pereyra* with his Fleet, and was a great encouragement to them all; and after him *Alvaro Paez de Sotomayer* to succeed *D. Payo*. They both prosecuted the War, and utterly destroyed the City of *Aderrajao* who commanded at the Siege, and cut down a great Wood of Palm-trees with considerable slaughter to the Enemy, and without losing one Man. This was the end of that Siege.

## C H A P. II.

*Continues the Government of D. Anton. de Noronna.*

I. **T**HE Tyrant *Raju* disturb'd the Peace of *Ceylon*, resolving to make himself Master of the whole Island : He gather'd a numerous Army, and the better to surprize the *Portugueses* in *Columbo*, gave out, his design was upon *Cota*. He encamped between the two Forts and alarming *Cota*, imagin'd they were unprovided at *Columbo*, and suddenly attacques it by Night, so that above Two thousand Men mounted the Walls, but were as soon thrown down by the Commander *James de Ataide* and his Men. The Assault was renew'd, but at length the Enemy, having lost Five hundred Men, retired ; *Raju* resolv'd to carry both places by Famine, since he could not by force. At *Cota* he attempted to drain the Ditch by turning away the River, and had compassed it, had not *Peter de Ataide* with some Musqueteers oblig'd his Workmen to give over, killing Three hundred of them. It is said, a Cloud miraculously hung between our Men and the Enemy, which conceal'd the former from the latter, but not them from us, so that they fired at a Mark without being seen.

2. But now Provisions began to fail in *Cota*, and they fed on things loathsom. *Ataide* thinking to take some of the Enemies

Elephants that were in a Wood hard by, sallied out with Eighty Men, but being over-power'd with a multitude was forc'd to retire, having lost two. *Raju* knowing how famine rag'd, had corrupted not only the Natives, but some *Portugueses*. *Luis Carvalho*, rather through Dispair than good Will, discover'd the Treason; and *Ataide*, without taking notice he knew it, gain'd the Hearts of the Conspirators, by favouring and cherishing them. The little Silver he had he coin'd and distributed among them.

3. *George de Melo* commanding in the Island *Manar*, easily perswaded the King of *Candea*, as being an Enemy to *Raju*, to invade his Country now he was absent, thinking by that means to draw him from the Siege. He sent Five thousand Men, and with them Thirty *Portugueses* commanded by *Belchior de Sousa*; they destroyed all as they went, and utterly subverted the great City *Chilao*, yet *Raju* never stir'd. On the contrary he prepar'd to Assault *Cota* by Night. A *Chingala* Woman appear'd at the foot of the Bastion *Prez-gota*, desiring to be carried to our Captain: She discover'd to him *Raju's* design, and was the saving of the City. Some believed this Woman was an Angel; the truth is, she was Mistress to one of our Souldiers, and fearing her Lover's danger, made this discovery. There is nothing so bad, but at sometimes does good.

4. *Peter de Ataide* sent *Antony de Silva* to *Columbo* to order *James*, as soon as he heard Cannon fire at Night, to sally with his  
Men,

Men, and fall upon the back of *Raju's* Army, that would be then busie in the Assault. *George de Melo* was already come thither from *Manar* with One hundred Men, seeing the Project of *Candea* take no effect. In the dead of Night the Enemy attacks the City on all hands, and finds those of *Cota* ready to receive him: Yet killing some of the Defendants, they enter the Works in one place, thither the King and *Peter* hast, and with incredible bravery drive them out again. *Stephen Gonzales*, Captain of the *Innemes*, with Seven Men did the like upon the like occasion.

5. At this time came from *Columbo* the other *Ataide* and *Melo*, who by reason of the darkness of the Night, could do no more but fire the Enemy's Camp, and return to their Fort, lest if he succeeded here, he should immediately attack it. *Raju* in Person with the Flower of his Army attacks the Bastion of *Preacota*, where he found Fifty Soldiers, that seem'd to him to be Fifty thousand by the harm they did him. These Men afterwards declared, That they saw in the Air a beautiful Woman, who with her Vail cover'd them and received therein the Enemies Bullets and Arrows, whereof many returned upon and kill'd them. By her side was a venerable old Man with a General's Staff in his hand. This was supposed to be the Blessed Virgin and *St. Joseph*. *Raju* in the Morning seeing this great disappointment fled to *Ceytavaca*, leaving above Two thousand Men dead.

6. *Peter de Ataide* fearing he might return, and being quite destitute of Provisions, caused Four hundred of the fattest Men that were killed to be salted, and a *Mulato* tasted them eating up a Liver. *F. Simon* of *Nazareth* urged the unlawfulness of this Food, and *Ataide* pleaded necessity: But no use was made of it; for it being known that *Raju* was not in a Condition to return, Provision soon came from *Columbo*. Thus ended this Siege of four Months, the last forty Days whereof, there was scarce any thing to eat. The *Portugueses* alone obtained this Victory, for all the King's Men deserted. Those were not above Three hundred, some sick and old.

7. What *Raju* had design'd we now did our selves; for it being difficult and troublesome to maintain *Cota*, it was judg'd expedient to demolish it, and remove the King to *Columbo*, where he was no less tormented with the Covetousness of the *Portugues* Commanders, than he had been before with the Tyranny of *Raju*. This was performed by *James de Melo*, who went to succeed *Peter de Ataide* in that Command.

8. Three thousand *Mogol* Horse appear'd before the Fort of *Damam*, where *John de Sousa* commanded, he sent advice to the Viceroy and the neighbouring Places, and began to fortifie. His greatest Confidence was in the Palisade made of the Plant *Lechera* (that is, Milk) which is not be assaulted, because when struck it casts out drops like Milk, (from whence it has the name) which

which if they touch the Eyes infallibly blind. *Trestan de Mendosa* Commander of *Chaul* came with Two hundred Men. The Viceroy sent four Ships: They marched out to fight the Enemy, who was encamped three Leagues off, who fled at the first sight, leaving a rich Booty in their Camp.

9. The *Bassa* of *Bacora*, during the Government of the Count *de Redondo*, desiring the *Turks* might have a free Trade at *Ormuz*, had made some overtures of Peace, and the Count thinking it a Matter of too great Concern to be transacted without the great *Turks* Concurrence, sent *Antony Teyxeyra* a Gentleman sufficiently qualified Embassador to *Constantinople*. He entred the Pallace this Year, scattering gold Coin. The Grand Signior to receive him was seated on the ground sewing Caps, which his Grandees bought at excessive Rates. The Embassador told him, That the *Bassa* had proposed a Peace to the Viceroy, and a free Trade for the Subjects of the *Turkish* Empire. The Great *Turk*, without lifting up his head from stitching, answer'd, I ask Peace of no Body: If the King of *Portugal* desires it, let him send some Great Man of his Court, and he shall be heard. The Embassador brought a Letter containing this Answer to *Portugal*, and it was thought fit not to reply to it, because they found the *Turk* did not speak like a Taylor.

10. *D. Ferdinand de Monroy*, a *Spanish* Gentleman, was out with two Ships and four Gallions, to intercept the Fleet bound from  
*Achem*

*Achem* to *Meca*; he lay in the Chanel of *Cardu* among the *Maldivy* Islands. *Peter Lopez Rabelo* in his Ship met one of those they waited for of great force and value, and after a long fight they both took Fire, and were entirely consumed. The Captain and some *Mores* were saved in a Galliot that followed him, and *James Ferreyra de Padilla* who commanded it, was very insolent with *D. Ferdinand* about the Distribution of the *Mores*. *D. James Pereyra*, who set out afterwards upon the same design with five Galleons, and six small Vessels, had yet worse Fortune. Being deceived by the *Mores*; at those same Islands he went to wait for the Fleet at the Mouth of the *Red Sea*: As he returned without doing any thing, a violent Storm that lasted eight days swallowed up two Galleons, whereof his was one; the others were dispersed, and put in where Chance guided them, almost Four hundred Men were lost.

11. At length the War of *Cannanor* ended, for that King wearied out begged a Peace, which was concluded to our Advantage. The concluding Acts of this War were, the taking several *Malabar* Vessels by *Gonzalo Pereyra Marramaque*; the slaughter of many *Mores* that opposed *Emanuel de Brito*, who convoyed the Ships from *Malaca*, *Cbina*, *Molucos*, *Pegu*, *Bengala*, and Coast of *Coromandel* trading to *India*, when he was taking Water at *Mount Delii*; and several other Rencounters in which we were successful, except in one, where *D. Lope de Moura* was killed. I will

will conclude with a remarkable Accident. *Calisto de Sequeyra* a most expert Marksman, dug a hole in the Field, and lying close did not miss a shot; the Enemy a long time could not perceive whence that harm came, till another well skill'd in the same Art among them found it out, and placing himself in the same manner the other had done, they both aimed at one another so exactly, that both fell down dead.

12. *Brama* King of *Pegu* being told by Astrologers he was to marry a Daughter of the King of *Columbo*, sent to demand her, and he had never a one; but his Chamberlain had one the King esteem'd as his own: They both agreed to put her upon him, as really the King's. And the Chamberlain the more to oblige the King of *Pegu*, seeking thereby to cast off the *Portugues* Yoke, feign'd he had that Tooth which was taken at *Jasanapatan* and burnt at *Goa*, and would give it in Dowry with the Bride. The Embassadors easily crediting what they desired, took the Bride and the Tooth without acquainting the *Portugueses*, and sent advice to *Brama*, who received the Wife first, and then the Relick, with the greatest Pomp that ever has yet been heard of. Many Gallies were fitted out, but that which was for the Queen was covered with Plates of Gold, and rowed by beautiful young Women richly clad and brought up to this Exercise, so that they were more expert then Men. They were of those Women who there live without Men in separate Quarters by two and two like Man and Wife. A new sort of *Amazons*.

13. The King of *Candea* understanding the deceit of this Marriage, and envying that great Fortune, acquainted *Brama* therewith, offering him a true Daughter and Tooth, and affirming, both that of *Columbo* and the other of *D. Constantin* were Counterfeit, and the true one was in his Hands. If the Daughter was not more real than the Tooth, he was even with the King of *Columbo*. *Brama* considering it was as bad for a Prince to own himself cheated as to be so, gave ear to the Embassadors, but not to their Information. The King of *Candea* missed his aim, and discover'd his ill Affection. Two things are here worthy consideration, the one that the *Portugues* Commanders, through their Avarice, expos'd that important place to evident danger of being lost, had not *Brama* being undeceived, grown cold; the other, that had *D. Constantin* sold the Tooth as he was advis'd, there had not now been two set up to be adored by so many People.

14. The Trade of *India* was this Year at a very low Ebb, by reason of the Desolation of the Kingdom of *Bisnagar*, whose Riches are equal to its great extent, which is from the Borders of *Bengala* to those of *Cinde*. The Kings of *Decan*, *Nizamaluco*, *Idalca*, and *Cutubixa*, jealous of that Grandure, entred into a League to suppress it. They took the Field with Fifty thousand Horse, and Three hundred thousand Foot: The King of *Bisnagar* met them with double that Power, and his Age was double, being Ninety six Years old. He had the better at first,

first, but Fortune turning to the other side, he lost his Head, and they remained Victorious. They spent five Months in plundering *Bisnagar*, and yet they were not the first, for the Natives in three daystime had carried away One thousand five hundred and fifty Elephants loaded with Money and Jewels worth above One hundred Millions of Gold, and the Royal Chair for great Days that could not be valued. Notwithstanding all this, *Idalxa* found a Diamond as big as an ordinary Egg, on which the late King's Horse's Feather used to be fixed; and another, tho' not so large, yet of an extraordinary size, besides other Jewels of incredible value. That Crown was divided between the Sons and Nephews of the deceased.

## C H A P. III.

*Continues the Government of D. Anton de Noronna, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. **T**HE beginning of this Year *Gonzala Pereyra Marramaque* sailed for *Amboino* with One thousand Men in Twelve Ships, Embassadors from that Island having represented in how great danger those were who had newly receiv'd the Faith. *D. Emanuel de Noronna* sailed for *Banda*, and was stabbed by the way by the Purser of his Gally, whom he had

1567.

had affronted with a Cane. Great Men may command, but not abuse the lesser, for the small have Honour as well as the great. No Man, though never so little, owes any submission in Point of Honour to the greatest, and in point of Condition he owes no more than he pleases to impose upon himself. *Alvaro Paez de Sotomayor* (the War of *Canaur* being ended) sails for the Coast of *Malabar* with twenty Sail: *James Lopez de Mesquita* with three for the *Molucos*; *D. George de Menezes Barroche* for the *Red Sea* with four Galleons, one Gally, and four small Vessels; *Lisuarte de Aragon* for *Ceylon* with one Ship; *D. Leonis Pereyra* for *Malaca* with six; *George de Moura* for the North with the same number; *D. Francis Mascarennas* for *Olala* to suppress that Queen, who was about to refuse her Tribute; for this use Twenty-seven Ships were allotted, and *John Peixoto* went before with eight of them.

2. The Viceroy was fitting a good Fleet in order to follow those that were gone before to *Olala*, designing to build a Fort at *Mangalor*, to curb *Bucadevi Cbantar* the Queen. The Fleet consisted of seven Gallies, two Galleons, and five small Vessels, and carried about 3000 fighting Men.

3. The Viceroy anchor'd in the Bay of that City called *Mangalor* and *Olala*, seated on the Banks of a River that washes both sides of it not far distant from the Sea, whence was to be seen a Wall wherewith the Queen had fortified her self, within which and the other Works were Thirteen thousand Men with

with sufficient Cannon. The Viceroy divided his Men into six Battalions, and landed on the 4<sup>th</sup> of *January*. At night the *Portugueses* sitting to supper, and to play with many lights, and the same security as if they had been at *Goa*, the Enemy laying hold of the Opportunity sallied in a body of Five hundred, followed by Fifteen hundred, fell upon and put them into such a disorder, they scarce had time to take their Arms. D. *Francis Mascarennas* who had the advanced Post, fared worst; and though he fought well, lost several Men, most perhaps killed by our own Fire, for through the darkness and confusion no body knew what they aimed at. D. *Luis de Almeida* relieved him with his Men, who all slipped away to nine, that behaved themselves with incredible Valour.

4. On the Eve of the *Epiphany* they gave the Assault, and being as desirous of Revenge as entring the City, soon forc'd their way and fired the Town, at the same time cutting down the Palm-trees. The Queen fled to a Mountain. Of the Enemy Five hundred were slain, about Forty of the *Portugueses*. The Viceroy immediately laid the Foundations of the Fort, giving it the name of *St. Sebastian*, because the first stone was laid upon his day, and that day chose in Honour of our King then Reigning. By the middle of *March* the Work was finished with a Church and other Conveniencies. He gave the command of it to his Brother-in-Law *Antony Pereyra* with 300 Men, and Ammunition for six Months, and returned to *Goa*. Afterwards in the time of  
D. *Luis*

*D. Luis de Ataiades* Government, the Queen sued for a Peace, and purchased it by a new imposition of Tribute, and a sum of ready Money.

5. The King of *Achem* had now entred into a League with many Princes of the *East*, and the *Turk*, who desired to get footing in *India*, not doubting with this united Power of carrying *Malaca*: He Imbarqued with his Wife and Children as if he had gone to take Possession of, rather than to Besiege that City. On a sudden he appear'd before it with 450 Sail, 200 Brass Cannons, and 20000 Men. *D. Leonis Pereyra* was at that time on the Shore celebrating the Birth-day of King *Sebastian*, with a certain Exercise used among *Portugueses* on Horseback, and perceiving some of the Company were surprized at the sight of the Fleet, he ordered the Sport to continue, drawing down nearer to the Shore, that the Enemy might not imagin they could disturb his Pastime.

6. Afterwards he gave the necessary Orders, and making a review, found he had Fifteen hundred Men, whereof only Two hundred were *Portugueses*. The King of *Achem* began with Complements, and shews of desiring accommodation, but all tended only to discover what was the Condition of the Town. *D. Leonis* who understood him was wary, and carried it on with dissimulation. At length the King perceiving no artifice succeeded, and that he advanc'd but slowly, resolved to put the whole Event upon one furious Assault. After the Discharge of the Cannon,

Cannon, above two hundred scaling Ladders were laid to the Wall with great Shouts on both sides. D. *Leonis* had also distributed his Men in their several Posts. The Priests had underraken to defend one, but no sooner did the Enemy attack, than they fled to the Church.

7. In the heat of the Action a Party of ours sallies out upon the Enemies Works, making a great slaughter; among the rest was killed the King of *Aru*. Our Men retired with one Cannon, and loaded with Musquets, Cimeters, and Heads of all sorts of People that compos'd that Army, having lost but one *Portugues* and six *Mslayes*. The Enemy encourag'd by the King who looked on, mounted our Works, and were as soon thrown down by the Defendants. The King in a rage stamp'd and blasphem'd, and seeing three days furious Assault had not gained a foot of Ground, he utterly despair'd of Success; therefore with great Secrecy Shipping off all his Army and Train, except Four thousand Men that were killed, he set sail, firing the Ships that were to spare by the loss of those Men. This great Success cost us but three *Portugueses*.

8. The Commander, D. *Leonis*, bestow'd not only Praises, but Money and Jewels on all that had signaliz'd themselves, to the value of 15000 Crowns. The Viceroy receiving advice of the danger the City was in, sent to its relief *John de Silva Percyra* with Men and Ammunition in seven Ships, but he came when the Siege was raised. So the

R

King

King of *Ujantana* our Neighbour with sixty Sail, who visited our Captain in the Fort, and was received with Royal Magnificence, rejoicing at our Success not without trouble that he had no share in it.

9. The Viceroy offended at the Insolence of the Natives of the Island *Salsete*, who persecuted the new converted Christians, fitted out a Fleet against them without letting his design be known. When those of *Salsete* least thought of it, he fell upon them, and destroyed 200 of their Idolatrous Temples. Because we have sometimes mentioned this Island, without speaking of an ancient and wonderful Structure that is in it, it will not be amiss to say something of it here.

10. In this Island is a high Mountain, winding about which are 3000 Cells with each of them a Cistern all cut out of the solid Rock. Under the same Mountain is a way cut through the same Rock, with such Cells on the sides, which is said to go as far as *Cambaya*, which, if so, must run under the Sea. *F. Antony de Porto*, a Franciscan, resolving to enquire into this Secret, got Company, Provision, Torches, and great quantity of strong Packthread, and fastning an end at the Mouth of the way, travelled seven days through it. Then finding no end, and the Provision growing short, he returned by the help of the Thread, having as he believed travelled fifty Leagues to his great admiration, but not satisfied. The Gentils said, this was the Work of *Bimilamansa*, who 2300 Years before was King of all that is between

between *Bengala* and the *Mogol's* Country. Formerly a Learned Man of those Parts affirm'd, this and some others were the Works of the holy Prince *Josaphat*.

11. The Affairs of the *Molucos* were not at all successful. We left *Gonçalo Pereyra Marramaque* on his Voyage to *Ambayna*, he joined with the Kings of *Bacham* and *Tidre*, set out for the Island *Cebu*, where some *Spaniards* had settled under the Command of *Michael Lopez de Lagaspa à Biscainer*, and a Man so valiant and subtle, that he amuzed our Captain, till he got together his Men that were dispersed, and then expelled him the Island with shame, for that if attacked at first, the *Spaniard* had been utterly defeated. To add to this Misfortune, he lost almost Three hundred Men by a Sickness natural to that Country.

12. Hence he passed to *Amboina* or *Ito*, for it is called by both Names, a most beautiful and pleasant Island, abounding in Fish, Flesh, and Fruit of all sorts and delicious taste. It is inhabited by two sorts of people, the *Ulimas*, who are native *Mahometans*, and have three Towns; the *Ulenfwas* are Heathens, and have four. Our Captain found the Natives assisted by Six hundred of the Islanders of *Java*, and well fortified under the Command of *Gemiro* Governour of those Islands. He attacked them with such peril, and was so vigorously opposed, he seemed rather to fight for Life than Victory.

13. At length the *Portugueses* prevailing, were in danger of being overcome by their

great Disorder in plundering. The Captain rectified all by firing the Booty, and many of the Men were scorched, whose Covetousness overcame the fear of the Flames. The Enemy retired to a Mountain, and there compounded only for Life, laying down their Arms. But the People of *Amboina* having been the first among those Islands who admitted the *Portugueses* offering Subjection to our Crown, Lands, and leave to erect a Pillar in their Metropolis with the Royal Arms of *Portugal*, and finally embracing our Religion, and contracting Marriages with us, it will be convenient to look a little back in order to proceed in the relation of these Affairs, and particularly of one wonderful Passage, that may serve as an Example to such as pretend to Plant Colonies.

#### C H A P. IV.

*The End of the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Anton. de Noronna.*

I. **T**HEY who know with what kindness the People of *Amboina* at first received us, will be earnest to understand the Cause why now they are become our mortal Enemies. The worst is, they had so just a Cause, which was thus. The People of *Curon* (I suppose this should be *Ceram*) became implacable Enemies to those of *Amboina*, on  
no

no other account but that they received the *Portugueses*, admitted their Religion, and contracted Marriages with them. Hereupon they resolved to expel not only the *Portugueses*, but even the Natives out of the Island, accordingly on a sudden came upon them with a great Power. Those of *Amboina* had been ruin'd, but that the *Portugues* stood by them, and to be short, utterly defeated their Enemies.

2. The People of *Amboina*, to shew their Gratitude to those who had defended them, invited them to a splendid Entertainment. The Wives of those who made the Feast came abroad to see the *Portugueses* entertain'd. One of these (doubtless he was drunk) was so charmed with the Beauty of one of those Women, or so blinded with Lust, that leaping suddenly from his Seat he caught her in his Arms with such insolence, after being three times admonished without desisting, that if *Genulius*, a Man of great Authority, had not interposed, the *Portugueses* had there been all cut to pieces. And well they had deserved it; for it appears they did not hinder or obstruct so insolent and publick a lustful Extravagancy, which openly in the sight of the World, durst force a Hand to those Parts, which even with consent are not touched but in private, and without Witnesses.

3. Those People burned with the desire of Revenge for the affront they had receiv'd, and look'd upon as most hainous. Nor could *Genulius* appease them, but by expelling the impudent Guests, which he desir'd as much

as any, looking upon himself equally concerned in that Injury: and knowing it was a new offence every time the injured saw him that gave the wrong; he therefore reproaching them with the hainousness of the Crime, and shewing how greatly they were favour'd in having their Lives spared, ordered them instantly to depart the Island, and never more presume to set their feet upon it.

4. The People overturning the Tables with furious Countenances, gave them to understand they would by force execute what *Genulius* had directed, if the *Portugueses* doubted doing of it by fair means. There was nothing to do but submit, so they went away to their Ships full of shame; their general Confusion paying for the Impudence of one in which all had a share, because none reproved it.

5. Scarce had the *Portugueses* left the Shore, when those of *Amboina* prescribed the same Laws to the People of *Atire* and *Tavire*, that the *Carons*, or *Cerams*, had done to them before. That was, they threatned them with War if they received the *Portugueses* into their Ports: But those People answer'd, That they were Christians, and as such would admit to their Ports and Houses the *Portugueses*, though it were with hazard of their Lives.

6. They of *Amboina* were so irritated with this Answer, that falling suddenly upon them, they routed and put to the Sword most of the Inhabitants of those two Places, bringing under their Subjection those Towns

that

that had submitted to the Crown of *Portugal*, such as refused were reduced by Fire, and Sword, and Slavery. They were not content to put to Death those who were constant in the Faith, unless they did it with barbarous and cruel Tortures. One may serve as an Example of all their other Barbarities.

7. A little King of *Elite* was taken, who because he would not renounce the Christian Faith, was tied to a Stake, and Pans of Fire being set before him, they cut off pieces of his Flesh, broiled and eat it in his sight: Some they made him eat, and asked whether he liked it? He with much patience answer'd he did, and was pleased to do that for Christ, who had suffer'd for him: That if after he was dead, they would put a piece of his Flesh into a new Pot, within twenty four hours they would find it converted into Oil, in testimony of the Truth of the Christian Doctrine, and, in fine, that the *Portugueses* would revenge his Death.

8. They continued the Torments till he died, and then to try what he had said, put a piece of his Flesh into a new Pot covering it, and the Twenty four hours being expired found it full of most sweet Oil. They were astonished, but did not repent; and soon after the Prophecy was fulfilled by their Ruine.

9. *Gonçalo Pereyra* (as was before said) coming thither defeated them and their Succors they had from *Java* and other Places,

and reduced them, notwithstanding they fortified themselves in the Mountains. In this Action five *Portugueses* were lost, and *Pereyra* left *D. Duartes de Menses* to command there.

10. At this time *James Lopez de Mesquita*, a most wicked Man, commanded at *Ternate*. *Aeyro* King of that Island, who had been so unjustly treated by *D. Duarte Deça*, had always carried himself respectfully to the *Portugueses* without any Merit of theirs, but was now at variance, because they killed his Nephew. He began to revenge it, killing three of them, because they refused to do him Justice. This difference was composed by some well meaning Persons, and the King and *Mesquita* solemnly swore to the Reconciliation. But it being all deceit in the latter, before six days were expired he murder'd the King as he visited him. This was done at parting, he waited on him to the Door, and his Nephew *Martin Alfonso Pimentel* stabbed him by the Unkle's Order.

11. When this King the last time Embraced that false Friendship, he took to witness of his sincerity the Scutcheon of the *Portugueses* Arms, which represent the Wounds of our Saviour. As he was stabb'd, he laid hold of a Cannon about the place where those same Arms were, saying, *Ab Gentlemen, why do you thus kill the best Subject your King my Master has?* Neither these words, nor the sacredness of the Place, it being hallowed Ground, asswaged their fury. There they strip'd and cut him in pieces, which

which being salted and put into a Chest were cast into the Sea in sight of his Queen and Daughters, who begged only for leave to bury him. Such was then the *Portugues* Government, that these and other the like Cruelties and Villainies passed unpunished by them. But God did not so, who first with shame deprived them of those Dominions, and afterwards of a Prince of their own. *Gui Chil Babu*, Son to the deceased, succeeded him in the Crown, and just desire of Revenge for such inhuman Oppression. He fortified himself, and entred into a League with all the Neighbouring Princes against us, beginning the War with the slaughter of some *Portugueses*, and persecution of the new converted Christians in all those Islands. But this happened later, we shall see it in its proper place.

12. The Viceroy order'd D. *Luis de Almeyda* in the Spring to Cruize in the Sea of *Suratte*, to examin what Ships sailed there without our Passes. He had six Ships with him, and was joined by fourteen more, they took three great Ships richly laden, and brought two of them to *Damam*, one having foundred at Sea. This was the last publick Action of the Viceroy. He embarked to return home and died in the Voyage. It was ordered in his Will, that his right Arm should be cut off, and preserved, to be buried with his Uncle D. *Nunno Alvarez* at *Centa*; and that the Body should be cast into the Sea. It was accordingly performed, and some observed that the cutting off this Arm  
was

was the Execution of the Sentence he had given against himself, when a Relation prevailing upon him to sign an unjust Paper, he said, *The hand that signs such a thing deserves to be cut off.* Such is the force of Affection, it makes a Man do the very thing he abhors,

13. D. *Anton. de Noronua* was a Man of a good Disposition, Judgment and Inclination. He was Viceroy the term of four Years the 11th of that number, and twenty-third of the Governours, the first of that Name, and third of the Sirname.

14. During the Government of D. *Anton.* the Ships that came from *Lisbon* to *India* were, in the Year 1565 four, in 1566 four more, and four in 1567.

15. This Year our great Poet *Luis de Camoens* was at *Zofala*. Being very poor in *India*, where he served sixteen Years, *Peter Barreto* who was going to Command at *Zofala* promised him great things, and *Camoens* finding nothing came of them, after waiting long he resolved to come for *Portugal* in a Ship that had touched there, in which was *Heñor de Silveyra* and other Gentlemen. Being about to depart, *Peter Barreto* who had made those Promises not to prefer him, but divert himself, demanded Two hundred Ducats he said he had spent upon him; and those Gentlemen paid the Money and brought him away. So it may be said, *Luis de Camoens* his Person, and *Barretto* his Honour, were at once sold for that Money. He arrived at *Lisbon* the Year 1569, when  
the

the Plague raged in that City; so that famous Man always flying one Plague fell into another.

## C H A P. V.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Luis de Ataide, Count de Atouguia; from the Year 1568, till 1571, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. **T**O D. Anton. de Noronna succeeded with the same Title of Viceroy D. Luis de Ataide, Count de Atouguia, a Person meritorious of this Government, or of a greater, if ever any greater was committed by a Prince to one single Person. He was the first who carried Orders that a Gentleman should be bare when they spoke to the Governor, and be seated on a Chair without a Back. He was the first also sent by King Sebastian after he was out of his Minority.

2. With him went five Ships with a great number of Men, and great part of them of Note. He arrived at Goa in October, and was received in the City with a general Satisfaction of all Men. Though he found the number of Shipping but small yet in few days he set out so many Sail, as caused admiration; and good Squadrons were sent to several Expeditions.

3. Luis de Melo de Sylva went in February 1569. with thirteen Sail to relieve D. Leonis de  
Pereyra

*Pereyra* at *Malaca*, the News of his Success not being yet come to *Goa*, *Alfonso Pereyra de la Cerda* sailed towards the North with six in *November*: And *Martin Alfonso de Miranda* with thirty six to scour the Coast of *Malabar*, infested with Pyrats. The Natives were out with a considerable Strength, and lost five great Vessels, many Men and much Ammunition; but *Martin* being wounded with a Cannon Ball was carried to *Cochin*, and died there. *D. George de Meneses* set out with two Gallies and five small Vessels to seek the Pyrate *Canstale*, whom he found not; but discovering many Vessels in the River *Carapatan* he made to them, and came up himself with a Gally in which 180 *Mores* fought so desperately, that none being left alive but a Father and Son, the former killed the latter, and stabbing himself leap'd over-board.

4. *Ayrez Tellez de Meneses* set out with seven Sail, and *D. Paul de Lima Pereyra* with eight for the North. In the River *Banda* near *Goa* he found four Catures, or Barges of *Malabares*, who after losing many Men escaped. Then he held on his Voyage, which was to relieve *Rostumecan*, besieged by the *Mogols* in *Baroche*, which place he had Usurped, laying hold of the Confusions of *Cambaya*, since the Death of the King *Badur* in the Sea of *Diu*. *Itimican* now held that Government in his Hands by great Subtilty and Artifice, having perswaded the *Guzarates*, that a young Man his own Son was the last King's, and therefore he secured that Crown in him for himself.

5. Whilst

5. Whilst *Ayrez Tellez* sailed, *D. Peter de Almeida* Commander of *Damara* went to *Suratte*, to call to an account *Agaluchem* Lord of that Town, by the same Title as *Rostumecan*, for loading two great Ships without the Viceroy's leave, the Ships were taken, and valued above 100000 Duccats. As *Almeida* had done, *Tellez* began to play his part, which was to force the *Mogols* from *Baroche*. He performed it effectually: But *Rostumecan* being out of danger, forgot his Promise to the Viceroy, which was to become Tributary to us. So easie it is to make promises in danger, and to break them when delivered.

6. *D. James de Meuses* on the Coast of *Malabar* did such Execution, that *Zamori* was not in a condition to relieve *Agaluchem*, who sent from *Zuratte* to beg his assistance, being distressed by *Nunno Vello Pereyra*, who was come from *Damam* to clear the Bay of *Cambaya* of Enemies. He burnt two Villages and some Vessels, and brought away many Prisoners. Then with 400 Men he pursued a Body of *Mogols* who were fled to a Mountain (called *Parnel*) almost impregnable by Art and Nature, and three Leagues distant from *Damam*. *Nunno* neither knew the strength of the place, nor number of the Enemies, who were above 800, and so began to Mount that difficult ascent, whence great Stones were rowled down to hinder the Passage. But the Souldiers climbing upon Hands and Feet, reached the first Intrenchment, which after a vigorous opposition

was

was entred. Then they assaulted the Fort, where both Parties fought desperately. In some places they came so near as to lay hold of one another's Weapons. *Antony da Fonseca* was lifted up by his Lance which some of the *Mogols* held, and he never quitted it but laughed. Being afterwards asked what he laughed at, he said, *To think the Barbarians believed they could get the Lance out of my hands.* At length they let him fall. *Nunno Vello* seeing he strove in vain, retired after losing seven Men, having killed above thirty of the Enemy, and taken much Provision, fifty Horses, some Carrels and Oxen, with which he drew off not without danger, being pursued by 500 of the Enemy, whereof 100 were Horse.

7. He consulted this Affair with *Alvaro Perez de Tavora* who had the Command of *Daman*; the result was, that *Nunno* marched with 100 *Portugues* and 50 *Morish* Horse, 650 Foot, half *Portugues*, half *Mores*. They went up the Mountain with great Labour, through ways never before trod, carrying three pieces of Cannon. They met with considerable opposition, five Cannon playing upon them from the Fort, and some Horse breaking out of the Woods; so they lost eight Men, six killed and two taken. Three days were spent in climbing the Mountain, being got to the top *Nunno* planted his Cannon, and batter'd the Work with such fury, that the Enemy the sixth Night abandoned it. The Fort was razed.

8. The great importance of the impregnable Fort of *Azarim*, moved the Kings of *Coles* and *Sarcetas* to attempt the gaining of it. They entred the Country of *Bacaim*, in which it is, and after doing great harm, set down before it; but *Andrew de Villalobos* who commanded there, bravely defended it till the Viceroy sent Relief. Being then Eight hundred strong they fell upon the two Kings, and not only forced them from the Siege, but following into their Countries put all to Fire and Sword, and returned Victorious. The Viceroy now sent out *D. Roderick de Sousa* with six Ships from *Cambaya*; *Peter Lopez Rabelo* and *Giles de Goes* with two Ships and three Gallions for *Aden*; *D. James de Meneses* with twelve Gallies and thirty small Vessels for *Malabar*; *Peter de Silva de Meneses* with thirteen Sail for *Braçador*. *Braçador* is a new Fort between *Goa* and *Malabar*, upon the Mouth of a River. The Viceroy offended at the King of *Tolar* designed to possess himself of it, and agreed with him that commanded to betray it. *Peter de Silva* going to take possession of it, by the way entred the River *Sanguise*, which runs through the Lands of *Hidsten*, where he burnt two Towns and some Vessels. The Commander of *Braçador* according to promise delivered up the Fort by Night, and our Men falling upon the Town, killed and took above Two hundred of the Inhabitants. The Kings of *Tolar* and *Cambolim* came up that Night with 1500 Men, and the next with 5000, in a hot Engagement they

they lost many Men, and we five. The place not being judged tenable, was quitted with Honour, bringing away twenty Cannon, and a great quantity of Ammunition and Arms.

9. *Mem Lopez Carrasco* sailing for *Sunda* with only one Ship, and only forty fighting Men in it, passed in sight of the Port of *Acbem* at such time as that King in person was setting out against *Malaca* with 20 Gallies, as many Galleons, and 160 other Vessels. *Carrasco* finding it impossible to shun them, resolved to sell his Life as dear as he could. The whole Fleet attacks them, and tears all their Rigging to pieces, Night parted, and Morning brings them together again, three Gallies board them and are beaten off. The Fight lasted three days; the King having lost forty Vessels and many Men returned into his Harbor. As much of our Ship got to *Malaca* as was hid by the Water, all that was above being shattered to pieces; and thus for that time was *Malaca* delivered of that trouble.

10. *Miran*, a King between the *Mogul* and *Cambaya*, design'd to possess himself of the Crown of *Cambaya*, to which he thought he had the best Title, since it had been usurped from the lawful Heirs upon the Death of *Badur*. He treated about it with the Viceroy, offering him at present a sum of Mony, and afterwards some Towns, if he would assist him in gaining that Kingdom, and expelling the Tyrant *Himican*. The Viceroy admits the Proposals, sends an Embassador of his own with the Kings, and makes such diligent

diligent Preparations, that on a sudden the Sea of *Goa* was covered with 140 Sail. To amuze the Enemy he gave out the Design was against *Malabar*. Whilst an Answer could come from *Miran*, the Viceroy, to keep his Men out of Idleness, sailed towards the Rivers of *Braçalor* and *Onor*, whose Banks are peopled by *Canara's*, who at the Instigation of the *Malabars*, refused to pay the Acknowledgments due to the *Portugueses*.

---

C H A P. VI.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy*  
D. Luis de Ataide.

1. **W**Hilst the Viceroy was busie in these Preparations, four Ships from *Lisbon* arriv'd opportunely at *Goa*. D. *Paul de Lima* with one Galleon and six Ships, and *Martin Alfonso de Melo* Commander of *Baçaim* meditating Revenge against the Kings of *Cole* and *Sarcetas*, got together One hundred and thirty Horse, and Eight hundred *Portugues* Foot. The Enemy had Four hundred of the former, and Two thousand of the latter, yet were put to flight, and even in the flight cut off *Emanuel Pereyra* and all his Men. So much is an Enemy to be fear'd even when he flies. The Cities of *Darila* and *Varem* were destroyed, and all the Coun-  
tries

tries about them. *D. Paul* in his return took two Ships of the Enemy, though forsaken by some of his own Vessels, and those that left him had afterwards the Impudence to boast of the Victory. The Viceroy receiv'd *D. Paul* with much Honour; and one of those that had forsaken him coming to kiss (as was the Custom) the Viceroy's Cloak, he said to him, *Keep off, go kiss your Mother's hand.*

2. In *November* the Viceroy set out of *Goa* with above One hundred and thirty Sail, some of them were Tenders, and some Merchants: In the fighting Ships were Three thousand *Portugueses* besides *Indians*. He entred the River of *Onor*, and landed Two thousand three hundred Men, not without opposition. The place seem'd impregnable both by Art and Nature, yet our Men with great difficulty beginning to ascend the Hill, notwithstanding the Bullets that fell from above, soon discovered the People flying out of the City, and the Queen of *Gnarcopa* retiring to the Inland, as despairing the Fort could hold out, though Garrison'd with Five hundred resolute Men, and well stored with Artillery and Ammunition.

3. The City which was rich and beautiful was first Plundered, and then reduced to Ashes. Our Forces sat down before the Fort, and batter'd it without intermission four days, without the least molestation from a Body of the Natives who came to hinder their Progress: Which the Besieged perceiving, surrendred upon condition to march away  
without

without Arms. The Booty was small, the most considerable part of it Cannon and Ammunition. The next day being *St. Catharines*, a place was cleansed to say *Mais* in. The Command of it was given to *George de Menya* with Four hundred Men, half of them *Portugueser*.

4. Here the Ingenier *Simon de Ruau* fought alone with thirty of the Enemy till he fell as was thought dead, but as they put him into a Shroud a small motion was perceived, and soon after, to the admiration of all Men, he recovered. In this Action we lost twenty Men. Next the Viceroy passed to *Braçador*, which is much like the other in strength and situation. The Landing was somewhat more difficult, being obstructed by 11000 Men, but at length Two hundred of them being killed (with the loss of nine on our side) our Men possessed themselves of a Work which much dismay'd the Enemy.

5. Those in the Fort, before the Viceroy could besiege, abandon'd it. Soon after the Kings of *Talar* and *Cambolim* attack the Fort on a very dark Night, but found *Peter Lopez Rabelo* who commanded it with Two hundred Men so ready to receive them, that they lost Three hundred, killing only five of his, and despairing of any Success, concluded a Peace with the imposition of a greater Tribute than they paid before. The Viceroy had an interview with those two Princes and the Queen of *Cambolim*, and they parted very good Friends. Above a Month was spent in building a new Fort in a convenient place,

which was the mid-way between the City and the Mouth of the River. The Command of it was given to *Antony Botello*, who spilt the first Blood in this Action.

6. The Viceroy was in great care, that he received no answer from *Miran*. But there is no security in humane Policies. *Miran* thought to tie the *Mogol* to his Interest, by marrying his Brother to the *Mogol's* Sister. But scarce did the Brother, assisted by his Father-in-law the *Mogol*, see *Miran* march towards *Cambaya*, when he enters his Kingdom with a great Power; and *Miran* having notice hereof, was forced to stay to secure a certainty of his own, rather than to go to a doubtful Purchase. The Viceroy was much concern'd at this News, and having no present Employment for so great a Fleet, divided it into several Squadrons, and sent them upon different Expeditions. *D. Peter de Casto* had one to secure the Ships trading to *Goa*; *Ferdinand Tellez*, who not long before had taken some Ships of the Enemy, went with another to the North. Of his Squadron were *Ruy Diaz Cabral*, and *D. Henry de Meneses*, who being separated from him, met fifty Sail of *Malabars*, and rashly fell upon them. *Ruy Diaz* and seventy Men they both commanded were all killed; *D. Henry* from among the dead was carried into slavery, and after ransom'd. *D. Emanuel Pereyra* and *John de Silva Barreto* came too late to prevent this Misfortune, but not to put the Enemy to flight after receiving and doing much harm.

7. The Viceroy resented this loss not so much for its greatness, as because it was the first time Fortune had frowned on him. He went to *Mangalor*, twelve Leagues to the Southward, to appease some Disturbance that lessened the King's Revenue, and was prejudicial to Trade. This proceeded from the Enmity between the King of *Banguel* and Queen of *Olala*; the Dominion of the latter lies to the South, and that of the other to the North of that Place. The Viceroy being better received at *Mangalor* than he expected, had a meeting with those two Princes, and agreed their Differences. In his return to *Goa*, he left with *Antony Botello* Commander of *Braçalor* for the Security of that Place, six hundred fresh Men; and *Antony Cabral* at Sea with three Vessels well provided. At *Omor* he added to *George de Moura* Five hundred Men, and left on that Sea *Francis* and *Roque de Miranda*, Brothers, with six Ships, who with Fire and Sword destroyed some Towns and Ships, because they rebelled as soon as the Viceroy had turned his back.

8. At the end of this Year arrived at *Goa* five Ships from *Portugal*. The Queen of *Guarcopa* who was fled to the Mountain, rather for fear than good Will, came now to an Accommodation.

9. In those Seas were left *D. James de Meneses* with Forty two Sail; *Luis de Melo de Silva* with fifteen; *Vincent de Saldanna* with eight; *D. John Coutinho* with Four; and *D. Francis de Almeida* with Two Galleons: The first

of these carried Fire and Sword all along the Coast of *Malabar*, to the Terror of all that Empire. The strong Towns of *Coulete*, *Tiracole*, *Capocate*, *Padranigale*, *Panane* and *Calicut* felt this fury. Above 1000 Heathens were killed or made Prisoners, above Sixty Vessels taken, and many more sunk and burnt. We lost but four Men in all those Actions.

10. *Zamori* thought to put a stop to the Ruine of his Country by offering Proposals of Peace, but no Ear was given to them. The Weather effected what that did not, it being no longer practicable to lie upon that Coast. *Luis de Melo* disappointed the Artifices of the Queen of *Guarcopa*, who treated of Peace, and prepared for War. He burnt many of her Towns, ravaged the Country and demolished her Fort of *Sanguise*. *Vincent Saldanna* in the Sea of *Mangalor* did his Duty, securing our Ships that traded that way. *D. John Continno* did the same about *Cambaya*, *Cochim* and *Chaul*. *D. Francis de Almeyda* disabled and put to flight at *Diu* six *Malabar* Gallions that attempted the entering that Port to burn the Ships that were in it.

11. In the beginning of Winter the Viceroy fitted out two Squadrons to relieve *Omor* and *Daman*, fearing the *Mogol* design'd against the last, and the Queen of *Guarcopa* against the other. His greatest care was for *Omor*, hearing the Enemy had attempted to destroy our Men by Treachery, bribing some *Cavaraes* who were in it, to poison our Men  
with

with the Fruit of the Herb *Duuro*, whose quality is such, it makes Men forget all things, and renders them wholly insensible, even of Wounds. The Treachery was discovered, and the Conspirators hanged over the Walls in sight of them that employed them, who then betook themselves to open force, having failed in this private Practice. At that time entred the Port a Galley and three other Vessels with a Body of choice Men for the Relief of the Fort.

12. The Wickedness of the *Portugueses* in killing the King of *Ternate*, began to be punished: That King's Son and Heir had commenced his Revenge, as was said before, and now sent his Unkle *Calacinco* with twelve Gallies to *Amboina*. He was near taking our Fort, whilst the Commander of it *D. Duarte de Meneses* was consulting far off with *Gonçalo Pereyra* about the manner of maintaining it, but *Baltasar de Sousa* who supplied his place defended it well. *Baltasar Vieyra* saved it, killing with a Musquet Shot a Caciz of Note, upon whose Death the Enemy withdrew to the Island *Varenula*, and had they not retired, they had carried the Fort before *Pereyra* and *Meneses* could come to relieve it.

13. They being come, *Pereyra* puts to Sea with six Sail. One of them commanded by *Lawrence Furtado* being hard set by the Enemies Admiral, *Furtado* leaps into it and kills the old Commander, and the Galley was taken, two other were also taken, and the Enemy fled to other Islands, not thinking them.

themselves safe at *Varenula*. Above Nine thousand Men were killed in these Expeditions.

14. Whilst this happened at *Ambaina*, the Fort at *Ternate* was so close besieged, that our Men wished for Vermin to feed on, having eaten all that could be found. The King perceiving the besieged did not treat of a Surrender, joined with the King of *Tidore*, gave so furious an assault, that he killed twenty *Portugueses* and entred the Trenches. The next Night they had as good success. *Luis de la Mo* defended his Bastion with great Bravery, and *Belchior Vieyra* for this time delivered the Fort, killing *Bonenoa* General of *Tidore*, at which sight his Men fled. *Pereyra* hearing of this Posture of Affairs, left *Sancho de Vasconcelos* to command at *Ambaina*, because *D. Duarte* was dead, and hasted to *Ternate* with three Vessels that rowed, and One hundred Men. At *Bacham* where the King was our friend, he increased to fourteen Sail.

15. The Confederate Kings set out to meet *Pereyra* with fifty *Coracoracs*, which are great Gallies. *Pereyra* receives them, and they fought with much bravery: The King of *Tidore* attacks our Admiral Galley, but being almost killed, drew back with his Galley quite disabled. The Enemy gave way, and *Pereyra* came to the Fort, and brought fresh vigor with that Success. But those of *Ternate* were so intent upon Revenge, that they continued the Siege five Years, and our Men were forced to abandon the Fort.

The

The King of *Tidore* received those that would stay with him, the rest dispersed into several Countries. We shall see in time how they were expelled *Tidore*: And it is rather a wonder they continued there so long, being guilty of such Villainies, than that they were at last drove away. But great Storms threaten *India* now, and our Viceroy is preparing to meet them.

## C H A P. VII.

*The dangerous Sieges of Goa and Chaul; and first of the foremost, continuing the Government of D. Luis de Ataide, and Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. **A**LL humane Grandure is subject to Envy. The Princes of *Asia* seeing the vast increase of the *Portugues* Power, resolved to give it one fatal Blow; and to this purpose entred into a League, which was five Years in forming and concluding, and carried on with wonderful secrecy. 1570.

2. These Princes were *Hidalcan Alecdaxa*, *Nizamaluco Xaoxem*, and *Zamori*. Their Design to extirpate the *Portugueses* in *India*. To this effect they raised powerful Armies, and made so sure of the success, that they had beforehand divided their imagined Conquests. The first was to have *Goa*, *Onor*, and *Bragalar*; the second, *Chaul*, *Damam*, and

and *Baçaim*; and the third, *Cananor*, *Mangalor*, *Cochim*, and *Chale*. *Hidalcan* had assigned his principal Men Offices at *Goa*, and some *Portugues* Women that were cried up for Beauties. The King of *Achem* was at the same time to make an attempt upon *Malaca*. In fine, those Princes broke out like impetuous Torrents, covering the Fields with multitudes of Men. *Hidalcan* marched to besiege *Goa*, *Nizamaluco* to *Chaul*, without any respect to the Peace which had been no way infringed.

3. The Viceroy upon this occasion shew'd an undaunted Spirit. It was generally agreed *Chaul* should be abandoned, for the greater security of *Goa*, but the Viceroy resolved the Enemy should have nothing but what was dearly bought. He immediately sent *D. Francis Mascarennas* with 600 Men in four Gallies and five small Vessels to the Relief of *Chaul*. Among these went many Gentlemen of Note, to serve as private Souldiers. They set out about the end of *September*.

4. Next the Viceroy applied himself to provide for the defence of *Goa*. He posted *Ferdinand de Sousa de Castello Branco*, an old Souldier in *Asia*, in the Pass of *Benastarim* with 120 Men; *D. Paul de Lima* at *Rachol* with 60, and thus in other places he distributed 1500 Natives of the Island. There were not compleat 700 *Portugueses* in it, these he reserved to relieve where ever the greatest danger threatned. The City he put into the Hands of the *Dominicans*, *Franciscans* and Clergy, who exceeded not 300,  
assisted

assisted by 1000 Slaves. Captain *John de Sousa* with 50 Horse was to be ready to appear where-ever there was occasion. D. *George de Meneses*, surnamed *Barrache* was to keep the River with 25 Sail. At the same time the Viceroy caused Ammunition and Provisions to be brought from all Parts, the Works to be repaired, and about the middle of *December* he took his Post upon the Bank of the River.

No sooner was he there, than several Bodies of Men appeared coming down the Mountain Gate, and encamping at *Ponda*, commanded by *Norican*, *Hidalcan's* General. About the end of *December* he advanced, and encamped over-against the Pass of *Bonastarim*, pitching his Master's Tents, who spent eight days in coming down the Mountain by reason of the greatness of his Army. At night he lighted so many Fires to discover the Paths of the Mountain, that at a great distance the multitude of his men could be seen. Being come to *Ponda* he covered those vast Plains with rich and costly Tents.

6. This Army consisted of 100000 fighting Men, besides an infinite number of Followers; 35000 Horse; 2140 warlike Elephants; 350 pieces of Cannon, most of an extraordinary bigness, and some great Barques brought upon Mules, to be lanch'd for all occasions upon the River. The chief Commanders of this multitude were, *Norican* called *Henet Maluco*, of such quality, that he never appeared with his Prince but in the Field; *Rumercan* and *Cogercan*, who for their quality

lity had distant Quarters on the edge of the Water. The Army encamped in such manner, it looked rather like a regular City than a Camp. Their order of Battle was thus: *Hidalcan* at *Ponda* with 4000 Horse, 6000 Musqueteers, 300 Elephants, 220 Cannons; *Cogercan*, *Rumercan*, and *Mortazacan* near the Mouth of the Channel *Ganja* with 3000 Horse, 130 Elephants, and nine Cannons. *Norican* opposite to the Island of *John Lopez* with 7000 Horse, 180 Elephants, and eight great Cannons. *Camilcan* and *Delirracan* facing the Pass of *Benastarim* with 9000 Horse, 200 Elephants, and 32 battering Pieces. *Soiyman Aga* on a height above *Benastarim* with 1500 Horse, and two Field Pieces. *Anjozcan* opposite to the Island of *John Bangel* with 2500 Horse, 50 Elephants, and six Cannons. *Xatiarvian* in sight of *Sopal* with 1500 Horse, 6 Elephants, and 6 Cannons. *Danlatecan*, *Xatiatimanaique*, *Cbitican*, and *Codemenacan* facing the Pass of *Agacaim* with 9000 Horse, 200 Elephants, and 26 Cannons. The rest of the Army covered the Mountains capable to strike a Terror into the boldest Spirits.

7. The Viceroy viewed all the Posts, offering his Person to the greatest danger. The ranging of the Enemies Army caused him to alter his first method, being now reinforced with some men come from several Parts; he posted his men thus: The dry Pass which he had designed for himself, he committed to *D. Peter de Almeyda*, and *D. George Deça* with 120 men, and went himself

self to that of *Benastarim*, where *Ferdinand de Sousa de Castellobranco* was with the like number, taking to himself the Command of one of the lesser Posts there, rather than remove that Officer. *D. Michael de Castro* not far from *Madre de Dios* with 150; *James Barradas* on the point of the dry Pass with 60; *D. Peter de Castro* towards *Benastarim* with 120 maintained at his own Charge; *James de Azambuja* hard-by with 50; *Francis Pereyra* a little farther with 20; *Vincent Diaz Villalobos* at *Sapal* with 60; next *Gaspar Fernandez* with 50; then *D. Luis de Almeyda*, *D. Ferdinand Monroy*, and *D. Martin de Castellobranco* with each 60; *Francis Marquez Botello* with 50; *Alvaro Mendoca* between the Viceroy and Pass of *Mercamor* with 10; a little farther *Simon de Mendoca* with 120; *Emanuel Rolim* at *St. Johns Pass* with 100; In the Pass of *Marque* the City placed 80; *John de Sousa* with his 50 Horse went from *Agacaim* to the Bar, to receive and execute his Orders; *Baltasar Lobo de Sousa* at *Pardex* with 50; *Peter Alvarez de Faria* near him with 80; *Vasco Perez de Faria* at *Necra* with a Company; *Damian de Sousa* at *Bachol* with the like Body; and *Francis de Silveira* at *Norva* with 30.

8. Several Vessels with small Guns were to run along the River to relieve all these Posts. Thus the number of the Viceroy's Men was not above 1600, and he had but 30 Cannons in all those Posts. This was the force we had to oppose that great Power, the like was at *Chaul*.



9. For *Nizamaluco* set down before it at the same time, as *Hidalcan* did before *Goa*. They two being suspicious of each other, kept time in their Preparations, Setting out and Marches. But that we may not confound the Actions by mixing them, we will first relate those at *Goa*, and then proceed to *Chaul*. The Cannon began to play, the flashes whereof enlightened the Night, and the smoak darkned the day. The Enemy spent their first Fury on the Fort and Works of *Benastarim*, and did great harm, but could not perceive it; for whatever they ruined by day was repaired by night. They poured in showers of Bullets, for only in *Alvaro de Mendoca* his Post 600 were found, some of them of two Spans diameter; we could not answer with the like number, but could see we did great execution. And our Vessels sailing nimbly about, plied their small Guns with good effect. *Ferdinand de Sousa de Castellanbranco* one night by the help of a great number of Torches that went before spied an Officer of the Enemies crossing a height opposite to him with young Women a dancing before, *Sousa* desirous to untune their harmony, caused a Cannon to be so luckily levelled at them, that the Officer, some of those that lighted, and two couple of the young Women were seen to fly into the Air.

10. This was the time for the return-Ships to sail for *Portugal*, and every Body advised the Viceroy to stop them, because they would carry 400 Men that might be a great help to the present distress. But the Viceroy ambitious

bitious of making his Glory the greater, by conquering the greater difficulties, answer'd, *There was want of them in Portugal, and he trusted those that remained were sufficient for the work he had in hand.* So the Ships set sail.

11. Hitherto the *Portugueses* did much more harm than they received, having killed many of the Enemy, and among them some of Note, and lost no number nor any person considerable, only some were dangerously wounded. *D. Francis de Sylva* being wounded with a Cannon Ball so that his Guts hung out, continued encouraging his Men holding them up with his hand. *Peter Homem de Silva* losing much Blood at three Musket Shots he had received, and being perswaded to go off, said, It could be no matter of moment since he felt it not. Our Vessels did good Service; and the Enemies were not idle, carrying their men from one place to another. Our men had the boldness often to land and attack the Enemy in their Posts, and still brought away Prisoners, the heads of those they killed, Colours and Arms. *D. George de Meneses Barroche* in his Vessels, and *D. Peter de Castro* by Land with 200 *Portugueses* made such a slaughter, that the Viceroy to animate the City, and show them what was done abroad, sent them two Carts loaded with Heads. *Gaspar Diaz* and his Brother *Lancelot* running up the Country one night a League and half with 80 men, burnt two Villages and many Farm Houses, and brought away many Prisoners, heads of the slain, and of Cattle.

12 Another time these two Brothers with 130 men, attack the Quarters of *Cogergan* and *Rumergan*, and making a great havock, destroyed all they had provided in order to pass over into the Island of *John Lopez*. In this Action *Francis de Cunna Coutino*, Servant to the Viceroy, going alone before the rest, came so close up to 500 *Mores*, that he threw two Granadoes among them, which did some execution, and retired without hurt. The Enemy admired the smallness of our number, and greatness of our Actions; but was more surprized when he heard, that in the heat of all this fury, the Viceroy had order'd D. *James de Meneses* who came from the Coast of *Malabar* with his Squadron, to return thither; and D. *Ferdinand de Vasconcelos* to go with four Gallies and two small Vessels to destroy the City *Dabul*, to show *Hidalcan*, whose it was, how little account he made of all his Power. D. *Ferdinand* burnt there two great Ships of *Meca*, and many small Vessels; then landing fired some Villages, and had done the same to the City, had not his own Captains opposed it.

13. He returned to *Goa*, and attacking the Quarters of *Angoscan*, a principal Man among the Enemy, three Miles distant from the Viceroy, entred them with great slaughter. But his Men with the success falling into Disorder, the Enemy rallied and fell upon them, killing some, the rest fled leaving their Captain, who, weakned with loss of Blood, and tired with the weight of his Arms, could not get into a Boat, but fought  
in

in the Water till he fell down dead. His Ensign *Augustin Fernandez* died honourably with his Colours in the left hand, which he bravely defended with the right. Forty were killed, their Heads with the Colours were carried to *Hidalcan*. The Viceroy immediately sent *Barroche* with 100 Men more to burn *D. Ferdinand's* Vessel taken by the Enemy, which he performed, bringing away the Cannon that was left in it by the Enemy, believing no Body durst come where it lay.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Continues the Siege of Goa, and Government of D. Luis de Ataide.*

1. **A**T this time *Zamori* made Proposals of Peace to the Viceroy, either to amuse him while he went upon other designs pursuant to the Articles of the League, or else hoping to gain some advantage in that pressing Conjuncture. The Viceroy gave him to understand he would not yield the least point for fear, and continued firm in this resolution, notwithstanding *Hidalcan* had prevailed with the Queen of *Guarcopa* to declare War at *Onor*: That Prince was astonished to see him send relief thither, when he thought there was not force to supply *Goa*. The Viceroy at this time also  
T
relieved

relieved *Marramaque* at the *Malucos*, and *Francis Barreto* at *Mocambique*.

2. The grand design of *Hidalcan* was to get over into the Island, in order to it his General *Narican* began to lay a Bridge over the River with a vast number of Workmen. The Viceroy falling upon them made a great havock. There was a Report that *Hidalcan* designed to pass over to the Island in Person, and earnestly desired a fine Horse the Viceroy had, for which he had before offered a great Sum of Mony. The Viceroy sent it him for a present, assuring nothing should be more pleasing than to see him come over to *Goa*. *Hidalcan* accepted of the Horse, and caused him to lie upon silk Quilts under Canopies of Cloath of Gold, to be covered with embroidered Dammask, and his Trappings to be adorned with massy Gold, and his Provender was mixed with Preserves and other Dainties. The Horse enjoyed it not long, being killed by a Cannon-Ball. At this time such a violent Storm of Rain fell, that most Posts were abandoned; the Viceroy desired to take a Standard that was left in one, a French Gunner with only one Man went over in a Boat to fetch it, and were both killed.

3. It was now the beginning of *March*, and the Siege had lasted two Months, without abating any thing of the Fury. Many of our Buildings were ruined by the Enemies Cannon, many of them killed by ours. *Anthony Cabral* run up the River *Chapora* with four Vessels, and landing fifty Men, burnt four Villages,

Villages, and above fifty Sail, bringing away some Booty. D. Paul de Lima with forty Men did as much at *Rachol*. The Viceroy laying hold of a Rope at the Pass of *Benzarim* to draw a Cannon, others refusing for fear of the many Bullets that flew, one hit him upon the Arm, and only pierced the sleeve without doing him any harm. Afterwards being in the Church of *Santiago*, the Roof of it was beat down and hung over his head. *Emanuel de Sousa Coutinho* stepped up to save him, by receiving the Blow, but he acknowledging the Kindness reproved the Action.

4. The Viceroy used all possible means to have Intelligence from the Enemies Camp. He bribed some Renagado *Portugueses* that served there, but what is more, he corrupted *Hidalcan's* most beloved Wife, and by her means knew the King's secret Thoughts, which he could not conceal from her.

5. *Hidalcan* now began to consider the damage done by so few Men to so numerous an Army, that now the *Portugueses* increased in strength by the arrival of several Squadrons that had been abroad, among which *James de Menezes* returned victorious from *Achem*, and *Luis de Melo de Silva* from *Malabar*. He desired Peace, but was loath to propose it. The Viceroy who knew his Thoughts ordered it so, that a Treaty was in a manner set on foot, so that no body could discern who was the Author of it. Yet at length *Hidalcan* stooped to make the first Proposals. But still the Siege was carried

on, and *April* was began. Seven hundred *Moyes* attack a Pass, Two hundred *Portugueses* at first opposed them, but seeing they were relieved, fled in such Disorder, that neither their Officers nor the Viceroy could rally them. Their two Captains were killed.

6. The Action of *D. James de Meneses* relating to *Zamori*, shall be referred to the Chapter of *Chaul*; that of *Luis de Melo* is fit for this place. He set out with Fourteen Sail in search of the Fleet of *Achem*, and met it near that Port; it consisted of Sixty Sail well Manned and provided with Cannon, commanded by the King's Son and Heir. *Melo* and he met first, and our first Shot killed him and several of his Men. The Fleets met and fought resolutely on both sides; but the Enemy was utterly destroyed, three Galleys and six small Vessels taken, all the rest sunk but one. We lost not one Man; of the Enemy Twelve hundred were killed, and Three hundred made Prisoners. *Melo* returned to *Malaca* with the Vessels and Cannon he had taken, and thence sent some Men to the *Malucos*, and came to *Goa* with Fifteen hundred, and *Vasco Lorenzo de Barbuda* whom he found at *Cochim* preparing to bring some Relief.

7. These Commanders being come to *Goa*, took their Posts. *Meneses* executing his Office of Admiral was carried off wounded, at such time as Three thousand of the Enemy began to enter the Island of *John Lopez*. *Antony Fernandez de Cale* with One hundred  
and

and twenty Men met and put them to flight, killing a great number.

8. During this time, before Winter came on, several Attempts were made upon the Enemies Quarters and Inroads into the Country always with success. One Night One hundred and fifty Men beat the Enemy out of a Post at *Benastarim* and after another at *Angoscan*, ruining all the Works they had raised. They did the same at *Xariarrao*, *Chatigan* and *Rachol*, burning Villages demolishing the Works, and killing very many.

9. *Hidalcan*, though almost in despair, began to plant Gardens, and other Works, as if he designed either to take *Goa*, or live in that Field: He resolved to enter the Island with Nine thousand Men at the Pass of *Mercantor*, which was not guarded, because the River is wide there. Our Men hearing a Drum, which never beats but when that Prince marches in Person, run thither, and saw him on the other side encouraging his. Advice being brought to the Viceroy, he sent several Parties and followed himself. In spite of all opposition Five thousand Men got over under the Command of the Turk *Soliman Aga*, Captain of the Guard. Fresh Men still flocked to the Viceroy, till he was Two thousand strong. All the Posts which extended two Leagues were in Action.

10. All the Thirteenth of *April*, from Morning till Night the attack lasted, and from the next Morning till the Day following. *Hidalcan* all the while looking on, cursing

curſing his Prophet *Mahomet*, and throwing his Turbant on the Ground. Of the *Portugueſes* ſcarce Twenty were killed, of the Enemy almoſt Four thouſand, and among them *Soliman Aga*; *Hidalcan's* Brother-in-Law, and other Perſons of Note, ſome Colours, and Plunder were taken.

11. *F. George de St. Lucia* a Dominican and Biſhop of *Malaca*, foretold this Succeſs to the Viceroy. *Hidalcan* raged, and in publick vowed not to ſtir thence, but in private wiſhed a concluſion, but uſed not the means. He propoſed a Peace, and deſpaired of concluding it upon the Terms he offered; one of them was the Surrender of *Goa*, as if the *Portugueſes* had all this while fought for any thing but to keep it. Our Viceroy treated with *Norican* about killing the King, offering him either the Crown or great Power in the Government. *Norican* admits the Propoſals, and as the blow was ready to be given, the Treachery was diſcovered, he ſecured, and ſo the other Conſpirators deſiſted. This was about the end of *April*.

12. The treaty of Peace failing, the Siege went on, but not with the vigour as before. The Enemies Cannon ruined our Buildings, ours their Men, and Partics of ours burnt all the Country. *Sebastian de Refende* with only four Men attempts a Poſt of the Enemies, and killing ſome, would have brought away one alive, but he making much oppoſition, *Refende* was forc'd to kill him. *Lancelot Picardo* and others with forty Men did  
great

great execution. *Antony Fernandez* with thirty falling upon *Rumercan's* Quarters where there was eighty, killed eighteen, and retired without any damage received. The Viceroy leaning one day on a Page, a Ball took away his Prop. Being at rest one night he heard a great Noise, and instantly came abroad, and a Bullet hitting him on the Breast, fell at his feet without doing the least hurt.

13. *Hidalcan* to divide and weaken the Viceroy, again perswades the Queen of *Guarcopa* to attack *Ouor*. She consents, and joining Three thousand Men of her own to Two thousand sent by him, besieges the Fort. It was the middle of *July*, the dead of Winter there, when the Viceroy received Advice thereof. He sent instantly *Antony Fernandez de Chale* with two Galleys and eight Vessels, and what Men they could contain: *Antony* in five days enters that Port, and joining with *George de Moura* commanding there, falls upon the Enemy and puts them to flight, killing many, and bringing all the Cannon into the Fort. About this time *Zamori* broke out in another place, but that requires a particular Chapter.

14. The Viceroy underhand endeavoured to stir up other Princes to invade *Hidalcan's* Dominions, by that means to draw him from the Siege. Both endeavoured to hide their desire of Peace. *Hidalcan* made appear as if he resolved not to stir, and the Viceroy as if he valued not his lying there. In fine, the whole Winter was spent, and to-

wards the end of *August*, when Summer begins, and the Enemy might better keep the Field, the number of Tents was seen to decrease, then the Men, and lastly the Cannon vanished, without coming to any accommodation, after a Siege of ten Months, wherein the Enemy lost Twelve thousand Men, Three hundred Elephants, Four thousand Horses, and Six thousand Oxen, part by the Sword, and part by the Weather. Thus *Goa* was suddenly delivered. Let us now see what was done at *Chaul* by *Nizamaluco*, the second Chief of this League.

## C H A P. IX.

*The Siege of Chaul.*

1. **N**izamaluco keeping time with *Hidalcan*, set down before *Chaul* at the same time the other did before *Goa*. His General *Faretecan* invested the place with Eight thousand Horse and Twenty thousand Foot; and on the last day of *November* the Enemy broke ground with a horrid noise of warlike Instruments.

2. *Luis Ferreyra de Andrade*, a Man well deserving such a Post, commanded at *Chaul*, and laboured long under great Wants of all Necessaries, supplying those Defects with his and his Men's Valour, till *D. Francis Mascarenhas* came to his assistance with Six hundred

dred Men in four Gallies and five small Vessels, and some Barques loaded with Ammunition and Provision.

3. The Fort of *Chaul* is seated in about 18 deg. of N. Lat. on the Bank of a River, not twelve Miles from the Mouth of it. There were in it but fifty Horse, and a small number of Foot. The first bold Action done here was by *Sebastian Gonzales de Alvelos*, who passing over a small Creek alone, challenged any of that number of Enemies, and none durst answer him. Then *Alexander de Sousa* went over with fifteen Horse to discover the Enemy, and stayed so long till 5000 came upon them, among which they killed a considerable Officer. At this time *Faretecan* was marching down the Mountain Gate with 8000 Horse, a great number of Foot, and twenty Elephants; he sat down before *Chaul*, and began to plant Cannon.

4. *Faretecan* desiring to do somewhat before his Prince came, set the Castles upon the Elephants and tied Syths to their Trunks to give an Assault. All turned to his Loss, for he was repulsed by Sea and Land, and forced to retire as far as the Church *de la Madre de Dios*, or Mother of God, where his men rallied.

5. Here it is said some Miracles were seen, as that a Bullet hitting a Souldier on the hand, rebounded from it as a Ball struck with a Racket. The sight lasted three hours with great slaughter of *Mores*, and loss of three *Portugueses*.

6. The Enemy having lodged themselves about the Town, it was thought convenient to demolish all the Buildings that were any thing distant. Nothing remarkable happened till after *December*. Some *Mores* being then gathering Fruit in an Orchard, *Nunno Vello* went out with five Soldiers, and killing one of them, others came on still till they made up Six thousand, and ours encreased to two hundred; who behaved themselves with such bravery, they drove that multitude, killing One hundred and eighty, with the loss of two.

7. *Nizamaluco* came before *Cbsul* in the beginning of *January* with the rest of his Army, which now together consisted of 34000 Horse, 100000 Foot, 16000 Pioniers, 4000 Smiths, Masons and other Trades of sundry Nations, as *Turks*, *Coragons*, *Persians* and *Ethiopians*, 360 Elephants, an infinite number of Bufalos and Oxen, and forty pieces of Cannon most of a prodigious bigness, some carrying Balls of 100, some 200, and even 300 weight, and had Names answerable, as *Cruel Butcher*, *Devourer*, *Orlando Furioso*, and the like. Thus 150000 Men so well provided, planted themselves before a Town that had only a single Wall, a Fort like a House, and a handful of Men. *Faretecan* lodged himself in the Vicar's House near the Chapel of the Mother of God with 7000 Horse and twenty Elephants. *Agalascan* in the House of *James Lopez* with 6000 Horse; *Ximirican* between that and upper *Cbsul* with 2000, so the City was beset

beset from Sea to Sea. At the same time 4000 Horse ravaged the Lands of *Baçaim*. The King took his Quarters at the farther end of the Town; thus the space of two Leagues was covered with Tents.

8. The *Portugueses* at first being but few, and the Works inconsiderable, had no particular Posts, but were wherever the danger threatned. Soon after the News of the danger of *Chaul* being spread abroad, many Gentlemen flocked thither with supplies of Men, so that in a little time there were 2000 Men in the Town. It was resolved to maintain the Monastery of *St. Francis*, and it was committed to *Alexander de Sousa*. Some Houses were also judged fit to be defended. *Nuno Alvarez Pereyra* with forty Men had those on the Shore, those between the *Misericordia* and *St. Dominick D. Gongalo de Meneses*, others near *Nunno Vello Pereyra*, and so in other Places.

9. Mean while it was generally voted at *Goa*, that *Chaul* ought to be abandoned, but the Viceroy resolutely opposed, and was seconded by *Ferdinand de Sousa de Castellobranco*. He immediately sent thither *D. Duarte de Lima* and *Ferdinand Tellez de Meneses* with their two Gallies, and some Men in four other Vessels. Let us see what was done at *Chaul* whilst they are under Sail.

10. *Nimirican* had promised *Nizamaluco* he would be the first man should enter the Town, in order thereto he vigorously attacks the Posts of *Henry de Betancor* and *Ferdinand Pereyra de Miranda*. They bravely  
made

made good their Ground, and being reliev'd repulsed him, killing Three hundred of his Men, seven of ours were lost. The Enemy turn their Cannon upon the Monastery of *St. Francis* where we had some Pieces, and both sides striving to burst or dismount the opposite Guns; the Gunners were so dextrous, that Bullets were seen to meet by the way. On the Eve of *St. Sebastian* a Party of ours sallied upon some Houses where the *Mores* had fortified themselves, and killed a great number without losing one Man.

11. *Nizamaluco* enraged at the last repulse desired Revenge, and that same night attacks the Fort of *St. Francis* with Five thousand Men. The *Mores* thought to surprize ours, but were soon undeceived by the Execution done among them. The attack lasted very furious the space of five hours, The *Portugueses* suspected the Enemy worked under the Wall, and could not see by reason of the darkness, but *Christopher Curvo* three several times put half his Body out of a Window, with a lighted Torch in one hand, and a Buckler in the other, to discover what was doing. The noise was very great, and those in the City fearing for those that were assaulted, sent them Relief though with great hazard. The Morning discovered the Fort stuck with Arrows, and under it above Three hundred *Mores* slain, without the loss of one *Portugues*.

12. Next day the Enemy repeated the Assault, and continued it five days with great resolution, with as great bravery were they

they received by the *Portugueses*, who often falling covered the Field with dead Bodies and took several Colours. However it was at last judged expedient to quit that Fort, and withdraw the Men into the City, lest the losing of it should prove more prejudicial than the defending it could avail. Seventeen Men were killed in it. One of these being on a high place to give notice when the Enemy fired their Cannon, said to those that were below: *If they should now fire Raspadillo (that was a Cannon eighteen Foot long so called) without doubt they would send me all in pieces to sup with Jesus Christ, to whom I commend my self, for the Gun points at me.* Scarce had he spoke the words when he was torn in pieces by a Ball from that Cannon.

13. The *Mores* being possessed of the Fort and Monastery of *St. Francis*, fired a whole Street, but attempting to gain some Houses lost Four hundred Men. Three of them challenged a like number of ours, who thinking it a disparagement to answer them upon equal terms, only two went out, which were *Gomez Freyre* and *Luis del Valle*, who carried a great Hanger. The *Mores* refused the odds, and one of them withdrew. *Valle* with the advantage of the Hanger overcame his Adversary, and then assisted *Freyre* to kill the other. So both sides might be said to be conquer'd, the *Mores* losing their Lives, and ours their Honour by taking the Advantage.

14. *Chaul* being now streightned, *Ruy Gonzalez de Camara* was sent to *Goa* for Relief; which he brought in two Gallies. At this time appeared here, and before *Mangalor*, the *Malabar-Ships*, sent by *Zamori*, pursuant to the Articles of the Confederacy. But our Method being to relate what each of the Confederates did separately, this shall be referred to another Chapter. Let us see one of the bravest Actions that has been heard of, performed by *Stephen Perestrelo*, Commander of the weak Fort of *Caranja*.

15. It was said, above 5000 of *Nizam-luco's* Horse marched into the Lands of *Ba-gaim*. They resolved to attempt some of our Garrisons; and being beaten off at *Açarim* and *Damam*, went and sat down before *Caranja*, where *Stephen Perestrelo* was, with only Forty Men. *Caranja* is a small, inconsiderable Work, between *Chaul* and *Damam*, on the Edge of the Water, and is, in some measure, an Island, being encompassed by small Brooks. As the Enemy sat down before it, *Emanuel de Melo* came with Thirty Men. Being now Seventy strong, *Perestrelo* falls upon that great Number, with such Success, that after covering the little Island with dead Bodies, the rest fled, leaving their Cannon, and a considerable Quantity of Arms and Ammunition.

16. But to return to *Chaul*: The *Moors* furiously batter'd it with Seventy Pieces of large Cannon, for the space of a Month; the least that was spent every Day being 160 Balls. They made great havoc among

the Houses, in which many were killed; one single Ball flew six Persons that were eating together; others fell into the Ships, and failed not of Execution there. This Battery began against the Bastion of the Cross, and was carried on to the Place where *Peter Ferreyra* and *Mem Dornelas* were posted, levelling all with the Ground. The Besieged worked incessantly to cover themselves; but the Enemy's Gunners were so expert, they mounted their Balls so, that they fell among those that thought they were within Shelter. *Augustine Nunez*, found an Expedient to avoid this Danger, which, though thought difficult at first, was afterwards their only Security.

17. Our Commander seeing the Battery on the other side of *St. Dominick* never ceased, thought fit to attack the Enemy's Quarters opposite to it. *Alexander de Sousa* and *Augustine Nunez* undertook it with One Hundred and Twenty Men, and, though vigorously opposed, drove the Enemy thence; killing many, and firing the Works.

18. *John Alvarez Suarez*, an Officer of the Revenue, hearing the Danger of *Chaul*, fitted out a Vessel at his own Charge, and came thither with some Soldiers; where he behaved himself beyond what was expected of one, whose Business seemed to be only the Pen, though now he converted it to the Sword.

19. Coming now at the time of the Attack of those Works, he was one of the first that mounted. *Ferdinand Casqueiro* hearing

ing the *Moors* play at Tables in an House, ran in, and killed two of them, driving the rest from the Sport. The Work was levelled with the Ground, without any Loss on our Side. Among the Arms taken in this Action, was a Cymiter with this Inscription, *JESUS SAVE ME.*

---

## CHAP. X.

*Continues the Siege of Chaul.*

i. **T**HE Enemy attacked some considerable Houses, and were repulled, with Loss of one Man of ours; but we having undermined that of *Heñor de Sampaio*, to blow it up, they ran furiously, and set their Colours upon the Top of it. This incensed our Men, and there followed an obstinate Dispute in the House, till some Fire accidentally falling into the Powder, it blew up, killing Forty Two of our Soldiers: Some escaped so disfigured, that their own Friends mistaking them for *Moors*, ran out to kill them.

2. The *Moors* escaped here unhurt, and set their Colours upon the Ruins of the House, and upon that of *Xira*, which they took next. *Ximirican* assaulted by Night the Bastion of the Cross, with Six Hundred Men; but *Ferdinand Pereyra* opposed them with Thirty; and *Fienry de Betancor* second-

ing

ing him with some others, they beat them off, and took five Colours they had planted upon the Work. *Betancor* fought with the Left Hand only, having before lost the Right: And *Dominick del Alama* being lame, caused himself to be brought out in a Chair.

3. *April* was now begun, and the Enemy seemed resolved to continue there all the Winter, and were raising new Works. *Alexander de Sousa* and *D. Gonçalo de Meneses* were appointed to sally upon them. Their Soldiers understanding it, ran out without Orders, to the Number of Two Hundred, and furiously drove the Enemy from their Works, which, their Captains coming up, they ruined. Above Fifty *Moors* were killed, and some few *Portugueses*.

4. *Nizamaluco* perplexed with so many Losses, gives a general Assault with his whole Army, at once attacking all our Posts. There was scarce any of our Works that the *Moors* did not enter, and plant their Colours; and with the same Vigour and Fury were repulsed, and drove out of them. In the Morning above Five Hundred *Moors* appeared slain, and Four or Five *Portugueses*. This was the Posture of Affairs, when some Supplies came from *Goa*, *Diu* and *Baçaim*, being above Two Hundred Men, and a sufficient Quantity of Ammunition.

5. Two other Dangers now terrified the Besieged: The one, a troublesome, though not mortal Disease; being great Swellings all over their Bodies, which deprived them

of the Use of their Limbs. The other, that *Nizamaluco* solicited the King of *Sarçeta*, and some Rebels of *Cambaia*, to fall upon the *Portugueses* in other Places; by that means to hinder Relief coming to them. But neither of them gave ear to him. This Prince seeing he must finish alone what he had undertaken alone, fell to battering the House of *D. Nunno Alvarez Pereyra*, and continued it for the Time of Forty Two Days. He assaults it with Five Thousand Men: The Defendants at first were but Forty; soon after, Twenty more came to their Assistance; and some others also after that. We lost but One Man, and killed above Fifty *Moor*s. One being taken, and brought to the Captain, told him, above Five Thousand had been killed during the Siege.

6. The House of *Nunno Vello* was battered and assaulted Thirty Days, with much the same Success; only this Difference, that we lost Ten Men. Only Thirty Soldiers sustained these furious Assaults, till it being judged no longer needful to defend the House, it was agreed to blow it up. The Enemy hastily ran to possess themselves of it, setting up their Colours at such time as part of the Building flew into the Air, doing good Execution, though not so much as was expected. But what this fell short, was made up by another Mine, and by the Valour of *D. Francis Mascarennis*; who falling upon those that escaped the Mine, put them to the Sword, and came off much hurt. In like manner, the House of *Francis de Melo* was

was quitted, after they had been defended to Admiration.

7. The Summer was now almost spent: There were thrown into the City above Six Thousand Cannon-Balls, some of a prodigious Bigness; and *Nizamaluco* was making Preparations to lie there the Winter. Above Two Hundred *Portugueses*, fearing the Ruin of the City, had deserted; but, instead of them, Three Hundred came from *Goa*, which put *Chaul* into somewhat a better Posture. On the 11th of *April*, *Ruy Gonçalez de Camara* fell upon Five Hundred *Moors*, in an Orchard, with such Success, that only Fifty of them escaped. He took Five Colours, and lost only Two Men, but had many wounded.

8. Fortune could not be always favourable to the Besieged, sometimes they must meet Disasters. The *Moors* enraged at that Loss, played their great Cannon incessantly: A Chance-Ball from one of them, lighting upon one of the Galleys that brought the Relief, sunk her downright, with all that was in her, being Forty Men, and Goods valued at Forty Thousand Ducats. The *Moors* did not long rejoyce at this Accident; for *Ferdinand Tellez* sallying the next Day with Four Hundred Men on the Side of *St. Francis*, obtained another Victory, equal to that of *Ruy Gonçalez*, and brought away some Ammunition, Arms, one Piece of Cannon, and other Booty. *Nizamaluco* beheld this Action, and mounting on Horse-back, offered to come down in Person, with a

Lance in his Hand; then changing it to a Whip, in a Rage threatned his Men, and upbraided them as Cowards.

9. Our Men were now so accustomed to Danger, nothing could terrifie them; and they seemed to court Death, as if she had not been busie enough about them. Some of our Soldiers being employed, levelling the Enemy's Works we had driven them from about *St. Francis*, and being more handy at the Sword than Spade, drew upon themselves a great Number of Enemies, whereof they killed above Two Hundred, not without Loss on our Side.

10. D. *John de Lima*, *Francis de Sá*, and D. *Nunno Alvarez* went out to discover some Mines it was thought the Enemy was carrying on. They executed their Command, entring those Quarters, where they put all that were in them to the Sword. In these two Actions we lost Six Private Soldiers, and D. *Luis de Castellobranco*, who having lost one Leg, offered the other; D. *John de Lima*, who seeing a *Moor* miss several Shots he made at him, stood still till he was killed; performing his Promise made on his Brother D. *Duarte's* Grave, that he would soon follow him; *Anthony de Fonseca*, he who hung by his Lance at *Parnel*, and laughed at the Enemy; *Francis Barradas*, and *Ruy Pereyra de Sa*, and Five other Gentlemen of note.

11. After the King had made it appear he designed to continue the Siege all the Winter, and all Things were on both Sides disposed in order thereto, *Fartecan* made some

some Overtures of Peace, but without any visible Commission from his Prince, who caused him to be apprehended, not for acting therein without Orders, for, doubtless, he had private Instructions; but upon suspicion that he was corrupted. It was no wonder if *Nizamaluco* desired a Peace, after lying before a Town Seven Months, without any Success, but losing as many Thousand Men. Nor was it strange the *Portugueses* should wish it, having already lost above Four Hundred of their own, besides *Indians*. But the Hopes of Peace being extinguished by the Imprisonment of *Faretecan*, *George Pereyra Continno* went out with his Ships, and, without any considerable Loss, burnt Three that belonged to *Nizamaluco*.

12. It was now the Beginning of *June*, and the Attacks and Batteries were Carried on with such Vigour, as if they then began. The first Attempt was upon *D. Nunno Alvarez* his House, which was lost through Carelesness. Yet after it was taken, some Gentlemen attempting to recover it, lost at least Twenty *Portugueses*, without doing any considerable Execution. Next, the Enemy possessed themselves of the Monastery of *St. Dominick*, where great Slaughter was made. At *D. Gonçalo de Meneses* his House it was well fought, but to our great Loss. In all the other Quarters, the Cannon-Balls flew like Hail. Let us come to the last Assault.

13. The Batteries never ceased from the End of *May*, till the End of *June*; *Nizamaluco*

*maluco* resolving to make a Breach fit for his whole Army to try its Fortune. On the 28th the Elephants appeared loaded with Castles, and the Castles full of Men. A valiant *Moor*, well mounted, walked leisurely before all our Works, within Musquet-shot, and never altered his Pace; notwithstanding above Five Hundred Shot was made at him, and his Horse wounded, he went off unhurt. The whole Army expected the Sign to move, but it was not given because our Cannon killed an Officer of Note, which the King took as an ill Omen, and put off the Assault till next Day. Six of our Men venturing out of the Works, drew a great Multitude of the Enemy within reach of our Shot which was so well bestowed, that One Hundred and Eighteen fell down dead, and above Five Hundred were wounded, with out doing us the least hurt.

14. The next Day about Noon the King gave the Signal to fall on; and the whole Body of Men and Elephants advanced with horrible Cries, and Noise of Warlike Instruments. *Agalascan* attacked *James Suarez de Albergaria*, *John de Silva Barreto*, *Roderick Homen de Silva*, and *Laurence de Brito*, in their Posts. *Faretecan* and *Sujatecan* fell on the Quarter of the *Misericordia*. *Misnarrao*, Captain of the Guards, on that of *Ruy Gonzalez*. *D. Francis*, our Commander in Chief, being to relieve where-ever the greatest Danger pressed, planted himself opposite to the King with part of his Men, having distributed the rest where there was need,

15. The Day was darken'd with Smoak, at Times lighted with Flames; the Slaughter and Confusion was great on all Sides. Some of the Enemy's Colours were planted on our Works, but soon taken, or cast down, with those who had boldly set them up. The Elephants, made drunk by the *Nayres*, that they might be the more fierce, being burnt and wounded, ran madly about the Field. One much valued by the King, being fired in the Flames, ran into the Water, and swam over the Bar, where one of our Vessels killed him with a Cannon-Shot. In fine, The Assault ended with the Day, the *Portugueses* remaining Masters of all their Works, after killing above Three Thousand of the Enemies; among which, one was the Son of *Agalascan*, and many more of Note.

16. This Action cost us but a few private Soldiers, and Eight Gentlemen. *D. Henry de Meneses* being lame, having his Legs burnt, caused himself to be carried in a Chair. *Laurence de Brito* took a Colours, *Gonçalo Rodriguex Caldera* and *Hierome Curvo* would not leave their Posts, after receiving many dangerous Wounds. In fine, All did more than mortal Actions; it would be a Lessening of others to commend some, and we cannot particularize them all.

17. The *Moors* asked Leave to bury their Dead; which being granted, as they drew them off, they asked the *Portugueses*, What Woman it was that went before them in the Fight, and whether she was aliye & One answered,

swered, *Yes*; for, doubtless, *she was immortal*. And they replied, *Then certainly, it was the Lady Marian*. So they call the Blessed Virgin. Many said they saw her at *Lawrence de Brito's Quarter*, so bright, that she blinded them. And some who went to see her Image in the Churches, were converted, and staid in Town.

18. *Nizamaluco* was desirous to treat of Peace, but was not willing to shew it: Our Commander wished as much as he, and was as backward in making it appear. At length both Sides abated, and a Treaty was set on foot: *Faretecan* and *Azafacan* were Commissioners for *Nizamaluco*: *Peter de Silva*, and *Meneses*, and *Anthony de Teyve*, for our Commander in Chief; and *D. Francis Mascarennas Baroche*, for the Captain of the City. The Substance of the Accommodation was a League Offensive and Defensive between *Nizamaluco* and King *Sebastian*. This Agreement was celebrated with great Joy, and sending of rich Presents on both Sides. All this might have been done, without so much Effusion of Blood. *Nizamaluco* raised his Camp, and returned home.

## C H A P. XI.

*The Proceedings of Zamori upon this Occasion, and during the Government of D. Luis de Ataide.*

1. **Z** *Amori* the third Chief of this League, who was to act by Sea as Sovereign thereof among those of *India*, performed his Part very coldly. After *Goa* and *Chaul* had been Besieged a Month, he instead of putting his Fleet to Sea, sent to treat of Peace with the Viceroy, either by this means to amuze him, or else to gain some Advantage upon his pressing Necessities. For few Princes follow the Dictates of Honour, when opposite to their Interest. This Affair being proposed in Council at *Goa*, it was unanimously agreed to accept of a Peace though upon hard terms. But the Viceroy who had resolved to loose all or nothing, said, *He would make no Peace unless upon such Terms, as he might expect in the most flourishing Condition.*

2. *Zamori* seeing this Design fail, set out a Fleet about the end of *February* under the Command of *Catiproca Marca*. He soon appeared before *Chaul* with twenty-one Sail, and a great number of Men, whereof above One thousand were Musqueteers, and passed by Night through all our Gallies and Gallions that filled the Port without opposition. The Entrance was defended against only

two Paraos, whereof one got in, the other not. The *Malabars* with reason boasted of this Action, and *Nizamaluco's* Men rejoiced at the Success.

3. *Nizamaluco* was much pleased at the arrival of the *Malabars*, posted the 1000 Musqueteers, and then perswaded the Officers to attack our Ships, which were under the Command of *Leonel de Sousa*. A great number of *Calemutes*, which are small Vessels that King made use of, were crammed full of Men to accompany the twenty-one *Malabars*, every one going as to a sure Victory. They set out with great eagerness, bearing down upon *Lionel de Sousa*, and fled with the same precipitation seeing him make at them. Yet for all their haste our Gallies did considerable execution among them. *Nizamaluco*, who from a height had been looking on, did all he could to perswade them to try their Fortune again, but to no purpose; for after twenty days they stole away by night out of that Harbour with the same good Fortuae they came in.

4. The Queen of *Mangalor* thinking to make some Advantage of these Confusions, and hearing that *Catiproca* was near with his Fleet, represented to him how easily our Fort might be surprized, and offered to defray the Charge. He accepted the Proposal, thinking to regain the Credit lost at *Cboul*. Unexpectedly he applies scaling Ladders, and some of his Men mounted. Some Servants of *D. Antony Percyra*, who Commanded there, awaking, and seeing the  
Enemy

Enemy, threw out of a Window the first thing came to hand, which was a Chest of their Master's full of Silver, and with it beat down those that were upon the Ladder. *Pereyra* waking with the noise, threw down those that had mounted, the other fled carrying away the Chest aboard the Ships. As they passed before *Cananor*, D. *James* with his Squadron fell upon and totally routed them. D. *James* follows them up the River of *Tiracole*, and not one Ship of them escaped, *Cutiproca* was killed, and his Nephew *Cutiale* taken, as also D. *Antony's* Chest recovered.

5. *Zamori* did not fulfil the Articles of the League by sending this Fleet, for every one had promised to undertake something in Person; till now D. *James de Meneses* had obstructed him, scouring that Sea, burning many Towns and Ships, and taking many which he carried to *Goa*. Towards the end of *June*, when D. *James* was gone, and *Hidalcan* and *Nizamaluco* were about drawing off, *Zamori* fate down before the Fort of *Chale* with 100000 Men, most of them Musqueteers. This place is but two Leagues from *Calicut*, that Prince's Court, and was then held by D. *George de Castro*. The Enemy planted forty Pieces of Brass Cannon, and girting the place round thought they had shut out all hopes of Relief. Some was sent from *Cochim* under the Conduct of D. *Antony de Noronha*, who could not put it into the Place, for the furious Batteries of the Enemies Cannon. *Francis Pereyra de Sousa* coming

ing from *Cananor* with extravagant Bravery, conquered the difficulty, but the Relief was small because the Vessels were so. As soon as the Viceroy had advice, he sent *D. James de Meneses* with eighteen Sail to carry Supplies to the Fort. He with great difficulty got to *Chale* about the end of *September*, when the Besieged were reduced to the last Extremities, there being at least Six hundred Persons in the place, whereof not above Seventy that could bear Arms.

6. It seemed impracticable to attempt the putting in any Relief, for the mouth of the Harbour was very narrow, and all the Hills about it were planted with Cannon. But our Commander resolved to surmount all Difficulties: A great Vessel was filled with Provisions for two months, and fifty Soldiers put into it. *James de Azambuja* went before in his Gally, and *Antony Fernandez* and *D. Luis de Meneses* cover'd it with their Vessels. They pierced with incredible Courage through Showrs of Bullets, and *Ferdinand de Mendoca*, Nephew to *D. James*, run in all the Supplies, whilst *Francis de Sousa* with his Men killed above Five hundred of the Enemy, who endeavour'd to obstruct it. This done, they retired through the same Dangers with loss of forty Men. As they were cutting off a Soldier's Leg he asked whether the Succour was got in, and hearing it was, *Then*, said he, *let me die in God's Name, for I cannot die more honourably.*

7. Though

7. Though it was not possible to bring the useles People out of the Fort, as was design'd, yet the putting in of Relief was an Action scarce to be parallell'd, for the great hazard and difficulty that attended, and vast Power that opposed it.

8. The King of *Achem*, the Fourth of these great Confederates, whose thoughts were always employed against *Malaca*, did not in point of time answer the Covenants of the League, but we shall see him at length in the Government of D. *Antony de Noronna* performing what he so long delayed. The Queen of *Guarcopa* and others, as has been related, made up what was wanting in him.

9. This was the end of that mighty League; this the Government, Valour and Fortune of our Viceroy; who opposing all the united Power of *India*, re-established the *Portugues* Reputation, so much decayed; For which he deserves an everlasting Fame.

10. D. *Luis de Ataide* Lord of *Atouguia* was of unquestioned Valour, had great Experience in Military Affairs, to which he had applied himself from his Youth, and of a Spirit so free from the Infection of Avarice, that as others brought from *Asia* to *Portugal* heaps of Treasure, he brought four Jars of Water from the four famous Rivers, *Indus*, *Ganges*, *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, which were preserved many Years in his Castle of *Peniche*.

11. After serving in *Europe* and *Africk* he went over to *India*, and served there, and at the Age of twenty-two, was Knighted at  
Mount

Mount *Sinai* by the Governor D. *Stephen de Gama*. Returning to *Portugal* he went Ambassador to the Emperor *Charles V.* and was in that Battle in which the Emperor defeated the *Lutherans* under the Landtgrave and Duke of *Saxony*; where he behaved himself so well, that *Charles V.* offered to Knight him, and he said, He had already received that Honour at Mount *Sinai*, and was therefore sorry he could not admit it then. The Emperor in the hearing of all answer'd, He more envyed that Honour, than he rejoyced in his Victory.

12. At his arrival at *Lisbon* King *Sebastian* caused him to be received under a Canopy, yet afterwards (like King *Emanuel* and *Duarte Pacheco*) very much slighted him. We shall see it when he is made the second time Viceroy, being the first that was so twice. D. *Antony de Noronus* succeeded him now: He was the Tenth that had this Title, and of Governours the Twenty-fourth: The First of the Name and Sirname, the Third Count that had that Post: He was of the larger size, had a good Meen, his Complexion white.

## C H A P. XII.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Antony de Noronna, from the Tear 1571 till 1573, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. **K**ING *Sebastian* thinking the Government of *India*, as it was then extended, too great a Burden for one Man, divided it into three Parts: The first from *Cape Guardafu* to the *Island Ceylon*, which is that of *India*: The second from *Cape Corrientes* to *Guardufu*, which is *Monom-tapa*: The third from *Pegu* to *Cbina*, which is that of *Malaca*. The first was given to *D. Antony de Noronna*, with the Title of *Viceroy*; the second to *Francis Barreto*, and the third to *Antony Moniz Barreto*, both stiled *Governors*. Though it may alter things as to point of time, I will speak of them in distinct Chapters, beginning with *D. Antony de Noronna*.

2. He set out from *Lisbon* with five Ships, and was followed by two more. They arrived at *Goa* the beginning of *September* safe as to the number of Ships, for none was lost; but not so as to Men, 2000 dying at Sea of sickness of 4000 that set out. *D. Antony* came before *Hidalcan* had raised the Siege, and thereby obtained part of the Honour of obliging him to quit it. *Hidalcan* left Commissioners to conclude the Peace with the new *Viceroy*. It was proclaimed with great Joy

Joy on the 13th of *December*, and so the Year and the War ended together.

3. The first care of the new Viceroy was to send Relief to *Chale* in two Galleys, one Galleon and four Ships, and after them two Galleys and three other Vessels. But these were soon applied to other uses; *D. James de Meneses* coming from *Chale*, he sent him back with 1500 Men, who came too late, the Fort being already delivered to *Zamori* upon Conditions. This surrender was made contrary to the plurality of Votes by the Commander *D. George de Castro*, overcome by the Prayers and Tears of his Wife and other Ladies that were there, without considering that he was Eighty Years of Age, and ought rather to chuse an honourable Death, than a short term of infamous Life. Nor was this all his fault, for the Provision had lasted longer, had not he put it into his Wife's Hands, and she into those of her Slaves. Thus she was the first *Eve* among the *Portugueses* of *India* that tempted her Husband to a Crime of this nature, this being the first place so delivered by them to the Enemy. And the Viceroy could not but lose more Honour by loss of *Chale*, than he could justly pretend to by the raising the Siege of *Goa*.

4. *D. James* gathering the People that came out of *Chale*, and were under the Protection of the King of *Tanor*, left them at *Cochim*. Then dividing his Fleet with *Matthias de Albuquerque*, they clear'd the Sea of Pyrats and secured the Coasts; next they took and demolish'd

molished a Fort built by a *Nayque* subject to *Hidalcan*, at the mouth of the River *Sanguicer*. Here was killed *Antony Fernandez Chale*, a *Malabar*, who for his Valour and Conduct had often the Honour to Command many of the bravest Gentlemen that were in *India* at that time. He was of the Order of Christ, was carried to *Goa*, and there buried with greater State than any till that day, that had not been Governor of *India*.

5. When the Viceroy accepted this Command in *Portugal*, so much lessened by the Division of Governments, his great aim was to get an Estate, being poor, and having Children. He thought *India* might mend his broken Fortune, and that *Antony Moniz Barreto* would be satisfied with less than was ordered to fit him out for the Government of *Malaca*; he was deceived, for *Moniz* was not satisfied with what could be done, nor was *India* in a Condition to give what was promised him in order to go to *Malaca*, nor *Malaca* in a posture for a Man, who look'd upon his Reputation, to go thither with that Title without a considerable Force. The one would not go with what was given him, and the other could not give more. Difficulties hard to be composed.

6. *Moniz* resolved not to go to *Malaca*, and writ to *Portugal* that the Reason was, because the Viceroy would not furnish him with what was requisite, as not desiring he should go. Malicious Whispers are generally grateful to Princes and great Men. Those who govern'd King *Sebastian* (unhappy

*bappy Kingdom, whose King is a Child!*) without any other Information besides this Gentleman's, which all tended to his own Advantage, committed the weakest Act that has been heard of: *Moniz* himself will shame them and himself, as shall appear in its proper place.

7. The Vice-Roy, after fitting out several Squadrons as usual, and receiving four Ships from *Portugal*, two whereof were lost in their Return, was obliged to make ready a considerable Succour for *Damam*, threatened by the *Mogol*, on account that that Place and *Baçaim* both belonged to the Kingdom of *Cambaya*, whereof he was now possessed; and by this Means Sultan *Mamud*, Heir to the late King of *Cambaia*, was left to the Tuition of three Great Men, *Alucan*, *Itimitican* and *Madremaluco*. Each of these envying the others Fortune, strove to make himself Master of the young King: And he finding all their Aim was Power, fled from *Madremaluco*, where he thought himself in danger, to *Itimitican*, and totally lost himself. They were all three bad, but this was the worst of all. Therefore, considering the young King might flee from him, as he had done from the others, he resolved to lay aside all Shame, and betray him. *Gelalde Mamet Hechar Taxa*, King of the *Mogols*, was now in great Power; to him he offers to deliver the King; by which means, with a small Army, he might possess himself of that Kingdom, whereof he should be Vice-roy, as a Reward of his Treachery. *Hechar* agreed,

agreed, set forward with a good Army; and at the City *Amadaba*, the Traitor delivered up his Prince to him; and so the *Mogol*, without drawing Sword, was seated in the Throne of *Cambaja*.

8. *Heubar* not satisfied with what he had got, resolved to recover the Lands and Towns of *Baqaim* and *Damam*. This Design being known, *D. Luis de Almeyda*, Commander of *Damam*, gave Advice to the Viceroy; who immediately sent some Succours, and prepared to follow in Person. He set out from *Goa* the Latter End of *December*, with nine Gallies, five Gallions, eight Gallies, and ninety other Vessels.

9. The Viceroy being come into the River of *Damam*, struck such a Terroure into the Enemy, who was encamped two Leagues off, that the King immediately sent an Ambassador to the Viceroy, to treat of Peace. The Viceroy received him in his Galley with great State, and firing all the Cannon of the Fleet; and having heard his Proposals, sent back with him *Anthony Cabvall*, who concluded the Peace to the Content of both Parties. The Viceroy returned to *Goa*, and the *Mogol* settled himself in the Possession of the Kingdom of *Cambaja*, cutting off the Head of the Traitor *Itimitican*, a just Reward of his Villany.

10. The Inhabitants of *Brasalar* were offended at the Fort lately built by us there; they besieged it to the number of 6000. *Roy Gonçalez de Camara*, who commanded there, gave Advice to the Viceroy, and provided

to make a good Defence. Five Sail came immediately to his Relief; then twelve more, under the Command of D. *George de Meneses*, who by the Way destroyed the Town of the *Naique* of *Sanguicer*, with great Slaughter of the Enemy, and Loss of two Men. Without the Bay of *Braçalor* he took a Ship of *Meca*; and entring, found all was safe, with the Succour of the first Ships.

11. D. *Henry de Meneses* sailing to the Northward with one Galley and seven other Vessels, near the Islands of *Angerula*, eight Leagues from *Cbaul*, took two great Ships belonging to *Hidalcan*; but a Storm arising, they were all drove ashore, and taken by *Malabars*, who carried them to *Hidalcan*; and he, because the Ships were taken after the late Conclusion of Peace, (though the Fault was theirs, for answering with their Cannon, when they were required to shew *Portuguese* Passes, as had been agreed) caused D. *Henry*, and all the *Portugueses* then at his Court, to be put into the Castle of *Bilgam*; and it cost some trouble to release them, and appease that Prince.

12. It was the Middle of *October* when the King of *Achem* (though late, yet pursuant to the great League before spoke of) appeared before *Malaca*, with almost 100 Sail, 7000 Men, and a vast quantity of Ammunition. He landed the same Night of his Arrival, and suddenly set fire to the Town of *Iller*; which had been burnt to the Ground, had not as sudden and violent a Shower of Rain quenched it. *John Bandara*, Captain of the Horse,

Horſe, ran with more Zeal than Diſcretion to ſuccour the Town, and was killed.

13. The Enemy attempted to burn our Ships; but failing in this, and other Deſigns, he ſate down before the City, reſolving to carry it by a regular Siege, having at firſt thought it would not coſt him that Trouble. The City was in a miſerable Condition, very poor, without Men, unhealthy and out of heart, having ſuffered much by Shipwrecks, Sickneſs and Famine, not without deſerving it; for *Malaca* was (I know not whether it is) the *Portugueſe Ninive* in *Asia*.

### C H A P. XIII.

*The Siege of Malaca, with other Occurrences, and End of the Government of D. Anthony de Noronna.*

1. **M**alaca had, in a manner, no Hopes of Defence; the Enemy inceſſantly battered the Walls, and cut off all Proviſion from coming to it: There was nothing within but Miſery, and Calling upon God for Mercy, without deſerving it by any other Action, but becauſe they implored it. So eaſie it is to appeaſe the Divine Wrath.

2. So it happened; for in this Extremity, accidentally came into that Port *Triſtan Vaz de Vega*, with one only Ship, in which he ſailed for *Sunda*, to load with Spice. The Beſieged earneſtly intreated him to aſſiſt them,

them, and he could not but give ear to their Intreaty, though it seemed a Rashness to engage a Fleet of an Hundred Sail with Ten, whereof Nine were almost rotten, and unrigged. Among these were distributed 300 Soldiers, as naked as hungry. The Captain, who might repose much Confidence in his own Valour, acknowledging, in such Cases there ought to be no Trust but in God, gave the Example, and caused all his Men to confess, and prepare themselves for Death.

3. About the End of *November* he sailed, and discovered the Enemy's Fleet in the River *Fermoso*. He gave the Command of his own Ship to *Emanuel Ferreyra*, and went himself into a Galliot with his Sword in his Hand, to encourage the Men, seeing him expose himself to the greatest Danger with them. The Signal being given, and the Cannon furiously discharged, our Captain lays the Enemy's Admiral on Board, makes great Havock among 200 Men that were in her, beats down her Flag, and she getting loose, shews him her Stern.

4. Mean while, *Ferdinand Perez*, with only thirteen Men, in a small Vessel, took a Galley. *Ferdinand de Lemos* runs his Ship with such force against another, that he overset and sunk her. *Francis de Lima* having taken another, burnt it, to be at leisure to return to the Fight, that still continued. *Emanuel Ferreyra*, who was in *Vega's* Ship, sunk three Vessels, unrigged others, and killed many Men. To be short, Every one fought so admiration, the whole Enemies Fleet fled,

except four Galleys and seven small Vessels that were burnt or sunk; 700 of the Enemy were kill'd and taken, of ours only five were slain: Our Ships waited three days to see if the Enemy would return, and then carried this joyful News to *Malaca*, where it was scarce believed.

5. Let us see what was doing at the *Malucos*. Whilst *Gonçalo Pereyra Marramaque*, our Admiral in those Seas, carried Relief to *Ternate* from *Amboina*, this Fort was Besieg'd by the Fleet of *Ternate*, sent by the King either to stop *Pereyra* from going to relieve our Men whom he held in great Distress, or if he were gone to possess themselves of those Islands. They being too late to stop him, besieged the People of *Ulate* in the Islands of *Iliacer*. They had been forty days shut up, when *D. Duarte de Meneses* with *Sancho de Vasconcelos*, who commanded at Sea, came to their Relief. They of *Ulate* encourag'd with this Succor, fell upon the Besiegers and put them to flight. They presented our Captain with Baskets of Heads, and he returning to *Amboina*, found *D. Duarte* dead, and succeeded him in that Command. The Command of the Sea he gave to *Simon de A-breu*, call'd *Papabierro*, that is Sword-swallower, because, being concern'd in many Duels, he always disarm'd his Adversary.

6. Being abroad with his Squadron he met that of *Ternate*, and there began a furious Battle, but the other Vessels in the heat of the Action forsook him, and he overpower'd by the Multitude was killed, and 25 men

with him. *Antony Lopez de Resende*, who went not off with those Cowards, came to succour him, but it being too late, the Enemy offer'd him Quarter, and he refused it, saying, *He had rather die as his Commander had done.* The Admiral of *Ternate* attacks him, and he taking a Cannon upon his Shoulder (I suppose it was a little one) order'd a Souldier to give fire to it, so successfully, that it broke the Admiral's Leg. His Men thought him dead, and whilst they were busie about him *Resende* had time to make his escape, having lost four Men in this great Action.

7. The little King of *Atua*, a new Convert, who had fought bravely, was betrayed to *Reboanje*, Commander of the *Ternatenses*, who offer'd him his Life if he would renounce the Faith, and threatned him with a new sort of Martyrdom if he refused: He continued firm; and being hung by a Rope between two Vessels, *Reboanje's* Galley run with all its force at, and tore him to pieces.

8. *John de Silva* succeeded in the Command of the Sea. All our Men seeing so many misfortunes befall us in those Islands, were for quitting them: Only *Sancho de Vasconcelos* protested he would not abandon the Christians of those Islands, affirming, if no Body would bear him Company he would stay alone and defend them with the Natives. They were all assham'd, and yielded to his Resolution. They quitted *Ito*, and fortified themselves upon the Point of *Rosauive*, where the Land makes a Bay of four Leagues in Length.

Length, and three Leagues over at the mouth, and runs up still narrower like a Pyramid; on one side of the Point is the pleasant and plentiful Town of *Rosanive*, the Inhabitants thereof and the neighbouring Places were our Friends. There the new Fort was built, the *Atives* and *Tavires* labouring at it with great Fidelity to the *Portugueses*, by whom they were reduced to the Faith, which they firmly adhered to. *John de Silva* went to *Malaca* for Succor, which was granted him by *Francis de Costa* commanding there, and was cast away in the Bay of *Tapara*, where the Men were made Slaves.

9. Though these were lost, yet some Supplies came to *Amboina*, sent by the Viceroy. Our Enemies at *Atua* falling on a sudden upon the *Portugueses*, killed five and an *Italian* Jesuit. *Mascarennus* fled into the Woods, whence he was brought out at the end of eight days almost famished. *Sancho* gathering our Friends, fell upon *Atua*, and killed not only the Children at their Mother's Breasts, but the very Beasts. In the Island *Rosaler*, twelve Leagues distant, he did the same, some of the Natives retiring to a Mountain.

10. At this time arrived at *Goa* four Ships from *Portugal*, under the Command of *D. Francis de Sousa*, who as soon as he landed, went to the Archbishop *D. Gasper*, and deliver'd to him a Letter from the King, and other Papers. Scarce had that ancient and learned Man seen them, when without any consideration, he committed a great weakness,

ness, putting those Orders in Execution ; for there being several Circumstances that ought to be weighed by a Person of his Years and Profession, he instantly with great disorder called together several persons appointed for this extravagant Action into the Church.

II. The Orders were read by a Cryer ; they contain'd, That *D. Antony de Noronna* should be depofed from the Viceroyship, and that *Antony Moniz Barreto* should immediately fucceed him with the Title of Governour. All *Noronna's* Crime, whereby he merited to be thus depofed, was, that he gave not to *Moniz* what was not in his power to give ; and all the Merit of *Moniz*, that he promised that which afterwards he could not perform. *D. Antony* return'd to *Portugal*, though flighted, not inglorious ; for extravagant Injuries done by Superiors, are rather Honours than Affronts to the Person that receives them : Yet he not well confidering it, died for Grief, as did his Wife and Brother-in-law ; and that Minister of State who was the cause of their Death, by crediting fo flightly the Information of *Antony Moniz*, being fenfible of the wrong he had done, broke his Heart : And King *Sebastian* hearing of the Death of *D. Antony*, declared he was forry it happen'd before he had made him reparation of his Honour. *D. Antony* was a Man of great Honour, Sincerity and Prudence, and who, according to the Rules of the World, deferved his ill Fortune. His Viſage long and difagreeable, his Body large and grofs. In the number of  
Vice-

Viceroys he was the 11th, in that of Governors the 25th; the 1st of the Name, and 4th of the Sirname; he held the Government two Years, and deserved to hold it many.

## C H A P. XIV.

*The Government of Antony Moniz Barreto, from the Tear 1573 till 1576, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. Scarce had the Bishop concluded that Act so misbecoming the Pastoral Staff, when he took out another Order, wherein *Gouçalo Pereyra Marramaque* was appointed to succeed *Antony Moniz Barreto* in the Government of *Malaca*, and in default of him *D. Leonis Pereyra* was named. The latter succeeded, for the other died after relieving of *Ternate*. This done, that Pharisaical Cabal broke up, and hasted to carry the News to the Viceroy, who received it with such unconcernedness as might well put them all out of Countenance.

1573

2. Advice is now brought, that *Malaca* is again in danger, the King of *Achem* being again before it, assisted by the Queen of *Japara*. The new Governor orders *D. Leonis Pereyra* to be gone to his Government to succour that place; *D. Leonis* demands of him what he had before demanded of *D. Antony*, and he returns the same answer *Nossona* had given him, without remembering what

what he had writ to the King, or considering he had now less reason to refuse D. Leonis, than *Noronna* had to deny him; for then *India* was threatned by all the Power of the *East*, and was now deliver'd of that danger. D. Leonis, to take all manner of excuse from him, would have been satisfied with much less now, than *Moniz* demanded before: But even that was not given him, and he came away for *Portugal*; where that was his Justification for not taking upon him that Command, but was not esteemed an Offence to deprive *Moniz* of the Government, as it was with less reason in the Case of D. *Antony*; whereby it appears, the Will of Ministers of State makes the Crimes or Merit of such as depend on them.

3. This Year passed without any thing remarkable, and about the end of it arriv'd six Ships from *Portugal*: They carried an Order for Trying and Executing D. *George de Castro*, for delivering up the Fort of *Chale* to *Zamori*. He was taken into Custody, and with him his Wife *Donna Felipa*, who, tho' really guilty of the Crime, was not liable to undergo the Punishment. He suffer'd for her, and all that were in fault, having his Head cut off upon a Scaffold in the Market Place of *Gaa*; and it was observ'd, that others who were as much to blame as he, did not only escape unpunish'd, but were rewarded; and it is yet more remarkable, that a Year after a Commission was sent from *Portugal*, for D. *George de Castro* to serve in another Post.

4. Scarce did *India* begin to breath, after so many Troubles, and particularly *Malaca*, when the Queen of *Japara* sent to Besiege it, her General *Quisidaman* with 15000 chosen Natives of *Java*, in almost 80 great Galleons, and above 220 smaller Vessels. *Tristan Vaz de Vega* was come back thither from *Sunda* after the late Victory: By common Consent, and with much Justice, he was chose Commander of that Place, *D. Francis Enriquez* his Predecessor being dead. He gave Advice of the danger to the Governor *Antony Moniz*, and he to all the neighbouring Places, promising to requite whatever they should do in order to relieve the Besieged; whereby such Succours came into them on a sudden, as put them into a good posture of Defence.

5. Mean while *Moniz* demanded of the Chamber of *Goa* to lend him 200000 Pardaos to fit out a Fleet, and finding them backward, offer'd his Son *Duarte Moniz*, a Boy of eight Years of age, as a Pledge; the Chamber gave the Money, and took the Pledge.

6. Whilst this Fleet was sitting out, the General of *Java* began to act in the same manner the King of *Achem* had done, attacking *Iller*; and *D. Antony de Castro* coming with only ten Men to defend it was killed, as *Bandara* had been the last Siege. The whole Army landed and lodged themselves round the Town. *Vega* sent *John Percyra* and *Martin Ferreyra* with 150 men to beat the Enemy from a Post; they killed 70 of them,

them, levelled their Works, and brought off seven Pieces of Cannon. *Pereyra* afterwards burnt above 30 of their Galleons, and some great Engines they had framed to attack a Bastion. *Ferdinand Perez de Andrade* and *Bernardin de Silva* burnt their Palisades. In all these Actions we lost 15 or 20 men. The River being thus cleared, *Pereyra* with our Vessels besieges the Besiegers, and at *Jor* takes the Provisions that were coming to them; whereupon in great Consternation they Imbarqued and went off by night. *Pereyra* pursues and cuts off their Rear: Almost half the 15000 perished by Fire, Sword, and Sicknes during the Siege, which lasted three months, and the pursuit of three hours.

1575. 7. The King of *Achem* and Queen of *Japara* took it by turns, for when he left the Port she came in, and he now comes in as she goes out. He came now with 40 Gallies, some Ships, Galliot and other Vessels, to the number of 100, with a great Train of Artillery. *Tristan Vaz* order'd *John Pereyra* in a Galley, *Bernardin de Silva* in a Caravel, and *Ferdinand de Pallares* in a Ship with each 40 Men to go out to guard the Provisions that were coming, and whereof the City was in great want; the Enemy falls upon them, and in an instant beat all three to pieces; 75 Men perish'd by Fire, Sword and Water, 40 were taken, and only five sav'd themselves by swimming, the three Captains fought to their last breath. *John Pereyra* promised so to do, to one who seeing all lost offered him a Boat in which he might have escaped.

Only

Only 150 men remained in *Malaca* to defend it, and of these 100 were sick and aged. Want of Men and Ammunition caused them to be very still in the City. The Enemy not knowing the Cause, imagined they had some cunning Stratagem in hand, and in a panick Fear raised the Siege, when they might have carried the Town, contenting themselves with their success against the three Captains. They came into the Port in the beginning of *January*, and went out about the latter end.

8. The Priests, Women and Children had cried loud with sighs and tears, imploring the Mercy of God, which at length they obtain'd: Next to God the City was saved by *Tristan Vaz de Vega's* Courage, being ready upon all Occasions; and by his liberality having spent above 20000 Ducats, wherewith he has purchased a never-dying Honour. The Succours the Governour sent came too late.

9. *D. John de Costa*, Admiral of the *Malabar* Seas, cruized there victorious with two Gallies and 24 other Vessels. He fell upon the Town of *Gaipar*, near *Braçator*, then in Rebellion, kill'd 1500 of the Inhabitants, burnt the Town, and cut down the Woods. Thus the King of *Tolar*, grown haughty, was humbled. In the River of *Chale* he destroyed an Island belonging to *Zamori*. Above that his City of *Parapangulem* could not escape its Ruin. The Heir of the Crown coming to the Relief of it, was killed with 200 *Moors*. At *Capocate* 300 were slain, with the

the loss of two on our side. At Mount *Delii*, the Town of *Nilachiram* was consumed to Ashes. Between these Actions, several Vessels were taken, which supplied the Gallies with Slaves, and the Fleet with Provisions.

10. Let us now see our Dominion in the *Molucos* drawing to an end. New Commanders were still sent to ruin all by their Avarice, with strength to maintain the Fort : *D. Alvaro de Ataide* was now there, and *Nunno Pereyra* under Sail to succeed him. The King of *Ternate* continued the Seige, and the place was almost famished. It looked as if God had undertaken the Revenge of his Father's Death, and assisted him to starve that Garrison ; for no Succor was sent thither, but perished. Of all *Marramaque* his Squadron not the least Vessel return'd to *Goa* ; four Ships that went with *Antony de Valadares* and *Lacerda* were cast away in several places, and he got thither alone, and after him *Francis de Lima* with a Galliot. These were comforts to the Besieged, but no perfect Cure. The King of *Ujantana*, our Friend, supplied the Enemy with Arms. *Sancho de Vasconcelos* coming from *Amboina* to succor the Besieged to small effect, found a Galleon of his loaded with them in the Port ; and a Portugues Ship at *Banda* in danger of falling into the hands of those People : For, seeing the decay of our Affairs on that side, every one strove to hasten our Ruin. *Belchior Botello* going with one Galleon to relieve the Fort, was cast  
away

away on the Sands *Solocos*. Another in which *D. Alvaro* was going, away, after resigning that Command to *Nunno*, was beat to pieces in the Harbor. The great Ship of *Lionel de Brito* came when there was no Fort there, and was lost afterwards. Other Supplies, a great deal of Cannon, much Merchandise and Ammunition, and above 2000 Men design'd thither, perish'd all by lamentable disasters. The Murderer of that innocent King was stabbed by the People of *Java*, rather as Executioners of God's Justice, than Enemies to the *Portugueses*. *Gonçalo Pereyra Marryamaque*, who consented to the Murder, died for meer Grief of so many Misfortunes, as he sailed for *Amboina*, and was cast into the Sea.

11. In fine, our Dominion in that Island came to a dishonourable Period; for those who had so insolently treated the *Ternatenses*, were forced to beg their Lives of them, delivering up the Fort to the King, who treated them better than they deserved.

12. The King entering the Fort, protested before the *Portugueses*, he did not take possession of it for himself, but in trust for the King of *Portugal*, and would deliver it to whoever he should appoint, as soon as the Murdet of his Father was punish'd. I believe they never demanded the Fort, because they would not oblige themselves to do Justice. This was the second Place we lost after this manner in *Asia*. The loss of this Place was not punished as that of *Chale*, the Crime being the same, only with this

difference, that the Tears of the Women extorted the one, and the Perswasions of Jesuits the other. The arrival of that Ship, with sufficient Supplies was a testimony of the Guilt. But both places being lost for want of Relief, they ought rather to have been Executed who did not relieve, than they that surrendred them. It was a good answer of the King of *Persia* to a *Portugues* Ambassador, when asking, *How many Governours of India the King had beheaded?* the Ambassador said, *None*: Then replied the King, *The Dominion of the Portugueses in India will not last long.*

13. Our Affairs at *Amboina* were not in much better a posture; for though *Sancho de Vasconcelos* did more than could be expected of his force, yet it was less than was requisite, it was but rising and falling. He defeated two Fleets of *Ternate*, killed their Commanders, and *Cachil Tidore*; the People of *Amboina* slew *Maladam*, and many more, and eat them; for they use to eat those they kill in the Church. By his Order *Alexander de Mattos* destroyed the Island *Jamam*, but at length the Natives killed him and all his Men; but afterwards *D. Henry*, Unkle to the King of *Tidore*, coming with Two hundred and fifty Men, slew Two thousand of them. Two Natives of those Islands, as big as Giants, killed with their own hands, the one above Twenty, the other above Thirty Men. *Sancho* returned again, and entred the same Town.

14. The People of *Amboina* designed privately to Murder *Sancho de Vasconcelos*. He suspecting that *Ruy de Sousa*, a new Convert, and the principal Man of *Rosanive*, was the Author of that Conspiracy, sent friendly for, and then secured him by the advice of some *Portugueses*, not without the help of the *Jesuits*, believing it was for the better, and they ruined all: For *Sousa* escaping out of Prison, did what he never had design'd, joining our Enemy, and killing a good number of our Men, which put our Affairs into a desperate Posture.

15. This Year *F. Peter de Alfaro* with three Companions entred the City of *Quantung*, and perceiving he did not profit much there, returned to *Macao*, where he built the Church. He was a *Spaniard*, and seem'd to foresee, that what belong'd now to the *Portugueses* only would soon belong to his Nation. A token of his Sanctity is, that perishing by Shipwrack, he was afterwards found on the Shore upon his Knees.

16. This Year concludes with the arrival of four Ships from *Portugal*. Since there is no Account to be found of what our Governour acted the next Year till *D. James de Meneses* succeeded him, let his Government end here, and I will go over to the Relation of what was done these very Years, in *Adonomatopa*, by the Governour *Francis Barreto*, and his Saccellour *Vasco Fernandez Homem*. *Antony Moniz Barreto* was a Man deserving of that Post he obtained, though he got it not fair-

ly, and was one of the best Governors of *India*, the Twenty-sixth of that Number, and Second of the Name and Sirname.

---

## C H A P. XV.

*The Government of Francis Barreto in Monomotapa, beginning in the Tear 1569, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

i. **S**INCE, by reason of the Disagreement between *Antony Moniz Barreto*, and the Viceroy *D. Antony de Norronna*, and *D. Leonis Pereyra*, the Government of *Malaca*, one of the three into which that Dominion was divided, took no effect, let us go over to the other of *Monomotapa*, which was erected, though it lasted not long. When *Francis Barreto* returned to *Portugal*, after having been Governor of *India*, he was appointed Admiral of the *Gallies*: He exercised this Command at the time of that memorable Action of *Pennon*, by which he gain'd great Reputation. Being come back to *Lisbon*, and the King resolv'd to make that Division of Governments, he named him for *Monomotapa*, with the additional Title of Conqueror of the Mines there. The great inducement to this Conquest, was the Information and Experience of the vast quantity of Gold found, particularly

larly at *Manica* in the Kingdom of *Bocavanga*.

2. The Doubt was, whether it were proper for a Man who had been Governour of all our Dominions in *Asia*, and this Southern Part of *Africa* to accept of this, which was the least considerable part into which it was divided, but the danger and difficulty of it made amends for the greatness. Three things prevailed with him to accept of it; the first, that he was poor; the second, that he thought it no lessening to take a less Command in Obedience to his Prince: and the third, that it was allowed him, in case the Viceroy and he met at Sea, their Power should be equal in all respects.

3. In fine, *Francis Barreto* submitted to his King's Command, and the Desires of his Country, and sailed from *Lisbon* in *April*, 1569, as Captain, General, and Governour of that Conquest, with three Ships. He carried One thousand Landmen, and might have had more, if the Vessels could have contained them; for the noise of Gold drowned the thoughts of danger, and nothing raises Men like the thoughts of gain. Among these were many Gentlemen and old *African* Soldiers. Being come to *Mozambique*, he went to subdue the King of *Pate*, who was revolted from us.

4. *Barreto* had Orders not to undertake any thing without the Advice of *Francis de Monclaros*, a Jesuit, who was the cause of the ill Success of this Enterprize. So great an Error it is to subject a Soldier to a religious Man: So indierect a Presumption

for a religious Man to undertake what does not belong to his profession: There were two ways to the Mines, the one through *Monomotapa*, the other by *Zofala*, *Barreto* was for this, *Monclaros* for the other, and carried it, notwithstanding, all the Votes to the contrary, and so the first step they gave was to their ruin.

5. Now the Governor enters upon this Conquest, let us say something of its Climate, quality, and extent. The Coast from Cape *Delgado* to *Mozambique*, is in the form of a bow; it begins in 9 deg. of S. lat. and ends in 14 d. 3 m. in which space are the Islands *Pajaros*, *Mesa*; one at the Mouth of the River *Pandagi*, *Mocolae*, *Matemo*, *Queriba*, *Cabra*, near the River *Menluane*, *Quisve*, and *Cabras*, or *Del Açotado*. Then follow the Rivers, *Mucusii*, *Mucululo*, *Situ*, *Habe*, *Xanga*, *Samozn*, *Velofo*, *Pinda*, *Quizimaluco*, *Tintagone*. Between these last are the Bays of *Xanga* and *Fuego*, and the Sands of *Pinda*. From *Mocambique* to the Port of the Bay of *Cauca*, in 21 deg. and half of S. lat. The Continent runs to the Westward, gathering the Waters, where appears the *Parcel de Zofala*, the dangerous *Scylla*, and *Caribdis* of those Seas, into which falls these Rivers, *Mocugo*, *Bayones*, *Moffige*, *Mojuncoale*, *Sangage*, *Ambuzi*, ( here lie the three Islands of *Angora*, ) *Monca*, *Macolonga*, ( with three other Islands ) *Tondamaje*, *Corombeca*, *Quefango*, *Loranga*, *Chimani*, *Mogundo*, *Mafusa*, ( between the last are the Ports of *Quilimane*, and *Luabo*, with the Island *Cbimgoma*, ) *Tendicalu*,

*dicalu, Quiloe, Sabam, Bagoe, Miave, Zofala,* (with the opposite Island called *Inbanfato*) *Quiloane, Mambony, Molimon, Quilamancobi.* Between Cape *Befiquez* in 32 deg. of S. lat. and Cape *Correntes* in 23, is the great Bay of *Sauca*. Into this Bay falls the River *Iu-bambane*, where is the Trade of Ivory. From these names I infer the Language of those People, cannot be harsh, being mostly compounded of the soft Letters, L. and M.

6. The Empire of *Monomotapa* from the Mouth of *Cuama* in the East, runs 250 Leagues, is divided by the great River *Zambere*, which falls into that of *Cbiri*, running through the Country of *Borero*, where are many other large Rivers, and on their banks many King's, some absolute, some Subjects of *Monomotapa*; the greatest of the first is *Mongas*, bordering on *Cuama* and *Zambere*, which falls into the Sea, between *Mozambique* and *Zofala*, to the S. E. by four Mouths. The first that of *Quilimane*, 90 Leagues from *Mozambique*. The second *Cuama*, 25 to the Southward. The third *Luabo*, 5 Leagues lower, and the fourth *Luaboel*, 15 more to the South. Between them are fruitful and large Islands, whereof one is 60 Leagues in compass. The River is Navigable, the same number of Leagues up to the Town of *Sena*, inhabited by *Portugueses*, and as many more to *Tete*, a Colony of theirs also. The richest Mines are those of *Musapa*, called *Ansur*, the Ophir where the Queen of *Saba* had her Riches, when she went to *Hierusalem*. In these Mines has been found a lump

of Gold worth 12000 Ducats, and another of the value of 400000. It is not only found among Stones, but grows up within the bark of several Trees to the top, where the branches spread. The Mines of *Manchica* and *Butica* are not much inferior to these. There are many others not so considerable. There are three Fairs or Markets, whither our People Trade for this Gold, from the Castle of *Tete* on the River *Zambeze*, 120 Leagues from the Sea; the first is *Luané* four Days journey up the inland. The second *Bueto* farther distant, and *Mafapa* the third, yet farther of. This Gold was purchased for Cloth, glass-beads, and other things of no value among us. At *Mafapa* resides a *Portugues* Officer appointed by the Commander of *Moçambique*, by consent of the Emperor of *Monomotapa*, but upon condition, not to go into the Country, without his leave upon pain of Death: He is Judge of the differences that arise there. There are Churches of the Dominicans at *Massapa*, *Bocuto*, and *Luanze*.

7. The Original, number and time of the Reign of the Kings is not known; it is believed, there were several in the time of the Queen of *Saba*, and that they were subject to her, for thence she had her Gold. In the Mountain *Afur*, near *Mafapa*, are seen the ruins of stately buildings, supposed to be Pallaces and Castles; in Process of time, the Empire was divided into three Kingdoms, *Quitave*, *Sabanda*, and *Chiganga*, this last the most powerful, as possessing the Mines

of *Manobica*, *Butua*, and others; its believed, the Blacks of *Butua* of the Kingdom of *Chicanga*, are those that carry the Gold to *Angola*, because 'tis thought there are but 100 Leagues distance between those two places; this Country bears Rice, and what we call Indian-wheat, has abundance of all sorts of Cattle, Fowl, and Gardening: Their chief care is Pastorage and Tillage; this Empire is divided into 25 Kingdoms, which are *Mongas*, *Baroe*, *Manica*, *Boesa*, *Macingo*, *Remo*, *Chique*, *Chiria*, *Chidima*, *Boquizo*, *Inbanzo*, *Chiruvia*, *Condesaca*, *Daburia*, *Macurumbe*, *Mungussi*, *Antiovaza*, *Chove*, *Chungue*, *Dvia*, *Komba*, *Rassini*, *Chirao*, *Mocavanga*, and *Remo de Beza*; there are many Lordships, that have not the Title of Kings.

8. The Emperor has a great Palace, though of Wood; the chief Apartments of it are three, one for himself, another for his Wife, and a third for his menial Servants; it has three Doors into a Court, one for the Queen, to go in and out at, another for him and the Servants that attend his Person, and are Sons of his Noblemen; the third for the Cooks, who are two great Men and his Relations; and the under-Cooks who are also Men of Quality. None of these must be above 20 Years of Age, for till that Age, they do not believe they have to do with Women, and if any do, they are severely punished; after that time, they are preferred to great employments: Those within Doors, are governed by a Captain, and those with-  
out

out by another, as formerly in *Spain*, the *Alcalde de los Donceles*.

9. The Principal Officers about the King are, *Ningomoxa* Governor of the Kingdoms, *Mocomoaxa*, Captain General, *Ambuya* great Steward; to him it belongs when the *Mazurira* or the King's Principal Wife dies, to name another in her stead, but it must be one of the King's Sisters or nearest Relations; *Inbantovo*, the head Musitian, who has many under him, and is a great Lord; *Nurucão*, Captain of the Van-guard; *Bucurumo*, which signifies the King's Right-hand; *Magande*, the chief Conjuror; *Netambe*, the Apothecary that keeps the Ointments and utencils for Sorcery; *Nehono*, chief Porter. All these Offices are executed by Lords; there is no delicacy in Cookery used; they only Eat boyl'd and roasted, they Eat the same as is usual among us, with the addition of mice, which they esteem as good as Partridge or Rabbet.

10. The King has many Wives, only nine called great Queens, which are his Sisters, or near Relations; the others the Daughters of Nobles. The chiefeft is called *Mazurira*, and Mother of the *Portugueses*, who often present her, because she sollicites their business with the King; and he sends no Embassador to them without some Servant of hers; the second is *Inabanda*, that sollicites for the Moors; the third *Nabuiza* that lives in the same Apartment with him; the fourth *Navemba*; the fifth *Nemangore*; the sixth *Nixingoapangi*; the seventh *Nemongoro*;

*mangoro*; the eight *Niffani*; the ninth *Nccaranda*, each of them lives apart, with as great state as the King, and have several Revenues and Kingdoms for their expence. As soon as one dies, another succeeds in place and name; they have power to reward and punish, as well as the King; sometimes he goes to them, sometimes they come to him; there are many Women waiting on them, of whom he makes use as he pleases.

11. The Principal People of *Monomotapa*, and whereof the Emperor is, are the *Mocarangis*, not warlike, nor furnished with any other Arms, but Bows, Arrows, and Javelines; they have no Religion nor Idols, but acknowledge one only God, and believe there is a Devil, that he is wicked, and they call him *Muzuco*: They believe their Kings go to Heaven, and call them *Muzimos*, and call upon them in time of need, as we on the Saints. They speak of things past by tradition, having no knowledge of Letters. They give Ear to the Doctrine of Christianity; the lame and blind they call the King's Poor, because maintained by him with great Charity; and if they travel, the Towns they go through are obliged to maintain and furnish them guides from one place to another. A good example for Christians.

12. Every Month has its Festival Days, and is divided into three Weeks, each of 10 Days; the first Day is that of the New-Moon, and the Festivals the fourth and fifth of each Week: On these Days they put on their best Appatel, the King gives publick Audience

Audience to all, holding a Truncheon about three quarters of a Yard long in each hand, as it were leaning upon it; they who speak to him lye prostrate, this lasts from Morning till Evening: If he is indisposed, *Ningomoxa* stands in his place, no body can speak to him, or go to Court, on the 8th Day of the New-Moon, because it is held most unlucky.

13. On the Day the New-Moon appears, the King with two Javelins runs about in his House, as if he were Fighting, the great Men are present at this pastime, and it being ended, a pot full of *Indian* wheat, boyled whole, is brought, which he scatters about the Ground, bidding them Eat, because it is the growth of the Earth; they know how to flatter, for every one strives to gather most, knowing that pleases him, and they Eat it as savourly, as if it were the greatest dainty.

14. Their greatest Holy-day, is the first Day of the Moon of *May*, they call it *Chusavo*: On this Day all the great Men, which are a vast number, resort to Court, and there with Javelins in their Hands run about representing a Fight; the sport lasts all Day, then the King withdraws, and is not seen in eight Days after, during which time, the Drums never cease beating. On the last Day he orders the Nobleman he has the least affection for to be killed; this is in the nature of a Sacrifice he offers to his *Muzimos*, or Ancestors; this done, the Drums cease, and every Man goes home. *The Mumbos Eat*  
Man's

Man's fleſh, whereof there is a Publick Butchery. Let this ſuffice for the Customs of this Empire, for it would be endless to relate all.

---

## C H A P. XVI.

*Continues the Government of Francis Barreto in Monomotapa.*

1. **S**uch was the Country whether the Governour *Francis Barreto* was now going, he ſet out from *Mozambique* with more Vellels than he brought and more Men, Tools, Camels, Horſes and other neceſſaries for War, and for the work of the Mines; having Sailed Ninety Leagues, he went up the River *Cuama*, called by our firſt diſcoverer *De las buenas ſennales*, he came to *Sená*, or Fort St. *Marçalís*, as *F. Monclaros* deſired, and repaired the Town *Inaparapala*, which is near to another of the *Moors*, they being always profeſſed Enemies to the Chriſtians, began to undermine our deſigns, as they had formerly done in *India*; they attempted to poiſon our Army, and ſome Men and Horſes began to Die, and the cauſe being diſcovered by one of them, they were all put to the Sword, and the Chief of them torn to pieces at the mouths of Guns, except one (called *Mabomet Jame*) who affirming the Bleſſed Virgin had appeared to him, and  
com-

commanded him to become a Christian, by the name of *Lawrence*, he had the favour to be strangled. The discoverer was pardoned.

2. *Barreto* sent an Embassador to the Emperor, who for the more honour admitted him to his Presence, not as other Embassadors were treated at this Court, which is to go without Arms, bare-footed, on their Knees, and when they come near, prostrating themselves on the ground. The effect of the Embassy was to desire leave to punish the King of *Mongas* who was in Rebellion, and go on to the Mines of *Butua* and *Manchica*: The first part was a piece of flattery, to obtain the second, because the Lands of *Mongas* lie between *Sena* and the Mines, and it was necessary to make way with the Sword. He consented to all, and offered One hundred thousand Men; *Barreto* accepted not of them, because he would give him no share in the Honour gained in that War, and thinking thereby to oblige him the more.

3. He marched ten Days with Twenty three Horse, and Five hundred and sixty Musquetiers, (enduring much by Hunger and Thirst) for the most part along the River *Zambeze*, over whose most rapid stream hang pieces of the high Mountain *Lupata*, ninety Leagues distant from the *Ethiopian* Sea. At the end of this tedious march, they began to discover part of the Enemy, and soon after saw the Mountains and Valleys covered with Arm'd Men, the Governor was not daunted, seeing it was hard

hard to discover the end of that multitude, he drew up, and gave the Van to *Vasco Fernando Homem*, he had the Rear, and between the bodies was the baggage, and some Field pieces; when they came to charge, he removed the Canon to the Front and Flanks, the two unequal bodies advanced, the Enemy in the form of a half-Moon; before they engaged, an old Woman advanced and scattered some Powder towards our Men, having perswaded the Enemy (she was a notorious Witch) that that Powder alone would gain the Victory.

4. *Barreto* understanding the superstition, having seen the like in *India*, ordered a Gunner to level a Piece at her; which was so well performed, the old Woman was torn to pieces; the *Cafres* were astonished, believing her immortal. *Barreto* rewarded the Gunner with a Gold Chain; the Enemy advance without order, either through ignorance, or relying on their multitude, and clouds of Arrows and Darts begin to fly, but our Musquetiers killing them by Hundreds, they turned their backs, many were killed in the pursuit, and then our Men ordered to halt; the Governor marches to the City *Mongas*, and meets another multitude like the former, which in like manner was put to flight, above Six thousand *Cafres* were slain, and two of our Men, and the Governor was forced to alight and lead his Men; the City was entered without opposition, being abandoned, our Men entrench'd, and in the Morning discovered an Army as great

as both the former; the *Cafres* were again routed, and beg'd peace in the King's name. The Governor received the Messenger with such Majesty, that he was astonish'd, and could not speak; being come to himself, and having deliver'd his Message, *Barreto* promised he would see the King, and matters should be adjust'd.

5. The next Day our Men march'd and incamp'd in a convenient place where Embassadors came from the King to treat of Peace. It happen'd one of our Camels broke loose and came so near the Governor, that he stop'd him till they came up that were in pursuit of him; the *Cafres* having never seen such a Beast, admir'd it stop'd at the Governor, thinking it some submission it made to him, and began to ask some questions. He making his advantage of their ignorance, told them, he had many of those Beasts that only fed upon Man's flesh, and having devour'd all that were killed, that Beast came from the rest to desire he would not make Peace, because they would come to want Food; they astonish'd herewith, earnestly intreated him, he would desire the Camels to be satisfi'd with good Beef, and they would instantly bring them a great number. He granted their request, and march'd on. He was in great distress for Provision when news came his presence was required at *Moçambique*. He gave the Command of the Forcesto *Vasco*, and departed. The cause was this,

6. *Antony Pereyra Brandam*, who at the *Molucos* had committed Crimes that deserved the severest punishment, in *Portugal* was condemned to banishment into *Africk*; he desired the Governor he might be permitted to go with him to *Monomotapa*; he did it, and being come to *Moçambique*, gave him the Command of that Fort. *Brandam*, though Eighty Years of Age, and under such obligations, resolved to secure himself in the Fort, and defame *Francis Barreto* with false informations sent to the King; the Original Papers fell into the Governor's Hands, who being come to *Moçambique*, showed them to him, and he falling down and kissing his Feet begg'd Pardon; *Barreto* lifted up and forgave him, then giving the Command of the Fort to *Laurence Godino*, returned to prosecute his design.

7. Our Governor being come to the Fort of *Sena*, *F. Monclaros* came out in a great rage to tell him, he should desist from that Conquest, with which he had imposed upon the King, that no more Men might be lost, for he should be answerable to God for what had, and should die. It was most certain, *Barreto* was not the promoter of that Conquest, and *Monclaros* was in fault for all the miscarriage that had been committed; *Barreto* took this insolence so much to Heart, that he died within two Days without any other Sickness, breathing out his Soul in sighs. Doubtless the Jesuit had more to answer for his death, than he, for the miscarriages the Jesuit was guilty of.

8. King *Sebastian* much resented this loss, and particularly expressed it by the honourable Reception he made to his Body when brought to *Lisbon*. So this great Man having escaped so many Bullets among the *Indians*, so many Darts and Arrows among the *Cafres*, and the Malice of a Villain, fell by the Words of a religious Man.

## C H A P. XVII.

*The Government of Vasco Fernandez Homem in Monomotapa, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

I. **T**HE Governor *Francis Barreto* being dead, an order of the King's found among his Papers was opened, by which *Vasco Fernandez Homem* his Major, was appointed to succeed him. The Perswasions of *F. Monclaros*, who now disliked the Conquest, so far prevailed with him, that forgetting his Duty he returned to *Moçambique*. There some understanding Persons, and chiefly *Francis Pinto Pimentel* his Kinsman, represented this Affair in such manner to him, that he returned to *Monomotapa*. Being now delivered of that religious Man, who went away to *Portugal*, he set out by the way of *Zofala*, as *Francis Barreto* would have done, that being the properest Road for the Design in hand: He marched directly towards  
the

the Mines of *Manchica* of the Kingdom *Chicanga*, bordering by the Inland with that of *Quitayve*, the next in Power to *Monomotapa*. With him was the same number of Men, and sorts of Instruments his Predecessor had. To oblige the King of *Quitayve*, he Complemented and sent him Presents, and tho' these are the most efficacious means to make all things easie, that Prince grew so jealous of these Solicitations, that he received all very coldly.

2. The Governor not making much account of his Answer, marched into his Kingdom. Several Bodies of *Cafres* attempted to stop his Passage, but were routed with great slaughter. The King seeing he did not prevail by force of Arms, had recourse to Policy. He caused all the People and Provisions to be withdrawn from the Towns and Country, so that our Men suffered extream want till they came to *Zimbaoe* his Court, whence he was fled, and had fortified himself in inaccessible Mountains. *Vasco* burnt the City, and marched on to *Chicanga*, the King whereof rather through fear than love, received him with exterior signs of Affection, and gave him free passage to the Mines. Our Men marched to them, many believing they should gather Gold by handfuls; but seeing the Natives with much difficulty gather'd but little in a long time, and not being expert at that work, and that to make any thing of it, more Men and Materials were requisite, they return'd the

Z 2

way

way they came, and parted Friends with that King.

3. Though they obtained not what was sought this way, yet the ease wherewith they came to the place designed, evinced how great an Error it was to impose *F. Manclaros* as Director to the late Governor, who, only to follow his own extravagant Humour, lead him a way so dangerous and tedious. *Vasco* returned to *Quitayve*, and that King did now for fear what he refused before, permitting the *Portugueses* to march to the Mines of *Maninnas*, only upon condition they should pay him Twenty Crowns yearly. *Vasco* passed thence to the Kingdom of *Chicova*, bordering upon *Monomotapa* to the Norward along the Inland. The cause of undertaking this March was, the Account he had of rich Silver Mines. Having encamped, he ask the *Cafres* for the Mines, and they seeing it was in vain to resist, and fearing the discovery of the Mines would be their Ruine, scattering some Ore far enough from the Mines, shewed it, telling them, there they were.

4. By this means the *Cafres* got time to escape; for our Men giving credit to them let them go, perhaps not desiring they should see what Treasure they got. The Governor caused all round about to be dug, and after much labour it was no wonder he did not find what was not there. Provision growing scarce, and finding no Fruit of his Labour, he marched away, leaving Captain *Antony Cardoso de Almeyda* with Two hundred

dred Men, and Necessaries to continue there some Days, to examine into the Truth of that so much coveted Corner of the Earth.

5. *Vasco* being gone, *Cardoso* suffered himself to be again deceived by the *Cafres*, who had before imposed upon him. They offered, since he could not find a Vein there, they would show him a place where he might; and leading him the way of Death rather than that of the Mines, killed him and all his Men, after they had defended themselves with incredible Bravery. This may convince those who affirm, numbers of *Cafres* would fly from a Gun, as not having before seen them, since here Two hundred Men fighting with them for their lives, were all slain by their Darts and Arrows.

6. This was the end of that Government, scarce begun sooner than ended, and possess'd by two Governors, who no sooner saw, but they lost it. The first killed by rash words, the second expelled by a prudent, not barbarous, Stratagem. However the Peace and Trade with the Emperor of *Monomotapa* continued. These Actions of *Francis Barreto* and *Vasco Fernandez Homem*, were in the time of the Government of *D. Luis de Ataide*, *D. Antony de Noronna*, and *Antony Moniz Barreto*; but we could never exactly find when the first died, and the last desisted.



## C H A P. XVIII.

*Of the Viceroy Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora, and the Government of D. James de Meneses, from the Year 1576 till 1578, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1576. 1. **I**N the beginning of this Year sailed from Lisbon Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora, to succeed Antony Moniz Barreto, with the Title of Viceroy of India, and four Ships: He died at Moçambique, and was the first that came short, being appointed for that Government. The Ships arriving at Goa, the Royal Patents of Succession were opened, and D. James de Meneses there present was the Person named in the first. So he was rather Successor to Antony Moniz, than Ruy Lorenzo. However, since he was designed for it, we will reckon Tavora the Twelfth of the Viceroy's, and Twenty-seventh of Governors, and First of the Name and Sirname.

2. D. James de Meneses having held this Command near two Years, there is no doubt but there happened more remarkable Passages than I heer relate, but I could find no more, having used all possible endeavours to get some farther Memoirs of his Time. Certain it is there are some, but our Portugues Gentlemen, though they make no use of, keep them as close as Misers do their

Trea-



Treasure. The little I could gather is thus :

3. As soon as D. *James* took upon him the Government, he fitted out several Squadrons for the usual purposes. At that time some Captains were upon the Northern Coast upon their own account, as D. *Hierome Mascarennas*, D. *James* and D. *Antony de Silveyra* Brothers, and *François Pessoa*. They anker'd in the River of *Dabul*, that City being then at Peace with us, and were received by the *Tanadar Melique Tocan* with feigned kindness. He proffered to furnish them with what they wanted, and invited them home to dine with him, having Men ready to murder them in the height of their Merriment. All things succeeded as he desired, for they put themselves into his Power unarmed, except *Mascarennas*, who forboding some Treachery stayed in the River. Those that accepted the invitation were killed, except a few who fled to the Shore, and the Murderers after them had like to have entred *Mascarennas* his Vessel, but that he and those few that were with him laying hold of Arms repulsed the bloody Assassins. *Mascarennas* carried the news of this Disaster to *Goa*.

5. Towards the end of this Year arrived the Ships that sailed from *Lisbon* the beginning of it; they were six in number, two set out first under *Matbias de Albuquerque*, appointed to Command at *Malaca*, and four after. 1577.

5. As soon as the Governor was informed by D. *Hierome de Mascarenhas* of the Villainy committed by the *Tanadar* of *Dabul*, he dispatched D. *Peter de Meneses* with a small Squadron to Revenge that wrong, ordering him to lay wait for the Ships of *Meca*, and do all the Mischief he could on the Coast subject to *Hidslan*. *Meneses* met two great Ships of *Meca*, and after a sharp dispute forced them a Shoar, where the Sea running high they beat to pieces. This was the posture of Affairs when in *August* arrived D. *Luis de Ataide* *Conde de Atougna*, to take upon him that Government the second time, which D. *James de Meneses* then quitted, having been the Twenty-eighth Governor, the Second of the Name, and Third of the *Sirnaue*.

---

## C H A P. XIX.

*The Count D. Luis de Ataide is the Second time Viceroy of India ; he set out in the Year 1577, and Governs till 1581, and is the last sent out by King Sebastian.*

1. **W**HEN King *Sebastian* had resolved (though he designed better) to bury the Glory of his Kingdom in the Sands of *Africk*, he appointed *D. Luis de Ataide* Count de *Atouguia*, General of his Forces : But soon after, not able to conform his Youthful Heat to the prudent Circumspection of the Count, that he might have a plausible Colour for removing him, he again constituted him Viceroy of *India*, pretending there was need of such a Man there ; as if he had not much more need of his Conduct himself.

2. The Count well understood the drift of this Change, but not willing to disgust the King, took no notice of it. He desired to have along with him *Nunno Vello Pereyra*, a Man more Expert than Fortunate in Military and Sea Affairs, as will appear hereafter, and *John Alvarez Suarez*, a Man versed in the Revenue, and who had given good Proof of his Courage, as was related in the Siege of *Chant*. *D. Luis* had a prosperous Voyage, and was received at *Goa* with great Joy.

3. His

3. His arrival at *Goa* was about the end of *August*: The first thing he did after receiving the *Sword*, was the spreading the News that King *Sebastian* would infallibly that Year go over into *Africk*, where he was already killed when this was given out. The Viceroy foreseeing that disaster, and the ill Consequences might arise from it, fitted out such a mighty Fleet, as struck a Terror into all the neighbouring Princes, who measure their own safety by our Power. The design of this Fleet he never revealed to any Man.

4. Amidst these greater Cares he forgot not the less, but sent Supplies to D. *Peter de Meneses* to enable him to act the more vigorously against *Melique* the Tanadar of *Dabul*. The Viceroy in Person carried on the War against *Hidalcan* along the River of *Goa*, whether his Dominions extended; and he no longer able to endure it, proposed a Peace, promising the Traytor *Melique* should be for ever banished *Dabul*, and all his Dominions. The Peace was concluded, and our Forces withdrew. At that time arrived at *Goa* three Ships from *Portugal*, and were the last sent sent by King *Sebastian*. When these came to *India*, two Caravels set out from *Lisbon* with the News of the King's Death, one bound for *Goa*, the other for *Malaca*.

5. *Henry* the Cardinal succeeded in the Throne, and from amidst those Ruines dispatched five Ships for *India*, fearing lest the loss of King *Sebastian* being known, new

Troubles

Troubles might arise, if those Dominions were not timely supplied.

5. The Viceroy understanding that *Melique Tocan*, contrary to the Articles of the Peace concluded the Year before, continued at *Dabul* publickly exercising his Office, and was ready to Launch a great Ship to Trade to *Meca*, he resolv'd to show how much he resent'd that wrong, and to that purpose sent thither *D. Paul de Lima Pereyra* with ten Sail.

7. *D. Paul* coming to the Mouth of the River found all the Shore fortified, and a great number of Cannon planted in all convenient Places: He forces his way in through all the Batteries, and sees Six thousand Horse, and great number of Foot covering the Shore, and pouring showers of Bullets and Arrows upon him; nevertheless he attempts to burn two Ships belonging to *Hidalean*, but finding it impossible to come at them for the number of the Enemy's Cannon, he runs up the River, and spent some days in burning all the Towns along the Coast.

8. The Enemy calls in to their Aid *Cartale* and *Mandaway*, two *Malabar* Pyrats who were in the Sea of *Chaul* with five Gallies: To these *Melique* joins other five Sail he had ready with Five hundred *Turks*, *Persians*, and other resolute Men. The Shore was cover'd with People that came to see this Action. *D. Paul* prepared to receive them, and after the Discharge of the Cannon they came up board and board, and hand to hand.

9. *D. Paul*

9. *D. Paul* boarded the first Galliot, they were ten to ten, though the Enemy had the advantage of the bigness of the Vessels and number of Men; but our Captains following the Example of their Admiral, behaved themselves so bravely, that only one of the Enemy's Galliotics escaped, the rest were all taken. We lost but two or three Men in this Action, which was as fortunate as any we perform'd in *Asia*.

10. Having taken this Revenge of *Melique* for his Crime, and of *Hidalcas* for winking at it, *D. Paul* sailed out of the River through the same Dangers he came in, losing one Man. Being come to *Goa* with Nineteen Sail, whereas he went thence with only Ten; the Viceroy came out to receive him, and in the hearing of all that were present, said, *What is it you mean, D. Paul, will you with such Acts of Bravery provoke my Envy to poison you?* Thus Heroes praise great Men, and at the same time upbraid those who enviously Rail at noble Actions.

11. The Emperor of *Ceylon* had some time since by his Ambassadors desired King *John III.* to send him some Religious Men of the Order of *St. Francis*, to instruct him in the Christian Religion: They being come to him he recanted. *F. John de Villa de Conde* was this Year at his Court, and had several times confuted the *Bramenes* disputing of Religion. Yet they refusing to yield themselves overcome, he offer'd with a lively Faith, that he and one of them should be cast into a River full of great Crocodiles, or  
into

into a great Fire, and that his Religion, who came out unhurt, should be allowed to be the true. They refused, and the *Franciscan* immediately reaped the Fruit of this Victory, baptising *D. John Parea Pandar* King of *Cota*, in the same Island.

12. The Kingdom of *Angola* is near *Momotapa*, whereof we lately spoke, and therefore will relate what happened there this Year, because it is a remarkable Passage. *Paul Diaz* undertook to War with that King, who had treacherously kill'd a number of our Men: This Captain with only two Galleys did Wonders on the Banks of the River *Coanza*, till he fortified himself in an Island formed by this and the River *Lucula*. Then joining the King of *Congo* and other Princes with only 150 *Portugueses* he several times defeated the Enemy. But the most remarkable is the Battle wherein that King had a Million of Men, which were put to flight in such Confusion they kill'd one another.

13. At the beginning of this Year, when the Ships sailed for *India*, our Kingdom, by the Death of the old Cardinal, King *Henry*, was under the Direction of five Governors, who dispatched them. They were four, whereof one was forc'd back to *Lisbon*, the last sent under a *Portugues* Government, and the last our Viceroy saw: For he having done no more than what is related, or if he did, having left no memory of it, died the beginning of the Year, having in some manner foretold it. For some time before leave being asked of him to bury his Cousin *Antony Botello*

Botello by his Brother D. John de Ataide, he refused it, saying, *He had long since designed that place for himself.*

14. At the end of his first Government something was said of his Qualities and Merit, and I have referred it to this place to speak of his undaunted Courage, as a virtue most peculiar to him. Some Proof of it has been given in the former Part of his Life, I will now give another Instance. At the attack (as I think) of *Onor* he sailed in a *Brigantine*, sitting on a Chair, and a famous Musician by him playing upon a Harp. The Enemy's Cannon from the Fort reached the Vessels, and grated the Musicians Ear; D. *Luis*, who was pleased to hear the Musick, seeing him give over, as if he had not seen the Cause, asked him, why he left off; the Musician told him; and he stretching out his hand, said, *I pray let nothing disturb thee, go on with that Tune, for it is a very good one.*

15. One of the Gentlemen that were standing behind him, seeing this was too great a Contempt of Danger, said, *Tell that Man, if he happens to be killed, all will be lost:* And another answer'd, *Do not tell him so; for if he be killed, here are Men enough fit to succeed him.*

16. D. *Luis* this second time govern'd the Term of two Years and seven Months, and may be reckoned in the number of Viceroy's the Thirteenth, in that of Governors the Twenty-ninth; the First of the Name and Surname.

## C H A P. XX.

*The Government of Ferdinand Tellez de Meneſes, who was named by the Governours of Portugal, upon the Deceafe of the Cardinal King Henry, in the Year 1581.*

1. **T**H E Ships diſpatched by the Governours of *Portugal* the laſt Year, carried new Patents of Succeſſion. In the firſt was named *Ferdinand Tellez de Meneſes*. The Biſhop of *Malaca*, *D. John Ribeyro Gayo*, was Preſident at this Ceremony, which was celebrated with ſuch Demonſtrations of Joy, as if there had been no Memory of their freſh Subjects of Tears.

2. Whiſt the Affairs of *Portugal* were in this miſerable Condition, thoſe in the Kingdom of *Viſapor* were no better, the Succeſſion being uncertain upon the deceaſe of *Hidalcan*, who died without Heirs in the 23d Year of his Reign, and 50th of his Age. He ſtudied leſs to have Wives to get Children, than young Men inſtead of Wives. A Youth of 18 Years of Age, who had more Honour than to conſent to ſuch Baſeneſs, killed him as he was endeavouring to allure him to his brutal Appetite. *Abraham*, Son of *Xatamas*, one of two Brothers not long before ſlain by him, ſucceeded in the Throne. *Quibalecan*, a powerful Man, conſpiring with

with others, enters *Visapor* with Forces, and seizes that Prince. Not long after the *Ethiopians* (who are the Guard of those Princes) did the same under three Heads, chose by themselves to this purpose, who were *Acalachan*, *Armichan*, and *Delarnachan*. This last secures the other two, and takes all the Power into his own hands. Our Governor kept a watchful Eye over all these Proceedings, knowing the Happiness of our Affairs, depended much upon the Event of those.

3. At this time were brought to *India* new Instructions from the Governors of *Portugal*, and *Philip* the Second then sworn King, and First of the Name there. The Governor was order'd to tender the Oath there. *Ferdinand Tellez* performed the Ceremony with great Solemnity in the Church of *Goa* on the third of *September*.

4. The Captains then commanding our Forts there were at *Goa*, *D. Tristan de Meneses*; at *Zofala* and *Moçambique*, *D. Peter de Castro*; at *Ormuz*, *D. Gonzalo de Meneses*; at *Damam*, *Martin Alfonso de Melo*; at *Baçaim*, *D. Emanuel de Almada*; at *Chaul*, *D. Ferdinand de Castro*; at *Cananor*, *George Toscano*; at *Cochim*, *D. George de Meneses Baroche*; at *Columbo*, *Emanuel de Sousa Continno*; at *Tidore*, *James de Azambuja*; and at *Malaca* *D. John de Gama*.

5. The Governor understanding that four Gallioths of *Malabar* Pyrats were harboured in some of the Rivers about *Goa*, immediately

ately sent *Matbias de Albuquerque* with ten small Merchant Ships that were the readiest at hand, after them. He found them in the River *Carapatan*; three of our Vessels that were foremost falling violently upon them, forced the *Malabars* to leap into the Water, and by that time *Albuquerque* came up, each of them had taken one.

6. There were at *Mazulapatan* two Ships of the bigness of ours that Trade to *India*; one belonging to the King of *Achem*, loaded with Ammunition, design'd, as was believed, against *Malaca*, the other to the King of *Pegu* richly loaden. The Governor sent *Gonçalo Vaz de Camoens* with four Ships to seize upon them: The first of the two had notice of it, and went off, and *Gonçalo Vaz* being informed of the great Force of the other, by the consent of his Men left that Design, and went over to the Coast of *Pegu*, where the *Malabar* Pyrats took one of his Ships Commanded by *Francois Serram*, and a Galliot of *Ferdinand de Lima*. They came to the Mouth of the River *Negraes*, just at such time as the Ship they feared to Encounter at *Mazulapatan* was entring. They could not in Honour avoid engaging her, though they were but two Galliot: A desperate Fight, which lasted almost two days, the Ship was sunk, our Men having first rifled her with such covetousness, that our Vessels had sunk, had not the Captain thrown many of the Goods overboard.

7. The Galliot's setting out again, were for some time carried about by the Weather, it being the beginning of Winter, till about the place where they sunk the Ship, they discover'd the Prince of *Fegu* with a Fleet of 1300 Sail, design'd for the Conquest of the Kingdom of *Arracam*. The Prince desired to meet with these Galliot's, having advice they were thereabouts, and that his Father would be as much pleas'd with taking of them, as the Conquest of that Kingdom. Sixteen of the best Sailers advancing, began to play their Cannon, and were as well answer'd, till they came to Board. After a sharp Engagement, three of the Enemy's Ships were disabled, some entred, many Prisoners and 18 Pieces of Cannon taken; then our Men seeing all that Multitude was coming upon them, making all the Sail they could and plying their Oars, got into the Port of *Arracam*. The King rejoicing for the share he had in this Success, and well pleas'd that *Gonçalo Vaz* made him a present of some of his Subjects taken in the great Ships, gave liberty to some *Portugueses* he had long kept in Prison.

8. About this time three Turkish Gallies set out of the Port at *Moca*, sent by the Bassa *Mirazenam* to plunder *Mascate*, having Intelligence from *Moors* living there; that the Town was Rich, and unprovided of Defence. *Alibec*, a *Turk*, used to Robbing, undertook this Design. *Mirazenam* was born at *Otranto* of Christian Parents, and was Governor

vernor of all that Part of *Arabia Felix* and *Pentrea*, which the Natives call *Ayaman*, he resided in the City *Cana*, the Center of *Arabia Felix*. 60 Leagues North of *Moca*, and as many from *Xael*. *Cana* is built upon a Hill, encompassed with a good Wall, and thought to be the Foundation of *Cham* the Son of *Noah*, and to have been the Court of the famous Queen of *Saba*. The Province is most fruitful, called by the Ancients, *Siria Mumifera*, because it produces Frankincense, Myrrh, and Storax.

9. *Alibec* being before *Mascate*, landed his Men, ordering those that remained in the Gallies to enter the Port, and as soon as they were in to play their Cannon furiously, that so the Inhabitants being imployed on that side, he might come in upon their Backs. It succeeded as he desired; for most Men saved themselves by flight, but few their Goods, and he in an instant entred and plundered the Town. *James Machado* going out to bury some Treasure, was killed, and himself and Money deprived of Burial.

10. Let us in some manner describe the Situation of this Town: Extend the right Hand with the Palm of it down, stretch out the Thumb from the fore-finger, and separate that from the middle Finger, keep that close to the other two. The space between the middle and fore-fingers, is a Bay called *Seabo*, running up as the hand represents. The distance between the Thumb and Fore-finger is another Bay, not so deep, along the Shore whereof the Town is built,

shut in by two Mountains; one rises at the point of *Seabo* next that part where the three Fingers are together, it has only one Path that leads to *Mascate* so narrow, that two Men cannot pass it a-breast. This way *Alibec* come into the Town, no Body imagining he would attempt it, for four Men with one Cannon might maintain it against the Universe.

11. Let us not deny any Man the Honour that is due to him: They that fled from *Mascate* to *Mataro*, a Town a League distant, not thinking themselves safe there went to *Bru-xel*, a Fort four Leagues up the Inland, belonging to *Catani*, Head of a Hord of *Arabs*. This place at that time was commanded by an Officer of his, a Man so Just and Honourable, that hearing the Misfortune of those People who came to him for Refuge, (for in great Dangers the lesser is a Refuge) he went out to receive, comfort, and entertain them. This was much, but what follows is more; His Men seeing the *Portugueses* come loaded with Riches, advised him to make use of that Opportunity, and not show too much Weakness or Pity. And he fearing, lest Covetousness should make them Disobedient, laboured with soft Expressions and sweet Words, to dissuade them from their wicked Design.

12. They all submitted themselves to their Officer's Reasons, and, with kind Usage, much comforted the Disconsolate *Portugueses*, who continued there till *Alibec* being gone, they returned to *Mascate*, always

ways relating and admiring how honourably that Moor treated them, without suffering the least wrong to be offered to their Persons or Goods.

13. The News of the Ruine of *Mascate* being brought to *Ormuz*, The Commander, *D. Gonçalo de Meneses* caused the Gallies to be closely watched, and Ships to be fitted out immediately to follow them. He made *Luis de Almeyda* Commander in chief, giving him a Galleon, a Galley, and six other Vessels, with Four hundred good Men. But he not observing the Orders of *Meneses* that were to follow the Gallies, fell into the Coast of the *Naytaques*, where they intended to surprize the beautiful and rich City *Pesavi*. But *Francis Machado* having given the Alarm, by falling upon some People that were passing in two Boats, the Inhabitants all fled.

14. They plundered the City without Honour or Danger, and after burnt it and near Fifty Sail that were in the Bay. The very same Fate attended the City *Guedel*, not inferior to *Pesavi*, and that of *Teis* of the *Abindos*, a barbarous and fierce Nation, the last of *Gedrosia*, on the Banks of the River *Calameu*, the People of it join with the *Naytaques* in their Piracies.

15. All these Things were begun, though not absolutely transacted, when *D. Francis de Mascarennas* arrived in *India* with the Title of Viceroy, being the first sent by our first King *Philip*, who was second of

*Spain.* Ferdinand Tellez left the Government in a peaceable Condition, and the Sea of Goa well furnished with good Ships. He was the last Governor appointed by the Portugues Authority, in Number the Thirtieth, held it Six Months, the First of the Name, and Fourth of the Surname.

*The End of the Third Part.*

---

---

THE  
PORTUGUES  
ASIA.

---

TOM. II. PART IV.

---

CHAP. I.

*Of the Gods, Superstitions and Opinions of the Asiatics, particularly the Indians, and among them the Malabars.*

I. **I** Have purposely omitted giving so particular an Account and Description of the People and Countries mentioned in this History, as will be expected from me, to avoid interrupting the series of Affairs, and connexion of Matter, reserving it still for a more proper place. The grand Revolution of the Kingdom of Portugal now brought under a foreign Prince, puts a Period to the Proceedings of our own, that we may begin again with what

was transacted under our new Sovereigns. Here then it will not be amiss to give the Curious the Satisfaction of some further Information touching the *Indians*, *Ethiopiens*, *Chineses* and *Japans*, but still with my usual brevity, dividing among them this Fourth Part of this Second Volume. As *Asia* is divided into several Empires, so it is inhabited by many very different sorts of People, and each People distinguished by very opposite Customs. Yet those that are of one Belief, agree in the essential Part, though they differ in Form. It is so in *India*, as well as any other considerable Portion of the World, and therefore the *Malabars*, one of the Nations thereof, may inform us of the Religion and Government of all the rest.

2. As to the Frame of the World, they believe it had a beginning, and will have an end; but then begin again, and in that manner will be everlasting; that all things after having encreased, diminish; that in the beginning as One thousand and Animals were produced One thousand died, but now for One thousand produced One thousand and one die; that the reason why more die is, because the heat of the Sun increases; that in the end, a violent Wind shall dissolve all things; that nothing shall then remain but the Deity *Ixoreta*, as in the first *Chaos*; that he shall be reduced to the bigness of an Egg, and this to the quantity of a Dew drop, scarce discernable; that after it has sounded like a Cricket, it shall increase by the same measure it diminished, and shall produce within

it self the five Elements, ( for they reckon the Heaven the fifth ) that their increasing shall burst the Egg in the middle; that there shall appear in it seven shels put together like an Onion; that the Egg being divided into two unequal parts, the biggert will be the Heavens, and the lesser the Earth; that the Gods were and shall be so formed again.

The Egg being open, the Deity will be placed in the upper part, on the Earth will appear a Mountain of Silver, on the top whereof will be seen the instruments of Generation ( which they call the true *Ixoreta* or Deity, the true God and *Causa Causarum*) because all things in the World proceed from the Union of the instruments of Generation; therefore they particularly adore the noblest, that it is the Male, and place its Image in their Pagods, and on their ways. This they feign to have three Rines, from which proceed the three Gods, *Bramá*, *Vishnu*, and *Givem*, or *Ixora*.

4. Of the superior and inferior productions, this is their Opinion. *Ixora* with this instrument of Generation, which was of a prodigious bigness, plowed up the Earth for the space of Seven hundred thousand loxenas, each of these when greatest, is four Leagues, and when least a League and a halfe; from the Furrows sprung seven Seas and seven Lands, the ridges were the Mountains, the furrows, the Vales and Waters. Then from *Ixoras* back came the Woman called *Chati*, ( this has some resemblance with *Eve's* being made of *Adams* Rib,) and was

was separated from it by virtue of some words, and they resolved to have copulation. The length of the Generating Instrument ( called *Linga* ) wherewith *Ixora* had plowed the Ground hindred ; he cut it into eighteen pieces, whereof were made the Weapons they use, as the Spear, Sword, Bow, and Buckler. Then *Ixora* with his Finger opened the way of Generation in *Chati*, which shed much Blood ; he received it in his Hands, and throwing it up into the Air, suddenly of it were produced, the Sun, Moon, Stars, Roses, Flowers, Sweet-herbs, and Snakes, which they use in their Ceremonies, both being then fit for Copulation, by them the World was Peopled, the Beasts and Devils produced, and Heaven filled with Spirits, which they say are Thirty three Millions.

5. The Heaven is fixt upon the Earth, not the Earth, the Center of it. The Sun and Moon move like the Fish in the Water, by Day from East to West, by Night they run about the Northward, not under the Earth, but along the edge of the Horrizon ; they doubt whether the Earth be supported upon a Bulls-horns, or upon the Snake called *Ananta* ; their Paradize is in some Mountain. The Snake *Bassagui* fighting with the Wind, would not let it pass, but *Ixora* commanding her to give it way, the Wind flying the more impetuous for having been detained, tore up a Mountain, which falling into the Sea, formed the Island *Ceylon*. Other Islands are encompassed with Seas they call of Sugar, Milk, Butter, and Sweet-Water. Happy the Sailers

Sailers that could find such pleasant Seas.

6. The Bases or Grounds of the Elements are of several matters, that of the Earth of Copper; that of the Water of Silver; that of the Fire of Gold; that of the Air of a Pretious Stone; that of Heaven of another Stone of more value: They are Gods and move, on the first waits the Bird *Ansm*; on the second *Guereram*, on the third a Cart; on the fourth an Ox; on the fifth a Horse.

7. There are seven large Subterranean dwellings, called *Padalas*, where live People who have no other light but that of certain bright Stones, which Snakes have in their Foreheads. One Day of ours is a Year in Heaven, and one of our Years, Three hundred and sixty five there. The Days of the Week (as among us) take their names from the Planets, and one of them is a Festival. They believe the transmigration of Souls.

8. The God *Givem*, or *Ixora*, is of the colour of Milk; besides the usual two, he has one Eye in the Forehead, which being of Fire, consumes all things; his Body of such a length, that *Brama*, though he endeavoured it, could never find the beginning or end of it. The other Brother *Vistnu*, who is God of the Transmutations, converted himself into a Hog, and turned up the Earth with his snout, but could never find his Feet. He is so thick that the Snake that girts the World, cannot encompass one of his Arms, he has Sixteen Hands, all employed with Deer, Chairs, a Guitar, a Bell, a Bason, a Trident, a Rope, a Hook, an Ax, Fire, a  
Drum,

Drum, Beads, a Staff, a Wheel, a Snake; on his Forehead, a horned Moon; his Apparel skins of Beasts, laid down with Snakes; he has two Wives, the Goddesses of the Water, and *Chati*, who has already dyed One and twenty times; and because every time she dies, he puts one of her Bones upon his Neck, he now wears One and twenty Bones there. Having shared his Body with his Wife, and she hers with him, he is halfe Man halfe Woman; his care is to finish all things, *Brama* to Create, and *Vishnu's* to govern them.

9. The God *Ixora* lives in *Calaya*, a most delicious Mountain for Woods, Gardens, Fountains, Birds and Nymphs, among them there is nothing but Harmony. The desert parts of it are inhabited by *Rixis*, *Hermits*, much esteemed for sanctity, in a private and most precious Tabernacle, is the Silver Rose with two Musical white Nymphs, and among them the *Linga*, or Eternal God, placed on a Lion of inestimable value, and invisible.

10. *Brama* and *Vishnu* envying *Ixora's* greatness, set themselves against him; he said if they could find his beginning or end, they should be his Superiors. *Vishnu* looked for his Feet and *Brama* and for his Head; the first was deterred by a Snake, the second disswaded by Roses; he brib'd them to testifie he had seen his Head, which they did. *Vishnu* sensible of the fraud, turn'd them into Beasts, and cut off one of his Heads, of his Blood sprang a Man with Five hundred Heads, and One thousand Hands. *Ixora* did penance for this crime, and travelling, came  
to

to a place where they threw several Beasts at him, he caught, flead them, and cloath-ed himself with their Skins; being over-powered, *Vistnu* came to his Aid in the shape of a beautiful Maid, and his Enemies were astonished at her form: *Ixora* having to do with her, a Son was born, *Ixora* and *Vistnu* differed about whom it should belong too, and a Heavenly Spirit reconciled them, taking it to himself. He bred him an expert Archer, and kept him as his guard against *Sagatravaxem*, the Giant of Five hundred Heads, and One thousand Hands, sprung from *Bramus* Head, cut off by *Ixora*. This pilgrimage of *Ixora* gave the Original to the Pilgrims, called *Jogues*, who wander about living upon Charity, wearing Peri-wigs, and strewed with Ashes.

11. *Ixora* has four Children, the first has the Face of an Elephant; the second of a Monkey; the third is *Superbenia*, with six Faces and twelve Arms; the fourth a young Woman called *Patracali*. The Father and his Wife *Chati* converted into Elephants, begot a Son with an Elephant's Head and four Arms, he is wonderful big, and rides on a Mouse. The first fruits of all that is sowed are offered to him.

12. The *Bramenes* who are the Masters of their Ceremonies, abstain from Fish, Flesh, Eggs, and Wine, of other things they Eat and Drink without measure, they celebrate the Aniversaries of their Dead with great Banquets; they are so much afraid of the Moon on the fourth Day after the full, that they

they shan seeing even the reflection of her in the Water.

13. *Chatz* washing her self in the time of her courses, produced a Man. Her Husband cut of his Head, which rowling to the foot of his Mountain *Calaya*, brought forth the Tree on which grow the *Coco's*, which therefore have the resemblance of Eyes, Nose and Mouth. But the Wife complaining *Ixora* cut of an Elephants Head and put it to the Body, which remained Man and Elephant. Then both converting themselves into Monkeys, begot one, but she ashamed to bring it forth, desired the Wind to translate it to another Womb, and it was removed to that of the Wife of the Heavenly Spirits. She was delivered of, and *Ixora* gave him great power, calling him *Anuman*. This is the Reason the *Indians* adore Monkeys.

14. *Patracali Ixora's* Daughter is black, she has eight Faces, and sixteen Arms, great round Eyes, Hogs Teeth, two Elephants for pendants, she is cloathed with Snakes, her Hair like the Peacocks Tails, has several things in her hands, particularly Arms, the Devil *Medala* waits on her; she seeing her Father could not overcome the Giant *Daridubaxada*, Conquered him by Policy. *Ixora* to deliver her from Enemies, sent her to live invisible among Men. At Sea she overcame some Fishermen, and landed at *Coulam*, and married the Prince of *Coxlete*, who being falsly accused of stealing the Queen of *Pande's* Bracelets, was impaled.

*Patracali*

*Patracali* brought him to Life, caused Sacrifice to be offered to him, and thus freed from the bands of wedlock, remained a Virgin.

15. *Ixora* in a passion threw his Wig on the ground, which became an Armed fierce Man, who cut off the Head of *Lecxaprazava* King of the *Peringales*, and the Hand of the God of Fire, and the Sun's Teeth. *Ixora* put on a Goats-head upon *Lecxaprazava's* Shoulders instead of his own.

## C H A P. II.

*The Metamorphoses or, Transformations.*

1. **T**H E God *Vishnu* is black, he has four Hands, and always lies sleeping on his back in the Sea of Milk; yet so he governs the whole World; his Bed is the Snake *Ananta*, which has five Heads; on four he lays his Hands, on the other his Head; the Snake asked him, in case she had more Heads, what he would lay on them. Then One thousand Heads sprung out from her, and as many Hands from him to lay on them. He has two Wives, *Loxemi* and *Pumedevi*, the first scratches his Head, the other his Feet.

2. *Vishnu* was born or transformed nine times, into a Fish, a Tortoise, a Hog, half-

a Man, half a Lion, a *Bramen*, *Siriparexi Rama*, *Siri Rama*, *Belapader*, and *Siri Cbriffna*, and is to be born the Tenth time. In the first shape he overcame *Breniacxem* in the bottom of the Sea, taking from him the Law he had stole from the heavenly Spirits. In the second he reconciled the Difference between the celestial and infernal Spirits, about parting the Ambrosia from Poison, and giving this to the latter, and that to the former. With Ambrosia he cured King *Devaindra*, who being Cursed by *Rixi* for lying with his Wife, was cover'd all over with Privy-Members, which were converted into Eyes.

3. The Sea is salt, because the great *Raxi Agassia* having drunk it all up, at the request of *Vijtnu* pissed it out. That there might be no Thieves in the World, he appointed Guards; these were *Indra*, King of the higher Spirits; *Vani*, God of Fire; *Pidarpati*, King of the Devils; *Varuna*, God of the Water; *Maril*, God of the Wind; *Cabera*, God of Riches, and other Persons of Note. The *Malabari*, in their Poems, make a Jest of this, because they are all Theives.

4. *Maveli*, Lord of the World, kept Mankind in such plenty, that none remembered God. *Vijtnu* in one of his Changes remedied this, and then from the Water which washed one of his Feet came the River *Ganga*, which therefore is the Purgatory of such as when they die are washed therein. *Venus* endeavouring to hinder the Reformation of Mankind, lost an Eye. 5. The

5. The *Bramenes* are the Masters of the *Indian* Religion, and proceed from Fishermen; because the *Malabar* Churches were delivered to Fishermen, upon condition they should always wear some mark of their Trade. This is the cause they wear about their Necks some threads of their Nets. This is the Original of those Threads they wear, never before mentioned by another Writer.

6. *Vishnu* turned himself into *Siri Rama*, and his Snake *Ananta*, *Chocra* and *Buzio* into Men. *Siri Rama* killed *Tarbeta* Wife to *Rajada*, that was a Man-eater, and had the Face of a Lioness, and wore two Elephants as Pendants, her Cloathing Snakes, her Weapon a Trident; she lived in a Mountain of Bones of the People she had eaten. *Siri* married the Daughter of King *Genega*, and went to do Penance for killing *Tarbeta*. His Wife went with him, and he obtained of *Rixi Anisoya*, that he should be always Victorious, and his Wife appear Beautiful to him. They went to *Ceylon*, where *Churpanaga* Sister to *Ravena* King of that Island being a Widow, asked *Siri Rama* to get her a Husband, he bid her chuse among the Heavenly Gods, and she liked none of them, but *Lacxena* Brother to *Siri Rama*, who despised and cut off one of her Breasts, of the Blood whereof sprung the Leeches.

7. Her Brother *Ravena* for Revenge stole *Siri Rama's* Wife *Sida*. The manner of looking for, finding, and recovering her is so tedious, preposterous, and foolish, as

well as the foregoing part, it is not worth the strictest Curiosity to read it. What follows is little better, but something of this monstrous Medley is fit to be related, to show the prodigious stupidity of these Opinions.

8. *Siri Rama* having found his Wife, and seeing she was very Beautiful said she had wronged him, and lain with his Enemy. He threatned to kill her, and she offered to Purge her self by Fire; and kindled one so fierce, the heavenly Spirits could not endure it, she stripped her self naked, and walked seven times round it, then turning to the East, said, *When Ravena stole and would have taken me by the hand, I doubt whether his Shadow touched me. Afterwards in the Island Ceylon seting me under the Tree Axogani, he fell at my feet to overcome me, and I doubt whether the Crown he had on his head touched them. There was nothing more that I know of between me and him.* Then she threw her self into the Fire, and could not be seen for some time; then the God of Fire came out, and bidding *Siri Rama* hold out his Hands, dropt *Sida* upon them, assuring him her Honour was unstained.

9. This done, *Siri Rama* placed *Bixivem* on the Throne of *Ceylon*, and went himself to possess that of *Aioddia*, after he had spent Fourteen Years in these Affairs. The Princes, People, Celestial Spirits, and Dancing Women received him. The Queens prevailed with *Sida* to show them the Figure of *Ravena*, she drew him with Chalk on a Board,

Board, which shook as *Siri Rama* sat on it; not knowing his Enemy's Picture was thereon. The Queens told him, *Sida* had painted him, and he again jealous, though she was with Child, ordered *Leexena* to carry her to a Mountain, and there kill her. He carried, but left her there alive. She was delivered of two Sons very like *Siri Rama*; who seeing them, and knowing she was not dead was satisfied. He went to fetch her, but could not; for *Pumi* Goddess of the Earth opened it and swallowed her up. His Sons succeeded him in the Crown of *Ajodda*.

---

### CHAP. III.

*Other Metamorphoses, and the Consequences of them, of the God Brama, and the Foundation of Pagods; an Account of the famousst of them.*

1. **V***istnu* turned himself into his younger Brother *Siri Christna*, who was born very beautiful. At the hour of his Birth the Palace was filled with Brightness, though it was Mid-night; the Doors flew open, and the Fetters fell off that held *Bassudever*. He arose and took the Child to carry it to *Amparbi*, and by the way the Waters of two Rivers divided themselves, that he might pass dry. *Gannusem* consulting Diviners a-

bout the Birth of this Child, which was the first Quarter of the Moon, on a Thursday in *August*, the Sun being in *Leo*, and the Moon in *Taurus*, in the time of *Minabixam*, they answer'd, *Siri Christna* would govern the whole World, and would kill him in the Sixteenth Year of his Age. They advised him to send a Woman that had venomous Milk, that sucking her might be his Death; but the Child, instead of her Milk, sucked out her Soul, and she died to the astonishment of his Mother *Axoda*, who was present. Thus he escaped other Dangers from his Enemies, and at Seven Years of Age, was skilled in all Sciences, and among other Extravagancies deflowered the Maids he played with.

2. His Mother whipped, and causing him to open his Mouth to discover whether he smelt of some Butter 'twas said he had eaten, she saw within Heaven and Earth and her self. She frighted, bid him shut his Mouth, but he would not till she promised him Figs or Sugar, and other things, and that she would carry him to the River to make Pipes to play upon. He, to be revenged on the Women, watched a Bath where they came, and enjoyed them all.

3. He went afterwards to fight the Snake *Caliga* that was Nine Leagues long, had Eyes like two Suns, and lived in a Lake made of the Venom she cast out of her mouth. The Snake finding she could not overcome him, perceived he was the God *Vistnu*, and begged his pardon. *Camused*  
caused

caused a Woman turned into a Snake to swallow him, and he swelled till he burst her. In fine, *Camused* was killed, and *Siri Christna's* Parents placed on the Throne of the Kingdom of *Madure*. This done, *Vistnu* turned into *Siri Christna*, married 16103 Women, and lying with them all in one day got as many Sons. This is counted the greatest Action of this God.

4. *Betele* is a Plant, the Leaves whereof powder'd with Lime and *Areca* the *Indians* chew and suck to preserve the Teeth, strengthen the Stomack, and provoke Lust. It is so like our Ivy, that an Ambassador of *Hidalcas* in *Lisbon* made use of it instead of *Betele*, mixing it instead of *Areca* with *Cypress Apples*, and said the Virtue was the same. *Argionem* being upon a Tree *Degastri*, one of the Wives of the Celestial Spirits came and carried him up in her Chariot, where he found this Plant, and stole a Stock of it which he planted on Earth. This is the reason the *Indians* believe this Plant came from Heaven, and that it cannot thrive unless he that Plants steal it.

5. The time of *Siri Christna's* Death drawing on, he gave signs to know it by, which was, that when he expired the World should be inverted from what it ought to be, and is the time of *Culi*, which now is. Their Writings say, all will come to Confusion, But *Vistnu* coming to the World again, shall kill all for their Wickedness, except two Kings, who till then shall be doing Penance

for the love of *Vistnu*. These are *Mara* of the Sun's Charge, and *Divappi* of the Moon's.

6. *Darmaputrem*, one of the hundred Brothers, descended into Hell, where he saw one encompassed with great Treasures, and perishing with hunger: He asked the reason, and the other answer'd, That it was because he had not given Alms while he lived in the World, but that once he shewed a poor Man the House where the Rice was kept that was given for Charity, pointing at it with his Finger. Then *Darmaputrem* bid him put that Finger with which he had pointed into his Mouth, which he doing thought he tasted all the Dainties in the World. *Darmaputrem* and others returning into the World gave great Alms, whereby after Death they purchased Paradise. This proves the *Malabars* believed Heaven and Hell, and a Reward and Punishment for good and bad Works.

7. *Brama* is the antientest God of the three; he resides in the Rose that springs from *Vistnu's* Navel, though he lies in the milky Sea. He descends through the hollow stalk of the Rose to *Vistnu's* Belly, where are the Ideas of all things, and where he produces these by looking on those. He has four Heads, which are the Original of four Laws; and because *Ixora* cut off the fifth Head for the Lye he told, he lost the fifth Law, which is that of God, and therefore the *Bramenes* want it. He dies and comes to Life very often; an artificial Day of his contains 320000 Years of the Celestial Spirits. He

has two Wives, but never had Children by them.

8. Among the *Malabars* are four sorts of Nobility, *Bramene*, *Exastri*, *Baestri*, *Chadra*. The first they say proceed from *Brama's* Face; the second (being Kings called *Coilas*) from his Arms; the third from his Thighs, which Race they say is extinct; the fourth from the Feet, called *Nayres*. The *Bramenes* have the name, because descended from the Face, and are much honoured by the Kings who are not *Bramenes*, and may sit down before them.

9. Though they attribute the Production of all things to *Brama*, he acts only in the most perfect, giving others the lesser power. Sometimes he grants so great Power to others, that he is in great danger of them, and forced to fly. *Vistnu* converted into a Nymph, delivered *Brama* from one of those Dangers. *Ixora* seeing that beautiful Form of his got him with Child. He was delivered of two Children, the one at the Mouth, the other at the Thigh. One was called *Chartava*; the other *Ayapem*, who lost his Birthright by drinking too much Wine, and it being put to his choice, whether he would be the Lowest among Angels, or Chief among Devils, he chose the latter, and was constituted such. *Ixora* gave him Privilege to converse with Men and be serviceable to them, and he came in the Shape of a *Nayre* to the Court of the King of *Pande*. He lived in *Malabar* and turning Physitian, in which he was successful, had Temples dedicated to him.

His chief offering is Whelps, because he is a Hunter. So ancient a Custom it is for Doctors and Whelps to go together. They say in this Age of *Brama* all Men have Monkey Faces, and in the next they will be Horse Faces. The contrary is seen among us ; for outwardly we appear Men, and inwardly are Brutes.

---

#### C H A P. IV.

*A Continuation of the same Matter.*

1. **B**Efore they build a Pagod they sow the Ground with Kidney-beans, when they are green they turn in a greyish Cow to feed on them, and where she Dungs, they believe is the place for the Pagod, placing on the very spot a Pillar, and on the top of it the Idol, to whom it is dedicated : Then they build the Walls, which are never of great extent, but rich, as being black Marble well carved, covered with Copper-plates, with Globes of Gold, or gilt. The inside is set thick with monstrous Images with many Heads and Arms, and girt with Serpents. Then they build a square Wall about it, on each side of it is an entrance with a sumptuous Portal, with Histories of their Gods carved about them. They are covered in the same nature as the Temples Underneath are Heads of Elephants, Bears, Lions, Tigers,

Tigers, and other wild Beasts with terrible Eyes and Teeth. It is thought these things are to terrifie those that resort thither, and move them to give Alms; though their Poet *Palcanar* laughs at it. Those who go to visit the Idol enter the inclosure, but not the Temple. The Inhabitants of *Pande*, Subjects of *Bisnagar*, are singular in these Works.

2. The most famous Pagods are, that of *Rettora* built by *Cberam Perimal* living at *Cranganor*, who placed in it the Statue of a Man ten Cubits in length, lying on a Snake with five Heads in the Sea of Milk. The Temple was covered with Plates of massy Gold, but because they were subject to be stole he put them into the Treasure of the Pagod, and instead of them placed others of Copper. The Idol is still covered with pure bright Gold that shines like Fire; his Crown is of an inestimable value, and has many precious Stones, in the Forehead three Rubies that exceed all price, on his Feet Buskins valued 200000 Ducats.

3. In the Treasure, besides the covering Plates there laid up, there are nine Boats of Gold set with rich Stones, each big enough to contain three Men; the same number of Kettles of the same Matter, each deep enough to hide the *Bramene* with the Idol upon his Head, many Pots, Peacocks and Cocks of Gold and Silver, and an infinite quantity of Coin. These are useles Vessels, those that are of use and the same Metal are kept more at hand. At the entrance of the Pagod hangs a Gold Candlestick so big, no Man can

lift it from the ground, and with the continual smoak looks like Ebony. Several Idols and Candlesticks that stand before the principal Idol are of the same Metal. In fine, the Treasure is unmeasurable, if we may believe a Bramene who turned Christian, and had many good Qualities that show he merited Credit.

4. The Revenues of this Pagod are incredible, and very many live on them. The enclosure is of Marble six Yards high, and above one in thickness; it is about half a League from the Shore, a beautiful Way leading to it. At each of the wonderful Gates can enter at once four Elephants with all their Furniture. It is guarded by 1000 armed Men: The Coast is dangerous, which secures many great Men who keep their Treasures there.

5. The Pagod called *Comori*, from which that famous Point of Land takes name, is also remarkable. *Comori* Pagod, signifies, The Church of the Virgin. It is like the other in Structure, but not in Riches, because they trust them not there, since our Fleets Sail upon those Coasts. The Pagod is dedicated to a Virgin Daughter to a Shepherdess, that was changed for a Son of *Davagni* Sister to the Giant *Maveli*, who killed all her Children, because he was told one of them would be his Death. He thought to kill this Virgin, and she giving him a kick flew through the Air into the Desert to the place where the Pagod now stands on the Shore, having been formerly 60 Leagues from the Sea. She after  
flew

flew a great Giant by the help of the God *Vistnu*, and set his Head on a Rock that now appears in the Sea, and is above 400 Fathom round. In the very place where the Virgin fate after this Victory, was erected the Pagod.

6. The Pagod of *Trivate* is more ancient than that of *Rettora*, but poor, having been plundered by the Nayque of *Madure*. It is not much frequented. This Temple was instituted in memory of the Giant *Naragecoguer-poli*, who by destroying the World provoked the God *Vistnu*; and still came to Life again, though overcome and killed by him. *Vistnu*, to end the dispute, laid him on the ground and fate down upon him. This is what is represented in the Pagod.

7. That of upper *Cranganor* has an Idol on whose Head one of the Bramenes gives several strokes of a hammer every day. For they think if this were not done, he would by this time touch the Stars with his head. In the Frontispiece are several Images in the *Portugues* Habit, whence is concluded either that Work was finished after their arrival, or such a Habit was formerly used there.

8. That of *Canari* in the Island *Salfete*, is bigger than all the others, and exceeds them in sumptuousness of building. It seems to have taken the name from some Builder of that Country, or from *Canara* King of *Bisnagar*, the grandure of the Work requiring so great a Founder. It is dug out of a Mountain that looks like one solid Stone, and is black Marble. The Body is very high, the  
Isles

Isles low, but altogether of a vast bigness, somewhat dark, as dug out of the middle of a Mountain. Among at least 3000 Habitations that are cut out about it with each a Cistern by the Door, there are some large Rooms, and one of an extraordinary bigness, in which 'tis said are read Lectures of all Sciences. We have already spoke in the Second Chapter of the Second Part of this Tome, of the Way cut under this Mountain said to run as far as *Cambaya*, of the *Franciscan* that attempted to discover that Secret, and the Princes that are believed to have made it.

9. The Pagod of *Maliassa* is in the same Island. At the foot of a Mountain is a Portal of a moderate bigness: The two Pillars that support it are in the Shape of Giants well carved. There are other Figures like those of Angels among Christians. This leads into a large Porch, and on the left hand is the Gate of the Pagod through which the Water runs: Then follows a great Apartment, after that other little ones, and then a strait way, all dug out of the solid Mountain.

10. The Pagod called of the Elephant, because the Figure of one stands upon a Rock at the entrance of it, is in one of the many Islands of the River *Bombaim* between *Bacaim* and *Chaul*. It is like the others, in that it is cut out of a Mountain, but exceeds them much in curious work. The first entrance is into a spacious Room supported by vast Pillars in the form of Giants curiously carved.

It has three isles : The Pillars are all composed of Figures of the same height as the Temple : On one of them is the Giant *Briareus* with his hundred Hands ; on another the God they call *Mahamurte*, who has three Faces to one Body, on his Head a Pontifical Mitre, though of Marble, wrought to admiration. In a Chapel is the Angel turning our first Parents out of Paradise. *Pasiphae* and the Bull are there also : On one of the Walls is a sort of Altar, and over it are carved many wild Beasts, the most remarkable one with seven Heads. Some Soldiers attempted to enter an Apartment that is very dark, and being fearful took Lights, but were drove out by a multitude of Bats that were frightened at the Light. There are Galleries with rich carved Work of Men and Women, most of them in very immodest Actions and Postures. This (they say) was the Chaire of their Ceremonies. There are other Buildings to be admired for their Greatness and Structure, and two remarkable Sepulchres.

11. To conclude, the Pagod dedicated to the Monkey is so great, that only the Cloister in which they shut up the Cattle designed for Sacrifices, has 700 Columes of Marble nothing inferior to those of the Roman *Pantheon*.

## C H A P. V.

*Of the Officers, Rites, Ceremonies, Burials,  
and other things.*

1. **E**very *Pagod* has a Cook who dresses the Rice that is offer'd for himself, for the Idol, and for those who offer. The last divide their share with their Neighbors, who esteem it as a Holy thing. A great Poet of theirs laughs at them for offering more Food to the statue, seeing it has not Eaten the last, and they answer, though he does not Eat, he smells it.

2. The Kings and Nobles every Day use a ceremony ( called *Tevaram*, that is Divine Ceremony, ) which is with many Prayers to offer Rice, Coco, and Butter, all burnt in honour of their golden Idols, of which they have a number answerable to their Estate ; so that some have above 1000 ; this sacrifice is to obtain Riches for themselves, revenge and destruction of their Enemies: Many have in their Houses familiar Devils, which they call *Cutchates*, every Day they offer something to them, they get by them ; and some have 300 of them. They make them enter into the bodies of those they would be revenged of, whereof they make great advantage, for many pay to be delivered from them. By the help of them converted into the shapes of Beasts, they hurt People and infest whole Towns : There are those living, who have seen the  
Town

Town of *Cranganor* burnt by this means. At *Pudiangale* near *Calicut*, a Woman had one of these, and saw it in the shape of a Cock, a Monkey, and a little black Boy with a Truncheon in his Hand: these are not punished in *Malabar*, but their Kings make use of them in danger: The very Heathens observe that all those who follow that course live and die miserably.

3. In sickness they consult Wizards, not Doctors; they say a Devil causes the Disease, and bringing him into the Sick Man, make him tell the Reason of molesting him; then they promise him something to go out again, and he does it. They think the Small-pox is Cured with an offering to *Patracale*, who they affirm causes them. The Gout they believe is caused by five the Devils like Sows, to them they offer food fit for such Beasts, that they may transfer the Disease to their Enemies.

4. They adore and offer Sacrifice to venomous Snakes, that they may not hurt with their Poyson. The Lawyers on the first Day of *September* do the same to their Books.

5. Their Baths are used rather to cleanse the Soul than the Body; they know the ten Commandments, but think not themselves bound by them. It is a great Sin if a Nobleman is touched by one that is not such, though he be never so great by learning, by the Sword, or by Virtue: And even Riches there cannot prevail to gain this point. The King of *Travancor* being resolved to become a *Bramene*, though not of that descent, was told,

told, he must first be bore of a Cow; he made one of Gold so big, that going into it, he was born out of it; he offered it to the *Bramenes* with a great Sum of Gold, and obtained the dignity, but not Hereditary.

6. They purge themselves from venial Sins, by putting their Heads under Water, one of these is a Nobleman touching a *Plebean*, and to prevent it, the latter cries as he goes, *Po, po, po*, that is, have a care; another is, touching the Dead or their Friends within fifteen Days; another, to touch Meat with the right Hand when they Eat; another, to touch them so touched, or their Houses or Wells; to touch another with the right Hand whilst Eating; to touch a grain of Rice fallen as it is taken up; to touch a drop of Water disturbed by one not so noble Mortal Sins are not forgiven, so he who commits them, remains subject to Death, and the Lord of the Earth as long as he lives. The mortal are these, To use Pots touched by Men defiled; to Eat Rice before Purification, to Eat it boyled by a Man of base race; to have to do with a Woman of that sort; to Eat Rice into which is fallen the least grain out of another Man's plate.

7. Their bathing is thus, They believe the stone of the bath is the God *Brama*; the lips of it *Vistnu*, and all together *Ixora*. When they go in, their nakedness is covered with a rag or leaf; in the Water they write *Om* with one Finger, and throw Water over it with three, believing the three Gods bathed there. Then dividing the Water,

ter, dip their Heads, and after cast up some towards eight parts of the World, offering Water to the eight Guardians thereof. They call upon *Siri Pagod*, and wash their Faces three times; they also cast Water up towards Heaven, offering it to the Sun, then wash their Hands and Feet: On the Palm of their left Hand they put Ashes of Cowsdung and sprinkle it, and believe the left Hand is the Earth, the right Heaven, and and the Palm the place of Generation; laying one Hand upon the other and shutting them close, they say, *Let the end of the World come.*

8. This they do in imitation of *Ixorai's* Egg, and think the upper Hand when opened, represents Heaven, the lower the Earth; with the right Thumb they write upon the Ashes, *Java*, that is the Fight that was in the Egg between Fire and Water. Then that all their limbs may be sanctified, they touch with their Hand the principal parts of the Body, from the privy parts to the crown of the Head, and the Ears, Elbows, Knees, and great Toes: They hold their hands as if they gave something to two Spirits (who they say attend on us writing our good works on the right Hand, and the bad on the left,) the same they do to the eight Guards of the World, turning about. The last ceremony is to rub the Forehead, Shoulders and Breast with Allies taken with two fingers and the Thumb of the right Hand, in honour of the three Gods.

9. The bathing called *Titan*, performed in the Sea, is very solemn; before it they perform a ceremony, in which they offer *Fulus*, (a sort of flowers) prostrating themselves three times on the ground, once in reverence to the *Pagod*, once to the Sun, and once to the Sea. The chief places they resort to for this bathing, are three on the Coast of *Travancor*, (viz.) *Baçora*, *Rettora*, and *Comori*; the Days appointed are the first of each Moon, chiefly those of *July* and *January*, but if the New-Moon fall on a *Wednesday*, it adds so much to this devotion, that the Mountains and Valleys can scarce contain the multitude of Pilgrims that resort from above Five hundred Leagues distance, of all Sexes, Ages, and conditions, and all a foot. Above all others, the *Ganga* of *Bengala*, is held in veneration for this washing.

10. Ashes of Cows dung is their chief Purgation, powdering their Forehead, Shoulders and Breast with it; the more of it their *Iogues*, or Religious Men, have upon them, the more Holy they are reputed; they carry it in purse to recompence the Alms that are given them: The Reason they esteem this Powder is this, *Ixora* was sanctified by the Ashes of *Gevelinga*, *Vistnu* desiring to partake of this blessing, and impart it to Mankind, carryed a Cow to *Calaya*, where she got a mouthful of that dust; *Vistnu* took her dung in which was that Ashes she had Eaten, and burning it made more Ashes, which he shared with Man.

11. They also dissolve the same dung and sprinkle their Houses and Highways with it, to purify them; with this is the way daily sprinkled through which *Zamori* goes from his Pallace to the *Pagod*, and his Table cloth, and a Gold dish, on which the Meat is brought. As soon as they see a Cow piss, they run and catch it in their hands, drink part, and sprinkle themselves with the rest, and believe themselves most pure, besides the Law that forbids killing a Cow, 'tis so great a Sin, that it requires much Alms and other good acts to expiate it. Oxen are not so much valued, though many Princes think themselves descended from a Bull, because all Men being destroyed, and only Women left, one of them had carnal Copulation with a Bull, and brought forth a Boy, who was the restorer of Men.

12. Their manner of swearing is laying a Hand upon a Sons head, if the Swearer has one, or else upon a Cows; to clear themselves when accused of any crime, the party puts his Hand into boiling Butter, or Oyl, then 'tis wrapt and sealed up in a cloth; if on the third Day after it appears found, he is cleared, if otherwise, found guilty, the accuser, if the party be cleared, makes satisfaction with a Sum of Money. They make another Tryal in the River that runs from *Cochin* to *Cranganor*, where is the *Pagod* of the Crocodil. The *Bramenes* by their sorceries bring one of them to the shoar, the person accused leaps upon his back, if he is carryed over safe, they account him innocent,

innocent, if devoured, guilty. Both these Experiments have been made use of in presence of our People of late Years.

13. They have yet another manner of Tryal, which is by putting the Hand into a pot full of Adders, to fetch out a Ring, thereby the more to provoke them. If they sting, the party is guilty, if not, clear. This is used in *Cranganor*, *Mangalor*, and other parts of *Canara*. A King of theirs coveting a most plentiful Wood of Coco's that belonged to a Poor Woman, took it from her by force, and ever after it bore none but hollow empty Coco's; there are some living who are Eye witnesses of this wonder.

14. They have several Fasts, one called *Egadezi*, which is kept the eleventh Day of every Moon, on this Fast they Eat nothing but Fruit: That called *Giveraseri* begins by Night in *February*, and they neither Eat, Drink, nor Sleep, in Twenty four Hours. They walk round the *Pagod* rehearsing stories out of their Scripture: If any happen to shut his Eyes, overcome with sleep, he washes himself as oft as it happens, and continues his former exercise. In the morning they offer some Money to the Idol: The Fast *Tirivadira* belongs only to the Women. That for the Dead, which the kindred of the Deceased keep, lasts a Year, during which time they do not Eat, Fish, Flesh, Eggs, drink Wine, or chew Betele.

15. The Fast *Masa Upasa* is the most religious of them all, and few account themselves

selves so happy as to observe it. He that does, begins the last Day of *October*, he washes himself, puts on clean cloaths, and visits the *Pagod* of *Vistnu*. On the first of *November* he goes round it One hundred and one times, (the devoutest One thousand and one) at each turn in the nature of a Prayer, repeating the name of *Vistnu*, One hundred and one times: This must be done every Day of *November*, and the ten first of *December*. He must Eat only Eggs and Milk, not look upon Women, he must think on nothing but that name, and praises of it. Next Year he must do the same, beginning the first of *December*, and ending the tenth of *January*, so he must go on every Year till twelve be over; and then begins again the first of *November*, and fasts the forty Days; after this he is canonized for a Saint, in such a manner, that only the sight of him is forgiveness of Sins.

## C H A P. VI.

*Continues the same Subject.*

1. **I**N matters of Matrimony they have several customs. The *Bramenes* may have as many Wives as they can maintain, though they be not of their Race; but the *Bramene* Women can have but one Husband, and must not mix with the *Nayres*,

on pain of losing their quality. They consult Foretune-tellers about a happy time to Marry; they choose a Husband of their own race born under the same Planet, and the same Day of the Moon, as themselves, to which purpose the times of Nativities are punctually observed. The *Bramen* that does the duty of Priest, is called *Odicon*, or *Cu-rical*; he for four Days sacrifices in a Den Rice, Butter, Cows, and such like things; he lights a lamp, and sets aside a portion of Rice for *Garapatii*, and for the *Epicurean* Elephant, that he may not disturb the Feast. The Bridegroom ties about the Brides neck, a thread on which hang three little pieces of Gold, in honour of the three Gods; this is called *Tale*, and is the mark of a Married Woman. Hence among the *Malabars* Matrimony is called *Que Fa*, which signifies binding; if the Husband dies first, the Woman throws away the thread, or *Tale*, in token of liberty.

2. The Priest takes the couple by the Hands and says some Prayers, then they go to feast; they do not lie together till some happy Planetary Conjunction, when that happens, they go to the door of the Room which is half put too, and therewith the Priest say some Prayers, and withdraw; the next Day they go to a Cauldron of Water, in which are live Fish, and each holding the end of a cloth, draw it through like a Net, the Fish taken they lay respectfully on their Heads, with the right Hand; if many be taken, they believe they shall have many Children, and the contrary.

3. If any dies a Maid, they cause some poor Man of the family, ( an unheard of beastliness ) to deflower her though very young; him they pay well for so doing, and as soon as done, throw stones at him till he runs out of reach. Those of the family *Exastri*, and the Kings that are not *Bramenes*, make no Royal Marriages, so their Wives are not Queens, but Concubines, called *Nastaras*, and all of them may have Gallants. Therefore the Sons do not inherit, but the Nephews born of Sisters. Of their manner of Marrying we have spoke before.

4 The *Tale* among the meaner sort of Women, serves to tie them to one Husband, and among Ladies, to turn them loose to all lasciviousness. Only the *Bramenes* have liberty to lie with all sorts of Women, from the meanest to the Queen. The others if they have to do with inferiors are killed, if Women, sould. The *Nayres* differ not from the others, in the manner of their Weddings. Among the meaner sort as Tradesmen, one of them puts the *Tale* upon the Young Woman, who is thereby capacitated to follow whom she pleases, or be taken up by whoever likes her. Among Silver-smiths, Blacksmiths and Founders, four Brothers, or as many as there are, keep one Wife between them, and have particular Days assigned for each, that the inheritance may not be confounded. Till a Maid is licensed by the *Tale*, she may be abroad among Men, and none dare presume to meddle with her.

5. The *Bramens* of the North do not only celebrate their own Weddings, but those of Beasts and the Elements. In our Age there was a great Man of that Family, who spent above 15000 Ducats at the Wedding of a Bull and a Heifer. There was also a Baneane who making a Well in the Village *Calegam* for the use of Passengers, and resolving to Marry this Water with some other, despised all that was near, and Married it to the River of *Suratt*, above 30 Leagues distant, and spent above 5000 Crowns in the Wedding.

6. The *Chatines* Marry as the *Bramenes*, but their Widdows cannot throw off the *Tale*, because they must not Marry again, nor keep a Gallant: When they want Heirs, they adopt one, by drinking to the adopted, who pledges in Coco-milk dyed with *Safran*. If he is a Man they give him one of the names of the Sun, if a Woman, of the names of Gods Wife.

7. The cause the families do not mix, is because the *Bramenes* descended from the God *Bramasface*, those of *Chatrier* (that is Kings) from the right Hand, those of *Vaix-er* from the Belly; those of *Chadrer*, (they are the *Nayres*) from the Foot. At first they used to mix, but afterwards the *Bramenes* obtained a priviledge of King *Cberaman Perimal* to the contrary; hence they are so much superior to others, that they are polluted by coming near as well as touching them; they must not Eat with those of a lower race, nor any thing dress by them,

nor out of any Vessel of theirs: if any of them Marries, or has to do with inferiors, they burn on his Forehead a mark like a daws foot, and his kindred making a statue like him of straw, and the Herb *Dorpe*, burn it with ceremonies, as if it were a dead Man. The *Bramens* loose their birthright of their Family, by Eating Fish, Flesh, or Eggs; and by Drinking *Sura* or *Orraca*, by stealing or killing another *Bramen*, provided it is not in War; among the other Families, there are divers customs about being defiled.

8. *Saniade* or *Saniassi* is a dignity greater then a King, of which only the *Bramenes* are capable, the elect is installed by another *Saniassi* in this manner. The Image of the elect is made in Straw and burnt, to show he is dead to the World; then the Master leads him to a Bath; cuts of his *Corombi*, and dips him 72 times, then takes off his piece of Net, the mark of a *Bramene*, cloaths him in red, and he can never after wear white, only on his back a *Fota*. He delivers him a rod with a piece of the same cloath, and a straw Hat; for three or four Days he is under the Masters tuition, must not Eat Fish, Flesh, chew Betle, nor so much as look upon a Woman, and if accidently he meets one, he puts his Hat over his Eyes, and goes on till she is out of sight. He is to take what is given him without complaining, lives in or near the *Pagod*, succeeds and is Heir to his Master. He bows only to the Idol, and even the King and *Bramenes* do to him, all his defence



defence is in curses, so much dreaded, that every one endeavours to appease him; he is not to handle Money; none can carry his Hat when he goes a foot: If he does any thing contrary to his institution, the *Bramenes* accuse him before the King; if convicted, they stain him with *Safran* and depose him, but he buys it off with bribes.

9. They use no ceremony with those that die under the Age of 7 Years; those that are above this Age, are burnt towards the South from their Houses, where lives *Jemen* King of the Devils, that he may the sooner carry away the Soul. For mourning they shave their Heads and Beards, which they do not cut for a whole Year after, nor have to do with Women: Lye 15 Days on a mat, and enter not into the *Pagods*; the 15 Days expired, they cast the Ashes into the Sea, if near, if not into some bye place, and plant a Fig-tree where the funeral pile was; then they wash and put on clean cloaths, cast out all Earthen Vessels, and one comes to purify the House, sprinkling it with Cows piss and Milk.

10. Every Day of the Fast, he that purifies the House puts a little Rice upon a Fig leaf, which the Rooks Eat, or if they fail, which is looked upon as a great misfortune, 'tis cast into the Water for the Fish. The Anniversary is a Feast at which there must be no Poor. On the Coast of *Coromandel*, *Goa*, and *Cambaya* the Women burn themselves with their Husbands, unless such as have sucking Children. If any refuse, the relations

relations hold it as an affront to them, and force her. 300 burnt themselves with the *Naique* of *Madure*. The manner of it is thus, The Woman is carryed on Mens shoulders to the *Pagod*, in her best attire, and anointed with Sandal, after praying to the Idol, she dances all the way to the place; where her Husband was burnt, and casts her self into the Fire; the relations standing round with forks to keep her in, and making a noise with several iustruments that her cries may not be heard and move compassion.

11. The Original of this Custom was from King *Pandues* Wife, who voluntarily burnt her self with him, and it is upheld to secure the lives of the Husbands; it having been observed, that more died by means of the Wives, then by Sicknes. The *Saniade* or *Saniassi* is not burnt, but buryed whole in the *Pagod* where he serves; they make a hole and seat him in it upon the bench he used before he is quite Dead, with a little Rice, and some without for the Idol, then cover him with Clay without any farther ceremonies, believing he is suddenly gone to Heaven.



## C H A P. VII.

*Of the Empire of Æthiopia, and first of the Kingdoms and Provinces into which it is divided; of the Progress of Christianity therein, and of the Product of the Land.*

1. **E***thiopia* was the Second of our Three great Discoveries (which were *India*, *Ethiopia*, and *China*) and therefore shall be the Second described. The Reader may be assured of its Truth, as being delivered by an unbiaſſed and learned Perſon, that ſpent a conſiderable time there, travelling and examining into the Truth of things, and being an Eye witness of the greateſt part.

2. The City *Dancas* was the Metropolis of this Empire, ſeated on the top of a Mountain: The Country about it is divided into Diſtricts, ſome mountainous, but all fruitful. Three Miles to the Northward is *Ogara* ſo fertile, that the green and ripe Fruit hangs at once upon the Trees. Weſtward is *Dambia*, not inferior to the other; then *Amfras*, where our Patriarch reſided, and had Lands. Next follows *Dara* and others, till you come to the *Nile*.

3. In all theſe Diviſions are many Monaſteries and Churches, with Priests and Friars, *Ethiopia* knew not the Sacrament of Confirmation. The Country *Tacuffa* was beſt diſpoſed to receive Chriſtianity, becauſe  
many

many *Portugueses* lived there, and that of *Gorgorro* by the Labours of the Jesuits who had a Church there. So the Heathen *Agoas* gave ear to our Doctrine; these are a war-like People, and possess a plentiful Country. The *Damotes*, though more polite, received not the Gospel so well, till being overcome in a Battle by their Prince, they submitted and entertained the Religious Men, and there are now theremany Churches and Monasteries.

4. The Kingdom of *Gojao* was the first that admitted the Observation of Lent, and kept the Catholick Holy-days. It contains a great number of Monasteries, among them those of *Gonge* and *Salala* are famous. The Jesuits had three Residences here, *Colelá*, *Sarcá*, and *Nebesse*. The first two have good Churches finished, the third one very magnificent begun. The Stone they are built of is blew, so light it is more like Wood, but yet hard. The Kingdom of *Bagamidri* received some Catholick Fathers, and there are still Christians there.

5. The Kingdom *Amara* began to incline to Christianity at the time the Emperor rejected our Doctrine. The Viceroy *Eda Christos* and many of the People continued firm. The Faith was not spread into the Kingdoms of *Narea* and *Zemyn*, or Provinces of *Abargale*, *Borá*, *Saloá*, *Cassa*, *Bugna*, *Orejate*, *Sarte*, *Anubas*, *Sera* and others.

6. It took most root in the Kingdom of *Tigre*, which being the chiefest of *Ethiopia*, the Description of it will serve to illustrate what

what relates to all the others. The Kingdom of *Tigre* is almost round, its extent One hundred Leagues North and South from the Borders of the *Amacens* to those of *Enderate*, with the same distance East and West from *Dangali* at the mouth of the red Sea to the River *Tacasse* near *Semen*. It is divided into several Governments, called *Xumetes*, and the Governors *Xumos*, some of them in some cases not subject to the Viceroy, but immediate to the Emperor. In *Sire*, *Enderata*, *Agamea*, *Serave* and some others, the *Xumos* must be Natives of the Province, and of certain Families to which those Commands are peculiar. Their Law-suits are like ours in *Europe*, there lies an Appeal from the Judge to the Viceroy, and from him to the Emperor, except in some Cases, in which the Judge finally determines.

7. The Governments are sold, and he that bids most carries them. A Governor is declared, by putting on him the *Cabaya*, tying a red Ribband about his Head, and he walking about the *Catama*, or Court, a Cryer proclaims; *We have made this our Slave Governor of the Province of Bugna* (or any other.) Then he returns to Court, and takes his leave of the Emperor, having first laid aside the Ornaments used at this act, for the same serve all upon that Occasion. Then he sends a Servant with such a Ribband, to make it known in the Town where the Governors reside. The Viceroy of *Tigre* for his Place pays Three hundred Oqueas yearly, which is about Two thousand Ducats. The *Bar-*

*nogus* (corruptly *Barnagai*) which signifies King of the Sea; for *Bar* is the Sea, and *Nogus* a King, pays Two hundred. The *Xu-mos* or Governors according to the value of their Commands, there being no set Rates, but all pay.

8. Along the Coast of *Massua* Northwards is the Country of the *Dobeytas*, subject to the *Turks*; Southward lie the *Xios*; up toward the Inland near *Enderata* and *Ojerate* the *Dobas*, all Mahometans subject to the Emperor. Next those are the *Dorbeytas*, Christians only in name, Rebels to the Empire, defended by their inaccessible Mountains. The *Mampsas* follow their Example, and have been often attacked without success. Along the same Coast are these Provinces; *Cantiba* the Upper and Lower, *Seraoe*, *Salicit*, *Sama*, *Tedexerez*, *Torates* and *Galas*: Westward is *Siré*, and its Desert on the Banks of the famous River *Tacasse* bordering on the *Cafres*; then *Nader* and *Addit*. From the West Southward *Tamben*, *Gralta*, *Sart*, *Ojerate*, *Enderata*, the *Bugras*, *Dobas*, and *Sera* a plentiful Country peculiar to the Queens. Turning again to the West *Senase*, both *Mambarata's*, *Agamea*, *Ambacenetete*, *Bur* the greater and lesser, *Galá*, and many other Governments. The Center of all is *Tremona* between the famous Church of *Acçum*, where the Emperors are Crowned, and the Famous Monastery of *Abba Guarima*. In each of these Divisions there is a Fair every week, and several Custom Towns, as *Barava*, *Seraoe*, *Sire*, that yield a considerable Revenue.

9. There

9. There are two Winters, the first of the Sea, and reaches about two days Journey up the Inland, beginning at *Massua*, and ending beyond the Monastery of *Brizan*. It begins in *December* and ends in *March*. From that place forward towards the Inland it is Summer. The second Winter begins near the famous Church *Asmara* near *Bizan*, where the first Winter ended, and reaches over all *Ethiopia*. The Commencement of it is in *June*, as in *India* and Coast of *Arabia*, but not so severe. It Rains the Afternoons only with Thunder and Lightning before, which gives notice to Travellers and Shepherds to get to shelter; for soon after fall flashes of Fire, and such Hail as kills all it meets.

10. There are also two Summers, the first temperate, the other insupportable, for the burning Wind, which they call *Uzur*, strikes down People, and sometimes they rise no more. In some Places, as *Marebo*, *Tacasse*, *Nor* and others, as soon as Winter expires, pestilent Fevers Rage, proceeding from Vapors the Sun exhales from Bogs. Though the Roads are full of Woods, mountainy and Ionesom, they are not so much infested with Highway men as in *Europe*.

11. There never was the Plague in this Kingdom, and when it happens in the other Provinces, it kills not many, because there are no great Towns. Such as are Infected, or fearful, go from the Towns into Cottages about the Mountains, and if any dies, he is burnt together with the Cottage, no Body daring

daring to bury him. The People are long lived, and know not what the Pleurisie or Stone is: They have abundance of good and wholsom Springs. From them and what the Country about most produces the Provinces take name. There are also hot Springs doubtless Medicinal, if they knew the use of them. The Cattle drinks of them, and thereby becomes larger and fatter. They have other Springs and Rivers esteemed miraculous.

12. As there are two Winters and Summers, so the Product of the Earth is twofold: They have abundance of Wheat and Barley, Pease, Lentils, Beans, Kidney-beans, Indian-wheat of several Sorts, Hemp, whereof they make no use, Nuga, an Herb with yellow Flowers whereof they make Oil, Zuso for the same use, and serves to die Cloath of a Saffron colour; Aja, a Grain between Wheat and Rye, but has a scattering Ear, a particular sort of Grain whereof they make Sava answerable to our Beer, though not so clear, yet serves to make them drunk.

13. They have white Rose-trees, white and red Lilies very beautiful, Jasmin wonderful for smell and greatness, Hony-suckles, a certain odoriferous Flower that dies by day, and recovers at night. Their Hills, Valleys, Meddows, and Shores are cover'd with variety of Flowers of of all Colours. All sorts of Herbs are there abundantly produced, and some but little Ginger.

14. For Fruit-trees they have the Tamarine, Peach, Pomgranate, Ancoy a sort of Pear, Fig, Orca like the Fig, the Tree of  
D d
bigger

bigger bulk, but the Leaves less; another sort of Fig-tree, called Muss, which grows like a Body of a Tree covered with Leaves so big, that a Man may wrap himself in one of them; out of the top shoots one only Branch on which are the Figs, on each of them, whatever way cut, appears a Cross, for which reason it is concluded to be the Fruit forbidden our First Father *Adam*, and the cause of his Fall. There are wild Tamarins, the Fruit whereof is not eaten: Vineyards there are none, but some wall Vines whereof they make no Wine, but Reasins. There are Lemmon-trees sweet and sowre, Cedars and Ebony-Trees. They have also Cotten, whereof are made course Clothes for the common Sort, and is used as all other things instead of Mony, of which in this Country there is none.

15. They Plow their Ground only superficially, not cutting deep, and their Plows in many places are drawn by Men and Women, most of the Plow-shares are of Wood. Their chief Stocks consist in Cattle, and some Men possess from two to 10000 Head of great Cattle. Some of them divide their Herds by the Colours, and those that have Horns from those that have none, for there are naturally many here without them; none of the Bulls are fierce. There are many Goats, and it is reckoned a shame to drink their Milk; no less quantity of Sheep, some of such large Tails, as are equal to one of the Quarters; they make course Cloath of the Wool for the Poor. They have all other

other sorts of Beasts and Fowl in abundance.

16. The Country abounds in Butter and Honey, the best of the last is that of *Enderrata* and *Agamea*. The Bees, for fear of Theives, are kept within Doors, with holes through the Walls for them to go out. There are wild Bees, and of their Liquor is made the Wine most in esteem; both Men and Women glory in being drunk with it. Where these swarm, there resorts a little Bird that loves Honey, and fearing the Bees, goes out to meet Passengers, and attracts them with his Note, and leaping from Tree to Tree to the place where the Honey is; the People knowing this, follow him, take the Honey, and he remains satisfied with what is left.

17. It is certain there are gold Mines here, but not made use of, lest they should provoke the *Turks* and other Nations to covet the Country. They lie Eastward, and on the right hand of the way from *Maigoga* to *Tamovem*. On the top of a neighbouring Mountain is to be seen a Wall, believed to have been a Fort to defend the Mines; though they are stopped up, some Gold is taken about the Skirts of them. There are others in other places, but none known of Silver in this Kingdom; in that of *Semon* there, are, and those so rich, that two Parts in three of the Ore are pure Metal, they are also stopped up. In *Tigre* there are Mines of Lead, and many of so good Iron, that they make thereof all sorts of Weapons without Steel, whereof they have none. In

*Senafe* there is abundance of pure Sulphur, and as much Salt-peter at *Gralta*.

18. Between *Baraoa* and *Massua*, there is abundance of a sort of bright Stone which opens in Leaves like Izinglass, and being burnt turns to a white Powder like Ceruse used by Painters, but not with Oil, for that turns it black. Between *Dangali* and *Senafe* is a great Mine of Salt of great value, because there is no other there but what is made with Sea-water between *Massua* and *Defalo*. The Salt dug out of the Mine is cut into Bars about a Span in length, and between two and three Fingers broad and thick, which serve for Money in other Parts. Not far from it in a Mountain is a sort of Salt that is a Cure for some Diseases.

19. The Empire of *Ethiopia* has never a good Sea-port Town, because it reaches not to the Sea, only some little Part of the Kingdom of *Tigre*. The Port *Baclur*, the first within the mouth of the Red Sea belongs to the King of *Dangali* a Mahometan, and is not considerable, being incapable of great Ships. The Port *Defalo* between that and *Arquico* where the *Turks* have a Fort is yet worse. The best Port on the Coast is *Arquico*, where the *Turks* have raised another Fort: Between it and *Defalo* are two large Bays, where any Ships may ride.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Of the Laws Customs and Religion of the  
Empire of Ethiopia.*

1. **I**N *Ethiopia* there are no written Laws, but ancient Prescription is preserved by Memory, and often proclaimed at the Courts of Kings and Governors. There are no Prisons. When a Man is accused, they fasten a Chain to his right hand, and to the left of the Accuser, or one of his Servants, and so they continue till Sentence is given; so that it is as dangerous to accuse as be accused. When a Man is condemned to death, they deliver him over to the Party aggrieved, to kill him as he pleases, without allowing the least time for preparation.

2. The Witnesses may be accepted against, and such as are allowed give their Evidence *Viva voce*, for nothing is writ. They have a sort of Judges called *Umbares*, which they hold to be descended from those sent by *Salomon* with the Queen of *Saba*, and her Son *David*, when she returned from *Hierusalem*.

3. The rich wear Shirts of *Bofeta* lined with the same, or another sort of Linnen, they reach to the Ankles, the Sleeves long and close to the Arm with abundance of gathers, the Neck high and stitched, with silver and silk Buttons of several Colours, and Loops of the same instead of Button-holes. Others wear them blew, and all girt

themselves with silk or Linnen Scarfes ; they use no Belts, but such as are fastned to their Swords, which they seldom wear ; their Breeches as long as the Shirt and narrow ; from the mid-thigh downward of Velvet, Damask or Sattin, upward of Linnen, because of the heat. Over all they wear *Cabayas*, which are like Sheets (called also *Fotetes*) thrown over their Shoulders, to do Reverence to any Body they open these, for they wear nothing on their Heads ; but if they do Reverence to the Queen or Prince, they let fall the *Fotete* to the waste. If any wear Veils on their Heads they do not take them off.

4. They wear Periwigs, which they call *Gatonas*, made of sundry shapes, some like the brims of a Hat one over another, some round, others like Horns, and so other sorts. It is a Trade to make them, and they spend a whole day in ordering one ; they are ointed with Butter whereon the Dust settling makes them look monstrous.

5. Some over their Cloaths hang carelesly certain Skins like Sables with little Bells of Gold or Silver ; about their Necks gold Chains with Crosses, Bracelets of the same Metal, and Silver Rings. The poorer sort cloath much in the same Nature, but with Apparel of less value. For the most part they go barefooted ; or if they wear any thing, it is only a sort of Buskins so streight the Foot never goes to the bottom, and so they drag them. The meanest sort of all wear Cow-Hides either with or without the  
Hair

Hair, dressed as soft as any Cloath.

6. The Women of great Quality, as the *Oiforos*, that are of the Blood-Royal, and others wear Shifts of Silk, or rich Indian Linnen, they cover the whole Body, very close at the Wrist, but the rest of the sleeve so wide it hangs down to the ground. They use Bracelets of Gold and Silver, Necklaces of Glasse of several Colours, from the Shoulders downwards they are covered with silk Veils of several Colours, or white as the Men, and they let them fall like them when they make Reverence; they put nothing on their Heads, their Hair hanging in many breadths, or loose and divided, fastned to the Skin ointed with Butter, the ends are knotted. Men and Women to avoid discomposing this so tedious dress, when they sleep rest their Neck upon sticks so framed, that the Head lies hollow: They always carry Bodkins of Ivory, Ebony, or other things well wrought to scratch themselves with, and are always stuck in the Hair.

7. Round their Eyes and Lips they lay Colour, makes them rather blew than black. The Brides on the Marriage-day die their Hands blacker than they are naturally; for as among us whiteness is beauty, so blackness among them: They wear Rings on their fingers, on the little one they let the Nail grow so long, it exceeds all the other fingers, in their Ears great Rings of Gold or Silver.

8. Their Weapons are Firelocks, which they have from the *Turks*, Darts of several

sorts, Maces, Slings, Swords, Hangers, Poi- niards, and for the defensive Coats of Mail, Helmets, and Bucklers of Bufalo and Sea- Horses Skins. The warlike Instruments, Trumpets and Kettle-drums, the Musical Ta- bors, great and lesser Guitars, the first of five, the others of three strings.

9. They love Feasting, and make more account of the Wine than the Meat; the Tables round; for Table-cloaths Cakes of Bread of several sorts of Grain, generally three cover the Table, and sometimes one. Their Food much the same as ours. When they wash their hands, every one wipes on the Cloath he wears, and when they eat on a piece of Bread. The greatest Dainty, without which the Feast is not compleat, is Beef just killed and eaten raw, and for the more delicacy, instead of Mustard, dipped in the Excrement of a certain Gut of the same Beast. The Desert is parched Pease and other Grain. Whilst they eat they drink little or nothing, but as soon as dinner is done they go to another place to drink, in which they spend more time than in the former. The drink is *Sava*, or Beer, and that Liquor of Honey before-mentioned. They drink and talk, till being hot-headed they go out brandishing their Swords, and promising to kill all the Master of the Feast's Enemies: The Feast is esteemed most splen- did, whence most come out drunk. The Women go to Feasts with their Husbands, and the *Oisbras* without them if they please.

10. The Sons of Women of the Blood-Royal, that is those *Oiforos*, can never inherit the Crown, nor they marry with Men of the Family, though removed a hundred Degrees. In this they agree with the *Cbintfes*. All Men descended from the Male-Line can pretend to the Crown, and he that is descended from a King that Reigned 200 Years ago, has as good a Claim as the Son of the last. The *Oiforos* Women pay no Reverence to any Body, not to their own Husbands. In this particular we have many *Oiforos* among us.

11. There can be no fix'd Callendar of their Festivals, for they are many according to every Man's Fancy; those universally received are *Saturday* and *Sunday* in every week, six days of every month, one of the most holy Trinity, another of our Saviour, one of Our Blessed Lady, one of St. *Michael*, one of the Apostles, and one of a Saint they call *Guebramanisascodust*. *Easter* they keep fifteen days; all the Festivals of the Year they observe according to the old Stile, on the Feast of the Epiphany they also celebrate the Baptism of Christ, and Men and Women repeat their Baptism in some River or Pool.

12. They add more Days to the Lent than we do to make up the forty, because the *Saturdays* as well as *Sundays* are kept holy. Their way of Fasting is only to eat after Sun setting till the rising. Throughout the Year they fast *Wednesdays* and *Fridays*. They dress their Herbs with Oil of Nuga, having  
none

none of Olives, and have little Fish, which must be such as has Scales, for in most things they retain somewhat of the Jewish Customs.

13. The Weddings are celebrated with Trumpets, Tabors and Dancing. Some live together upon promise of Marriage, if they have any Children. The Women are common to the Husband's Brothers and Relations, and the nearer of kin the more free to this beastliness. If the Wife knows the Husband has to do with another Woman, she recovers of her forty of every Creature she has upon the ground, as Forty Cows, Sheep, Goats, or any other thing; and if she will, the Husband is fined for her use many Cloaths which are delivered to her, for the Wives have their Goods apart. Adultery is not punished with death.

14. In their Funerals they use the same Musick and Dancing as in the Weddings, to signifie it is the same thing to die as to be born. All the difference is the People that follow the Corps wear white Ribbands tied about their Foreheads, and go without Priest or Cross. Instead thereof they carry the dead Man's richest Goods before him. It is a great token of Grief to shave their Heads (at the Death of their Kings all men are obliged to it) but yet a greater to accompany the Corps naked from the Waist upwards.

15. Their Mourning is a black Cloath died in a certain sort of mud, for they have no other dying. If a Man be found dead and the Murderer not known, the Country

is fined to make satisfaction to the Relations. The same if any Cattle be lost; the Country People are obliged to maintain the Vice-roys and other People when they travel. When two meet after a long absence, their salutation is kissing commonly the Mouth, sometimes the Cheek, or Shoulder. The Women neither spin nor soe, the Husbands mend the Cloaths; the Poorest Woman would be ashamed to wash her own Cloaths, the Men do it, and the Women bring the Water.

16. They have many Churches, I will say somewhat of the chiefest, that of *Accum* is the principal of all *Ethiopia* for its antiquity, and because the Emperors must be Crowned in it and no other. It stands in the middle of one of their greatest Towns. Near *Accum* are the Caves where the Holy King *Caleb* and his Son did penance. They are buried in the Church of *St. Pantalion*, which stands on the top of a high Mountain; *Pantalion* was one of the 9 Saints, they say went from *Rome* to Preach the Gospel in that Country.

17. The famous Monasteries of *Abbagarima* and *Alcluya* and the Church of *Accum* stand in the form of a Triangle, a Days journey distant from each other. In the Center is *Tremona*; *Abbagarima* took name from its founder, who was one of the 9 Saints, and Son of a King of *Rome*, called *Isaac*, as the Son also was; but the *Ethiopians* called him *Abbagarima*, which signifies, a Man prodigious for Miracles; they feign that there was a way under ground from this Saints  
Cave

Cave to Rome, and that he used to travel it.

18. The Monastery of *Alcluya* formerly the habitation of many religious Men, now of very few was founded by *Abba Samuel* Disciple to one that was so to *Abba Arvagavi*, one of those 9 Roman Saints and Preachers. The religious of these Monasteries are of two sorts, those of *Abba Tula Aymanot* and those of *Abba Statcus* the founders. They live not in community, but every one where he pleases with Servants; they observe no noviceship, nor make any vow; such as will Marry and have 2 or three Wives; most of them have Mistresses, and think it no sin. Such as do profess Chastity are much esteem'd, all their business is to gather Riches, and get Governments. Their Habit is white Shirts, or striped with several colours, over them, a black Scapulary before, a narrow round hood of the same colour; they never take it off, not even when they consecrate, Cloaks or Mantles as every one can afford, the Poorest or most observant wear Cow hides, like the meanest of the People. All carry crosses in their Hands; the Masters who are not Married bigger then the others; but they want not for Women even of those they call Nuns.

19. The Nuns make no Vow, live where they will, and wear hoods like the Fryars, sometimes they retire into Deserts, where they say the religious Men follow them. The Men are well read in Scripture, the Clergy lead much the same life, but must not Marry twice.

twice, if they do, they are excluded the Church. The *Abagnas* who give the Holy Orders scarce do it *gratis*. They use no ceremonies, nor examine those who are to be ordained; they pay more respect to the Altar stone on which they lay the blessed Sacrament, then to the the Sacrament it self; their Chalices are made of Tin, or Copper, very large, that they may hold much Wine for the People to whom it is given in little spoons. The Priest to say Mass puts nothing over his cloaths, but as it were a piece of a *Casula* which hangs behind and covers his back. The *Thuribels* have bells to make a noise, they use no Mass book, but say the Mass by Heart; they assist at it with a confused noise, their Chalice cloaths are black and dirty, so rags for other uses, their bells of stone.

20. In the Country of *Barnagassa* towards *Arquico* is the famous Monastery of *Biran*, corruptly called *Vizan* or *Vision*. It is of 200 Years standing, had once 500 Fryers, now not above 40. There is a great Church with 3 Isles. sustained upon 12 Pillars, built and dedicated, as they say to the Blessed Virgin before her birth; about half a League from it, is the Church of *St. George*, possess'd by the last Patriarch; near this Church is a large Cave cut out of the Rock, where are kept with great veneration, and even Heathen Sacrifices, some dead bodies they call Saints, and not dead Men, for they say, they rest there, and if any offer to lift the cloaths that cover them, to see what is under,

der, they hinder them saying, *Do it not for they will make.*

21. There are many other ancient remarkable Churches; those most admirable which are curiously cut out of Rocks; those lately built are, that of *Dancas*, those of *Nebess* and *Tremona*, of *Gorgorra*, *Colena*, and *Sarca*; most of the Antient ones are round; Men and Women go not to the same Church, but each Sex to their own apart.

22. Their errors in Faith are many, the chief, that they baptize without saying any thing, or if they do, use not the words instituted by the Church: In confession they use no form of absolution, others absolve without hearing the sins, giving unreasonable Pennances. They say God is like a Man, that the Divinity was born of the Blessed Virgin, that there is but one nature in Christ, that the Holy Ghost proceeds not from the Son, that there is no Purgatory, that the Souls are given by the Parents, not by Heaven, that till the Day of Judgment none goes to Heaven or Hell, even the Blessed Virgin. They Eat not Swines Flesh, Hare, Rabbet, or Eel; *Saturday* they keep better then *Sunday*, no Woman in the time of her courses enters the Church; nor 40 Days after she is delivered of a Son, and 80 of a Daughter, nor those who have had carnal Copulation the Day they had it. If any one enters the Church when they are communicating, he must receive without confessing, though he be loaded with sin, they had no knowledge of the Sacrament of confirmation, nor extrem unction. There is no punishment for errors in matters of Religion.

## C H A P IX.

*Of the Nature of the Country of Ethiopia, of its Towns and the Kings it has had, and of the entrance and expulsion of our Doctrine.*

1. **A**LL this Country is divided by vast Mountains, so high, that they appear as if they had been heaped one upon another, of strange figures on which they build impregnable Castles; some are difficult of ascent, some almost, and others quite impossible to be ascended; they are beautified with variety of Trees, and inhabited by a rebellious People, that have much of the nature of their habitation.

2. Their Cities and Towns are small, but the ruins of great ones are to be seen. In *Accum* they appear to have been very sumptuous, for there are Obelisks of black stone, some ruined, some standing, two whereof are above 40 Yards high. It is believed the Court of their Kings was there kept for some Ages after the famous Queen *Sabs*. I will here give a particular account of the City *Adem*, though on the Coast, of *Arabia*, because it was in a manner, and is the inlet into *Ethiopia*.

3. About 30 Leagues from the mouth of the red Sea, a point of the Continent runs into the Sea, making a small Peninsula covered  
ed

ed with vast Hills and Rocks that do not produce the least Plant; on the top of one is a square Fort with Towers; thence runs down towards the Bar a wall with Bastions, the last of them at the foot of the Mountain. Hence the wall turns along the foot of the Hill, till it joins the lower Fort, making a fort of Circle. This work though it appears formidable at Sea, can do no great harm to the Ships, by reason of its great height, to remedy which fault, there is a Plat-form raised near the Water. In all the works there are about 12 large, and 20 lesser pieces of Canon, and 600 Soldiers armed with good Firelocks, Swords without shells, Cimitars, and Tucks.

4. In a bottom at the foot of the wall and Mountain, lies the City, not the third part of what it has been, girt with a wall and Towers at convenient distances; it is divided rather into lanes than streets, there are wells the Water whereof is brackish, but used when Rain Water fails, the inhabitants are *Arabs* and strangers, Moors descended from those who were once masters of it, and Jews who are in all parts of the World and here live meanly.

5. Provisions are brought from the inland on Camels; their Money pieces of Eight, and another of the same value called *Cabres* or *Xamies*. There are no Thieves, and therefore no Locks to the Doors; their weapons Swords, Semiters, Poniards and Bucklers hanging by straps about their Necks. Their cloathing black, the better sort wear a thing like a  
 shirt

like a shirt down to the Ancles; the Poor a clout tyed about the waste, reaching half way down the thigh; the Gallants add a *Fota* or loose cloak hanging down, or under the Arm, only the *Xarifes* wear Veils on their Heads. The Women use the same sort of shirt or cassack as the Men, except that before it reaches only to their Knees, and behind sweeps the Streets with a train a Yard long. The best sort wear a kind of silk Petticoat of several colours, they cover themselves to the Knees with a kind of Veil, and have only one Eye uncovered in the street.

The *Arabs* easily took this Town from the *Turks*, and it might as easily be taken from them, if any would attempt it by way of surprise. A *Portugues* Gentleman, after being possessed of it, shamefully quitted it.

7. The Emperors of *Ethiopia* since the Queen *Saba* ( or *Maqueda* for she was so called ) are these, her Son *Solomon*, *Amna*, *Sabacam*, *Baremgabo*, *Sabacio*, *Tboasca*, *Adona*, *Aufayo*, *Omacio*, *Choa*, *Luvo*, *Antata*, *Bahaca*, *Savada*, *Adina*, *Gotolea*, *Safalea*, *Elgabul*, *Bautaul*, *Bavares* the first, *Bavares* the second, *Mabase*, *Nalque*, *Balsol*, in whose time Christ was born; *Chempasgado*, *Bhur Sagad*, *Grima*, *Casar*, *Sarado*, *Cucii Backeon*, *Sargay*, *Zeray*, *Sana Aogad*, *Gbeona*, *Gaya*, *Macugna*, *Safarada*, *Agdar*, *Avaha*, and *Cabaha*, who Reigned together, in whose time went thither a Patriarch called *Minatis* and *Pantaleon*, who we said Preached the Gospel there. *Hapba*, *Arjid*, *Ainci*, *Arada*, *Afsadara*,  
E e *Amimid*,

*Amamid*, in whose time two Christian Kings sailing through the red Sea, landed with some religious Men, and Reign'd there, and then the descendants of the former were restored, and were *Saba, Thazena, Caleb, Gabra, Mafael, Constantine, Basgar, Zansagad, Frey, Senay, Adoraza, Aidar, Madai, Calaudamo, Grima Affar, Zergaza, Digna, Micael, Bud Gaza, Arma, Asbanani, Digna, Zana, Ambasao, Demo, Delnaad*, hitherto the line of *Saba*; those that follow are of another branch, *Himnamale, Agba, Acheon, Bhar, Sagad, Hesta, Sarad, Cama, Afsad, Vdamo Arad, Anda Cheon, Caifa Arad, Vd Doma, David, Theadros, Isac, Andreas, Astbinavi, Anda Jesus, Bad Linavi, Jarai, Acob, Beda Mariad*, or *Zeriaco, Hescander, or Alexander* he that *Peter de Covillam* saw when *Vasco de Gama* was discovering the Indian Sea, *Andascheon* or *Naut, David, Oena Saged*, whom *D. Christopher de Gama* went to assist; *Claudius* or *Athana Saged*, to whom went the first Embassador from *Portugal*. In all 86 Emperors from *Queen Saba*, till the Year 1600, or thereabouts.

8. We have already, at the time it happen'd, spoke of the introduction of a Catholick Patriarch into this Country, and shall in its proper place, in the third Tome, speak of the banishment of them. It is very remarkable that this Emperor, who so joyfully received an Apostolical Prelate, and submitted to the Holy See, should after be so cruel an Enemy to it; and that these People who called themselves Christians, were the backwardest

in receiving the true Catholick Doctrine; the chief cause hereof, is their great inclination to Judaism, as descended from *Solomon's* Son. Therefore they so rigarously adhere to Circumcision, that not only the Men but Women are Circumcised; they observe strictly the *Saturday*; they take the liberty of being divorced only for their pleasure, and have several Wives, without regarding whether they have been their own Father's Brother's, or other Mens. This obstinacy is not a little helped by the Pontifical Power usurped by their Emperor; and by a Prophecy they have, that the *Frangis* or *Europeans* shall become Masters of their Country, and they fear the Preaching the Faith may be an Introduction to it. They have also another Prophecy, that they, assisted by the *Frangis*, shall destroy the House of *Meca*, which they desire as much as any other Christians. But let this suffice for *Ethiopia*.

---

## C H A P. X.

*Of the Islands of Japan.*

1. **W**E have already in the Eleventh Chapter of the First Part of this Tome spoke of the Situation, Extent, Names, and some other particulars of these Islands, which will be needless to repeat, and shall therefore proceed to what has not yet been related.

2. The Country, though not void of large  
 E c 2 Plains

Plains, is very mountainous, some so high they are much above the Clouds. Two are most remarkable; that of *Fiyenoyama* four Leagues from *Miaco*, and that of *Letchu* which continually casts out terrible Flames, and among them sometimes the Devil comes out to perswade the People to cast themselves in there, affirming, it is the shortest cut to Heaven. About this Mountain are many Silver Mines: The Fields are water'd with many Rivers, which together with the Summer Rains and Winter Snow make them Fruitful, if the continual Wars did not hinder all Tillage, which is the Reason that Land is undeservedly accounted barren. It bears Rice and Wheat, of which they do not make Bread, but use it after their own manner, all sorts of Fruit usual among us, and many others, abundance of Wood both on the Hills and Plains. It is plentiful of all sorts of Cattle, and abundantly furnished with Fish. Their Water is thin, the Air wholesom; the Natives are generally long-liv'd, and vigorous to the last; they apply themselves to the use of Arms at 15 Years of Age, and give it not over till sixty.

3. Their Countenance is agreeable, well-shaped, generally large, and they value the greatest Bodies, very strong, and inured to Labour and Hardship: As soon as born they dip the Children in the Water to make them hardy, and as soon as grown to any strength the Boys hunt wild beasts in the Woods. They are more ready at Handy-crafts than the *Europeans*, and their County People  
more

more polished; this makes them the more tenacious of the Christian Faith, because they admit it not till sufficiently convinced.

4. Honour is no less Worshipped among them than their Idols, and they will endure any thing rather than abate in any point of it; this makes them very courteous, they show the same civility to Friends and Enemies, they never swear, Princes punish Subjects and Masters Servants in such manner, as neither has cause to complain, all Differences, though between near Relations, are composed by a third hand to avoid Animosities. To speak ill of the absent, is a Crime to them unknown; so is Play and Theft, and no less begging or borrowing. Poverty, nor any other Misfortune that depends not of the Will, is not looked upon as disgraceful, for they will no way allow Honour to depend upon Fortune.

5. Withal there is no Faith among them, even between Father and Son, but it is a Disgrace for a Man to be open-hearted. Hence it proceeds they commonly Murder one another in their Embraces, Subjects do the same to their Princes, and Servants to Masters. Thus Rebels are caressed by their Sovereigns, for all their study is conveniency; Mothers instead of suckling strangle their Children; some kill themselves to save receiving an Affront; and the Sick have no Relief, for all fly from them, and when dead throw them like Beasts on a Dunghill. They are not only given to Women, but much more to Sodomy.

6. If two happen to lie together, each lays his Head at the other's Feet. Neither Men nor Women wear any thing on their Heads, only the great Men when they travel go under an Umbrello; they mount on Horseback on our off side. Instead of bowing when they meet, they draw back their Foot out of the slipper more or less; when the Inferior sees a Superior he sits down. They value pretious Stones no more than Straws; any piece of Antiquity they esteem at extravagant Rates of what sort soever. The King of *Bango* gave 13000 Crowns for a Vessel among us not worth a Groat. They have the same value for any draught of a famous Master, or for a Blade of a Sword or Hanger.

7. Their Mourning is white, and their festival Apparel black, the same is used by the *Chineses*. The Men varnish their teeth, the Women their hair. Our Musick to them is ungrateful; they delight in those Instruments that make most noise: Their Fish they eat raw, and hate Milk or any thing made of it, calling it unconcocted Blood. Beef or Mutton is never eaten but in the utmost Extremities, as loathsome Vermin among us; the Wheat they make like the *Italians* into *Vermicelli*, or *Macaroni*, and drink Water boil'd with the Herb *Cha* hot, sipping it; this I believe is our Tea. The Service of their Tables differs from ours; the Vessels are all of Gold or Porcelane, for the Silver is all coined into Money. Our sweetest Perfumes are loathsome to them. What would make

us sick is the Diet of their Sick, as Fish salt and raw, Limons and other acids. Bleeding is not used, for they say 'tis a madness to lavish the Treasure of Life, so they call the Blood. Their Purges are sweet and pleasant, the others, they say, and with reason, do but heap misery on the Patient.

8. Though there are many Kingdoms, the Language is the same; but so various, it sounds like many; for they have great variety of Words upon all Occasions: those that are used in serious Discourse serve not to jest, those that are for great Men are not for the meaner, those for the old are not for the young, the same are not for Men as for Women. In Writing they have fourteen different sorts of Characters, all varying not only in form but signification. The Gentry learn to read and write till twelve Years of Age in the Monasteries of the *Bonços*. There is one sort of Character to write to Princes, another to Nobles, another to the meaner sort, and another for Books, of which they have great plenty in Prose and Rhime very elegant and ingenious: Every Character is a Word. Some of our People that understand the Language of *Japan* and *Latin*, avouch the former to be much more copious, beautiful, soft, and compleat in all particulars.

9. All their Buildings, because of the Earthquakes the Island is subject to, are of Wood, but of such Structure, they are no way inferior to the finest in the World. They are whitened with a Plaster made of shells of Fish, which preserves the Wood

from the Weather, and makes the Cities appear most beautiful at a distance. The Tiling is black and of such a nature it will last Five hundred Years. The Curiosity within it not to be paralleled. Hangings are not used, but all the Walls curiously painted with Landskips or Histories of their Ancestors. The floors are covered with fine Mats, and such as go on them wash their Feet first. There are no Chairs nor Bedsteads. On the Beds there are few Cloaths but what they wear by day, but some have coverings of the same Straw as the Mats wrought with Gold.

10. The Poor eat as they can, but always with decency; the Rich with such state of Servants, Musick, Plays, and variety of Dishes, that a whole night is spent in a Supper. They use as many Tables as Dishes, about a span and half high, because they sit on the ground, each Table about half a yard square curiously wrought of Cedar inlaid with Gold and several Colours. There are no Napkins nor Table-cloaths, because they never touch any thing, but feed themselves with little Cipress sticks so artificially that never any thing drops. The Meat is heaped in the Dishes like Pyramids strewed with Gold, the fowl whole, the Beaks and Talons gilt. Their Entertainment is generous and friendly, but so ceremonious, it were better to endure hunger than their Complements.

11. All the cloathing is Silk, thin in Summer, more substantial in Winter, and a set time for all People to alter their Dress. They

They take many Wives, and are easily divorced, yet Adultery is a capital Crime, and the Woman's Relations resent it as hainously as the Husband. The Children are bred as has been said, and at Fifteen have their Sword put on by the *Bonzos* with much Ceremony. Every Man is so absolute over his Children and Servants, he may punish and kill them without being liable to any penalty for it.

---

## C H A P. XI.

*A further Account of Japan.*

1. **T**HILL the Year One thousand there was but one Monarch over all *Japan*, he was called *Huo*, or *Dayri*. He had two *Cucabo's*, or Generals of his Army. At that time one of these killed the other, and rebelled against his Prince. Civil Wars ensuing, several Kingdoms were erected. Every Lord of a Province called himself *Jacata*, that is King. They have four sorts of People, as among us, the *Banzo's* or Clergy, the Nobility, Gentry and Commonalty, these two last pay great respect to the Nobles, who are called *Tonsi*, and, as among us, have the Distinctions of Dukes, Marquises, Earls, &c. The chief Trade is Silver and *China* Silks. In Mechanicks they are excellent. Their Cutlases are so temper'd, they cut through our Armour as if it were Wood.  
Their

Their Lances are longer and lighter, their Musquets and other Arms perfectly good, as is their Powder, their Horse Furniture curious beyond expression. Printing among them, as well as the *Chinese*, is very ancient. All the Land is the King's, and he gives Parcels of it to Noblemen and Gentlemen to serve him in War and Peace, and they give Portions of it to their Servants.

2. The King has power to recall his Grants, and take back his Lands at pleasure, and hereupon it is not counted infamous in the Subject to forsake his Prince, and go over to his Enemy for Profit: So it often happens that Kings are dethroned, and private Men set up. But this does not only happen in *Japan*.

3. No Prince is more difficult of access than those of *Japan*; all Business is done by way of Petition. The People when they see the King, rather adore than reverence him. There is no Prison or juridical proceeding against Criminals, every King, *Tono*, or Master of a Family punishes without any of our Forms. The Punishment is commonly inflicted by Surprise, for none will receive it without resisting. When the King punishes a great Man, he causes his House to be beset with armed Men, and as an Honor gives him leave to kill or defend himself. If he defends himself, there is a Battle between those that are to execute him and his Family; if he kills himself, he makes a cross Wound with a Dagger, and throws it into the Air, to shew he fears neither Heaven

nor Earth. When they are grown in Years, and have Sons of the Age of Eighteen, they give their Estates to them, reserving only some small thing to live upon, and this they do not for love, but to prevent being turned out and dispossessed by them. There is nothing among them but what is purchased and maintained by force of Arms, and so dividing them into five parts, not above the fifth dies a natural Death, the other four by the Sword.

4. In the Reign of *Dayri* sole Monarch of the Island, there rose a *Bonça* with the name of a Prophet, and introduced Sodomy among them, since which time they have never been free from Rebellions, which are the Destruction of *Japan*, to prove God could better endure Idolaters than Sodomites. Of their several sorts of Opinions in Religion enough was said in the Eleventh Chapter of the First Part of this Tome, and somewhat shall be hinted out of a Hebrew Canon in the last Chapter of this same Tome, touching the Preaching of *St. Thomas* the Apostle in this Island. *Bonça* is a common name for all the Ministers deputed to the Service of their Gods, as well *Gamies* as *Fatuques*. Though these differ in Condition and Profession, they agree in three Particulars; the first, a counterfeit Chastity, for it is not lawful for them to Marry; the second, Abstinence from all sorts of Fish and Flesh; and the third, Shaving their Head and Beard, in token they contemn the World.

5. Some

5. Some live in Towns, and have the Charge of the *Varela's* or Temples of the Idols, others in great Monasteries. There are also Monasteries of Women, whom they call *Biconies*, who also profess Chastity, and observe it as ill as the Men. It is wonderful that though both of them be extravagantly Debauched, Proud, Covetous and Cruel, yet on account of their Profession they are held in great Veneration. They had once an infinite number of stately Temples, and even at the time St. *Frãncis Xaverius* went thither, he found Five hundred that had escaped the Fury of their Wars. In one of these is that prodigious Altar on which stand Fifteen hundred Idols of the common Stature of a Man, all gilt and orderly placed in nine rows round a principal one, to whom they seem to make their Court. Every one of these has three Heads and above forty Arms, which the *Bonços* say represent the Power of their Deities. The Silver and Gold Lamps and other rich Gifts presented by Kings and Lords when they go to War, are innumerable. All the City *Hara* is full of Temples; in one of them is the Idol *Xaca* of gilt Metal, and so big, that a Pigeon standing upon its head, can scarce be seen by those who stand at its feet.

6. In these Buildings there are wonderful Columns of Cedar; In one of them there are Ninety-eight of a vast height, and near twenty-three foot in compass, so wrought that none of them could cost less than Five thousand Ducats. The Porches are Forty  
Foot

Foot high, and twenty-five in breadth, on sides of them are Statues of a monstrous bigness with Maces in their Hands, threatning the Devil who lies at their Feet, as *St. Michael* the Archangel is painted among us. All is kept extraordinary clean: In the City *Miaco* all things more Majestick. The Gardens belonging to these Houses are surprising, adorned with variety of Flowers, many whereof seem rather the work of Art than Nature. The Parks, Ponds, Fountains, Birds of several Colours, and variety of wild Beasts not to be molested, are impossible to be described. The Sons of the principal Men put themselves into these Convents. The Colour of their Habits differs according to their several Sects. They wear Beads, and keep Choir, where they sing in the manner of our Psalms; Matins at midnight, other hours at break of Day, and others at Sun rising. They are called together by Bells, whereof they have great number, and of extraordinary grandure. They are rung at certain hours of the day for the People to pray, and they do it in the Evening as we Vespers.

7. Their Galleries before their Cells, their Refectories and other Offices are very large and orderly. The funeral Ceremonies are very stately. They grant Indulgences for the Living and Dead, and for the latter Habits which they say carry them directly to Heaven. There is a commemoration of the Souls departed in the great Feast of their *Gamias* and *F. toques*. They Preach in large  
Pulpit,

Pulpits, and the People is called with a Bell. The Preacher is cloathed in majestic Garments with a gold Fan in his Hand, and moves the Audience with an affected Gravity and Modesty, takes his Text out of their Scripture, and discourfes thereon so efficaciously, that the Hearers burst into Tears, calling upon *Aminda* and *Xaca*, and leaving very consideral Alms, the chief aim of the *Bonzos* passionate Discourse. They study in several Colledges founded by their Kings.

8. They have also a military order, which they call *Nengoros*, consisting of two sorts of *Bonzos*. One (the fewest in number) keep a Choir, and have charge of Idols and Temples; the other follow the Wars, serve any Prince for pay, to the number of Thirty thousand, and are absolute in their own Conquests. Some of them have Estates of Sixty thousand Ducats a Year. Every day they carry five Arrows to the publick Magazine of Arms. They profess Chastity, and admit no Women into their Towns, but make no scruple of committing Sodomy.

9. Over all these Religious Professions is a head *Bonzo* called *Zaco*, who (in the same nature as the Pope) has the disposal of all their Church Dignities, orders all Matters of Religion, and grants Dispensations. The Monasteries chuse their Superiors. The Cities have *Tundos*, answerable to our Bishops, to them all the *Bonzos* are subject, and they grant Power to the Superiors of them to dispence in lesser Matters. The Pontifical Chair is at *Miaco*, is vastly rich

in Revenues, and is in continual War with the Laity about the Succession.

10. Besides those spoke of, there are some remarkable Buildings in *Japan*, but I will only touch upon one Fort. Six Leagues from *Cangoxima* in the Kingdom of *Sacume*, there is a vast high Mountain all of one solid Rock. On the top of it is artificially cut out a Castle with all Apartments equal to any great Palace, defended by ten Bastions, and they encompassed by a large deep Ditch, the whole of one entire piece, as being cut out of the very Rock, in the same manner, as if it had been formed of Clay or Wax. We have already and shall again in its place speak of some such Works in *India*. Let us now go over to *China*.

## C H A P. XII.

*Of the Great Empire of China, and first of its Situation, Division into Provinces, of its Product, Arts and Commerce.*

1. **T**HE Island *Hainan*, the Southermost part of this Empire, is in 19 deg. of North Lat. and the Tartar Wall the utmost Northern bound, in some places exceeds 41 deg. The extent from East to West no less, so that it is not much inferior to all *Europe* in greatness. On the South Coast are abundance of small Islands so near the Continent, they seem to be all one Body.

2. This vast Empire is divided into Fifteen Provinces, each of them formerly a large Kingdom. Most of the Nine they call the Southern Provinces are watered with such large Rivers, that in some of them the opposite Shore is out of sight; they are all Navigable, and such multitudes of Vessels upon them, as seems incredible even to those that are Eye-witnesses. A Passenger in less than an hour counted above Three hundred in only an arm of the River *Mam-quim*. They are curiously built, for round the outside are Galleries for the Seamen to Sail them, without incumbring the middle, so that they are more like Pleasure-houses than Boats, and that also in respect of their Painting, Gilding, and the Spaciousness of their

their several upper and lower Apartments. Those of *Hungeben* exceed all the others.

2. The 6 Northern Provinces being nearer to our Latitude, are much of the same temperature, they are dryer than the others, and more healthy; yet Men are equally long liv'd in all of them, and there are many vigorous old Men; it is so well Peopled, that not only small Towns, but Cities are in sight one of another, and where the Rivers are much frequented, seems a continued Town. They have greater and lesser Cities, Towns, and Castles, which they call *Fu, Cheu, Hien, Chin*, the Villages are innumerable; they are all guarded throughout the Kingdom by Night, as if they were upon a Frontiere; the streets are watched with great diligence.

4. The multitude of People is unexpressible; it is difficult going in the Towns by reason of the concourse, and the Roads are as usually amongus, upon Fairs. According to their general lists there are near 60 Millions of Men, which with Eunuchs, Women and Children are innumerable. The common buildings are not so slightly, and lasting as ours, but well contrived, and clean. They use Painting, and *Charam* with great Art in their structures; *Charam* is a sort of varnish that distils from certain Trees, it mixes with all colours, and is most beautiful as may be seen in many things brought from thence. They build no upper floors, looking upon the low to be more convenient; all neat People have Gardens with Flowers and small Trees; in the North

they use such as bear Fruit, if they have much ground, they plant great Trees, raise Mounts, on which are kept Fowl, as Cranes and Swans, and Beasts; as Deer and others. They also make Ponds in which are black and red Fishes with gilded Scales.

5. They first frame the Roof of the House, then set it upon Pillars, each of them of only one piece of Timber, varnished with *Charam* for the most part black; then they build the Walls of brick, and a sort of plaster like lime which is very hard; they say that formerly they built after our manner, and have still rules of Architecture only observed in publick buildings, as Pallaces and the like; they have many Towers of several forms, all beautiful, from 5 to 9 stories high, with winding stairs and others, and galleries without; their Household stuff is various, curious, and very cheap.

6. This Kingdom being of so great an extent and consequently lying under so many several Climates, produces all sorts of Fruits that the whole Earth affords. Their common sustenance is Rice, and Wheat, whereof they have such plenty, that a *Pico* of either of them, is sold for 5 Royals, and when dearest for 7. A *Pico* is a Hundred and a quarter weight of ours. The Northern Provinces make most use of Wheat and Barley, the Southern of Rice; all other sorts of Grain is plentiful, the Poor use it for Wheat, and it serves to feed Cattle. The commonalty feed on Herbs all the Year, and no other Medicines are found in the Apothecaries Shops.

7. Every Village affords abundance of Meat, the commonest is Pork, Beef is sold without bones, wild Fowl and Beasts not so usual, they have of all sorts except Rabbits; they have Nightingals that sing like ours, but are much bigger; and another sort very beautiful and of delicious taste, they have also all those sorts of birds we see painted on their works; they breed infinite quantities of tame Fowl, the Geese so numerous, they are in vast flocks about the Fields. What is said of their hatching Eggs by art is true, but it is done only in Summer.

8. As for savage beasts they have many, as Tigers, Wolves, &c. but not hurtful; Elephants are brought from abroad; of tame Cattle they have all the same sorts as among us, and use not Oxen for plowing as in *India*, but *Bufalos*. Horses are plentiful but not good; they formerly used Coaches, now Chairs. Their way of Travelling is in Litters, on Mules, or in Chairs carried by 4, 6, or 8 Men, according to every ones ability; they are bigger than ours. In the Cities of *Peking* and *Nanking*, Horses stand in the Streets bridled and saddl'd, to be hired to go about the Town.

9. Fish is not so plentiful in the Northern Provinces, because there are not many Rivers, but much comes from the South salted, and otherwise preserved: Their best fruit is in the Southern Provinces, the best Oranges those of *Quantung*; in *Xeni* there are most Grapes, whereof they make Reasins, but no Wine. In the North they make Drink of

Barley and Rice, in the South of Rice only, it is pleasant to the sight, smell, and taste, and among them Drunkenness is accounted no shame. There are two pleasant and strange fruits, the *Sucu*, a red Apple like an Orange of excellent taste, and is preserved hung up. The *Lequins* of the bigness of an ordinary Pear, shaped like a Heart, in colour like a Strawberry, the inside Pearl colour, in the middle a core very pleasant, but not to be kept.

10. They have all sorts of Flowers, many unknown to us, and keep them all the Year, some grow in the dead of Winter, when the leaves are fallen off the Plants: these are called *Lamui*, and are more agreeable to the smell than sight, being yellow like wax.

11. Their Apparel, Beds, and other furniture, is made of Wollen, Linnen, Silk, and Cotton, of which they have abundance, and work it curiously; *Cbina* supplies strangers with the richest commodities of the East, as Gold in thread, beaten, and in bars, Rubies, Zafires, Pearl, Musk, Silk raw, and wrought; Porcelane, Quick-silver, Copper, Tinn, Tortoise-shell, Vermillion, Salt Peter, and Sulphur, Sugar and other things of less value. Their gilding either for use or curiosity is well known; the vilest things are not lost among them. The Kingdom is rich, but not private Persons; there are not so many rich Men as in *Europe*, nor so many Poor; few possess very much, many have plenty, and scarce any want.

12. Money is scarce as may appear by the price of all things, Servants wages, hire of Work-men, and allowances to Ministers of State. A pound of Mutton is worth a half penny, a Pidgeon not a farthing, a Man's wages not above a Crown a Year; some things alter the Prizes but all are reasonable, and much about these rates.

## C H A P. XIII.

*Of the Provinces into which China is divided.*

1. **T**His vast Empire is divided into two parts, the Northern, and the Southern, and they into 15 Provinces. To the Southern part belong 9, which are *Quantung*, *Quansi*, *Yunnan*, *Fokien*, *Kiangsi*, *Suchuen*, *Huquang*, *Cbekiang*, and *Nanking*. *Quantung* is the most Southerly, and lies between 20 and 25 deg. of lat. it is large and Rich, and abounds in Wheat and Rice, of the latter, though differing in kind, the Earth gives two crops a Year. Here is much Sugar, Iron, Copper, and Tin, all which are wrought with great perfection, as also the works of *Charam* and gildings brought to us. The People are very ingenious at handicrafts, easily imitate what they see, but are not good at invention. Our Merchants repair twice a Year to the Capital City *Quangchen*,

75 Leagues distant from *Macao*, and *Macao* is 18 from the Islands, and is about 5 Leagues in circumference. This is the most frequented Port of the whole Kingdom. The *Portugues* alone export hence Yearly, 52500 Chests of Silks, 22000 bars of Gold, each weighing 12 Ounces, 7 Picos of Musk, which is 8 Hundred and three quarters. Pearl, Sugar, Porcelane, *China* wood, Roubarb. and other lesser commodities in vast quantity. The Island *Haynan* belongs to this Province, about it is a great Fishery of Pearl, it is well Peopled on the Northern Coast, on the Southern is a Town that owns no subjection to any body. It produces several sorts of precious Wood.

2. On the N. E. side of *Quantung* lies the Province of *Quangsi*, between 23 and 27 deg. of lat. it differs not from the other in any thing considerable. That of *Yunnan* to the Eastward in the same lat. is the farthest from the Center of *China*, 'tis large but not rich, its principal Commodity being Amber for Beads, and such uses. Here contrary to the custom of all the rest of the Kingdom, the Women go abroad to buy and sell. On the other side of *Quantung* to the E. N. E. is the Province of *Fokien* between 24 and 28 deg. of lat. it is for the most part Mountainous; the Natives contrary to the general Law, travel and trade abroad: It yields Gold, Sugar, Hemp, and Paper of several sorts; the goodness, plenty, and cheapness of it very remarkable. Printing here is very cheap, and as Ancient, as shall be mentioned hereafter,

hereafter, it is not done with loose letters as among us, but cut in Wood, so that the Original remains; there are an infinite number of Printing Houses, every one may Print what he pleases without a Licence, and notwithstanding this liberty, they never publish any scandalous or immodest Book. This Province lies on the Sea, and thence are exported infinite quantities of Merchandize for *Manila*, *Japan*, and the Island *Formosa*, which is in sight; the Dutch trade here.

3. The Province of *Kiangsi* lies North of *Quamung*, between 25 and 30 deg. of lat. It is hemm'd in with great Mountains, from which fall two Rivers, one running to the Southward, all the way Navigable; another to the Northward, which after running through great part of this Province, receives another great one coming from the Province of *Huquang*, and is the famous *Kiang*. The feet of these Mountains are adorn'd with good Cities at convenient distances for travellers, and carrying of goods, which are generally on Men's backs, and the concourse is incredible; the Innkeepers give an account of all that comes in to their Houses, and are obliged to give two Meals to all such Passengers, having other ways to be payed; every Man carries his own Bed, for the lodgings find nothing but bedsteads. In the Custom-house, which is here very great, they do not visit the goods, but take every Mans word, and the Duties are very easy; a traveller that is no Merchant, is Custom-free; the strangers that come to *Macao*, pay according to

the Tunnage of their Vessels without searching.

4. This Province is so populous they miscall it *Laocha*, that is little Mice, because they spread all over the Kingdom, serving all sorts of Trades, particularly Taylors; they are very Poor; the Province has abundance of Rice and Fish; it is famous for large Soles, but more for Porcelane. The Clay 'tis made of, is only found in one Village, and in another place the Water to work it, for if they use any other, it proves not so good. In this work there is none of the mystery generally represented to us, it is meer Clay, but of a most rare quality; it is wrought after the same manner, as ours, in the same time, and of all colours. This Province *Fokien* and *Quantung* meet in an Angle formed of many Mountains, among which is a small Kingdom, the King whereof owes no obedience to him of *China*; they allow the use of Phisitians in sickness, but of no Lawyers in their suits. If any scarcity happen, they go a Robbing in the nature of open War.

5. The Province of *Suchuen* is much in the same Latitude, and has nothing singular; that of *Huquang* is in the same lat. more plentiful of Rice than any; has much Oyl, and Fish in its great Rivers, and Lakes like Seas. The Province *Chekiang* lies between 27 and 32 deg. upon the Sea, is plain and fruitful, and watered with many Rivers, some whereof run through the Towns; it is much Richer than the others, particularly in Silk, which is exported only from thence. *Hang-*

*chen* is the Metropolis, the most populous of *China*, so delicious and pleasant, that it is a Proverb, *Glory in Heaven, and Hangcheu on Earth.* Three things make it most famous, the Lake called the rarest in the World, about two Leagues in compass, beset round with curious Pallaces, and they with delightful Hills, the Water runs in at one end, and out at the other, across it are set Dogs of Stone for People to go over upon, many Vessels ply about it, some very large, being built for pleasure and feasting, with Kitchens fore and aft, in the Midship rooms with Tables, above floors for Women, the windows covered with close nets, that they may not be seen, all painted and gilded; the abundance of Meat in them is wonderful, in these many spend what they have. The second thing famous, is the Silk, and manner of working it; the third, the worship of their Idols, and magnificence of their Temples.

6. The last of these 9 Southern Provinces is *Nanking*, between 29 and 36 deg. of lat. the best in the whole Kingdom. It permits no Foreign Trade, the Merchants, to enhance the value of their goods, say, they are of *Nanking*; in only the Town of *Xanbam*, 'tis said, there are 200000 loomes for Cotton, which yearly yield the King 450000 Ducats. The Court long resided here, and all the tribunals and priviledges of a Court still remain in the capital City called (as my Author will have it;) *Ymbiensu*, but I find it is  
by

by all others named *Kiangning*. This City is the best in the Kingdom for sumptuous buildings, spacious streets, trade, and abundance of all things; it has twelve stately Gates well defended with Canon, without the walls runs another, at a great distance much ruined; the outward circumference will take up a Horseman two Days journey, travelling a good pace, the inward is 6 Leagues; between the two walls are buildings and tillage, the crop whereof is appropriate to the Souldiery that reside within, to the number of 40000 In one quarter of the Town is a Mount and thereon a spear of a vast bigness, of curious workmanship, but stands not on a frame; there is also a rare Tower 7 stories high with all appurtenances made of Porcelane, a most wonderful work. The River runs by the foot of it, called according to my Author *Yamcuquiam*, by all others I find it named *Kiang*; but *Yamcuquiam* signifies Son of the Sea, because it is one of the greatest in the World, and may perhaps for brevity generally be called *Quiam* or *Kiang*; it has great store of Fish.

7. The Northern Provinces are 6, their names *Honan*, *Xensi*, *Xansi*, *Xantung*, *Peking*, and *Leantung*. The first lies between 32 and 37 deg. of lat. and produces the most delicious fruit, which is prodigiously cheap, so that One hundred of Apricocks is worth about half a Farthing. A Prince lives here in as great state as the King.

8. The Province *Xensi* lies to the Eastward of the last in near the same Latitude; it is large but dry, as the three next to it; bears little Rice, much Barley, common and *Indian* Wheat. Their Sheep are shorn three times a Year, Spring, Summer and Autumn, but the first shearing is the best. The Wool serves for Hats and such like work, but is not fit to spin. The Goat's Hair is spun, and of it they weave Stuffs richer than of Silk, but it is only of a sort of Down that grows next the Skin under the long Hair. This Province yields Musk, which grows in the Navel of a Beast like a little Deer, the Flesh whereof is eaten. The Purses brought hither are not all the same in which it grows, because the Musk mixed with other Drugs is too much to be contained by them only, and so Purses are made for it of the Skin. Scarce any Musk comes over pure. Here is also some Gold gathered, but in Rivers, for the Mines of it and Silver are not open. Most of the Rhubarb in the World seems to come from hence; for that which is brought from *Persia* cannot be of the Product of that Country, because none that have travelled there relate they ever saw this Herb grow there. It grows high and bears Leaves bigger than those of Cabbage, requires much care, and grows not wild, as some would have it.

9. This is a Province of great Trade, for the numerous Caravans, some of above One thousand Men, which repair to its two Western Cities, *Sochen* and *Xanchen*. In them  
come

come Ambassadors from the Mahometan Princes to the King of *China*, every three Years is an ordinary Embally, and every fifth one extraordinary, they always bring Presents. The Princes are, the *Turk*, the *Arabs*, *Camul*, *Samarcan*, and *Tarsan*, but none of them, except the last, know any thing of these Embassies or Presents, the Merchants do it at their own cost for the more security of their Trade. The Present consists of a quantity of precious Stones, Three hundred and forty Horses, Three hundred small Sparks of Diamonds, some fine Blew, Six hundred Knives, and as many Files. The King returns for each Horse two pieces of Cloath of Gold; Thirty of yellow Silk, Thirty Pounds of *Cha*, Ten of Musk, Fifty of a Medicine called *Tienyo*, and Fifty of Silver.

10. *Cha* (which I suppose to be our *Tea*) is the Leaf of a Tree like Myrtle, in some places bigger than others, they dry it in Iron Pots over the Fire, and so it runs up together. There is of it from a Ducat the Pound to less than a Halfpenny, such is its variety. It is their common drink steeped in hot Water, with it they treat Strangers, and relate many Virtues of it.

11. The Province of *Xansî* lies between 36 and 42 deg. of Lat the many Mountains make it barren, therefore bears little Wheat, less Rice, and most of *Indian* Wheat; it supplies the Kingdom with Resins. Here are Wells of Fire for the use of Houses, like those of Water in other Parts. They make

make small Mouths, and over them boil any thing. They have Coal-Pits as in *England*. The Province of *Xantung* lies between 35 and 38 deg. of Lat. it is poor, subject to Locusts, and often to Famine. It bears a sort of Apples which is carried over most of the Kingdom.

12. The Province of *Peking* between 36 and 42 degrees of Latitude, is now honoured with the Court in the City of the same name, but more properly *Xunthienfu*, or *Xuntien*; the *Moors* call it *Cambalud*. The People (as all those of the North) are not so ingenious, but more laborious and warlike. The Land dry and healthy, but barren; yields *Indian Corn*, but little Rice or Wheat. The Rice used at Court comes from *Nanking*, it is pleasant only boiled in Water without any other Addition. The King keeps One thousand Sail that trade to the South for Provisions. This Province sends abroad no Commodities but Pensils and Perfumes. The City is not so large as *Nanking*, but far exceeds it in populousness: The Walls are so thick, twelve Horsemen ride abreast on them; they are guarded with as much care in Peace as War. At the Gates are Officers to receive the Duty of all things brought in, and that belongs to the Queen.

13. The Magistrates of this City have but very little State in their Persons and Houses, only the chief of them can go in Chairs, the others on Horseback. All People have their Faces covered along the Streets

Streets to avoid the Dust, but more to save the Ceremonies to *Mandarines*. The Cold is more violent here than could be expected in that Latitude. The River and Lakes are froze over, so that they bear. They use a sort of Stoves that conveys the heat underneath which serve in their Gardens, and anticipate the Spring.

14. The last Northern Province is *Leao-tung*, famous for a precious Medicinal Root it produces, which adds strength and vigour to such as are in Health, and gives great comfort to the Sick. This being the *Tartar* Frontier, is much ruined, and in part possessed by them. Along it runs that so famous Wall for the space of Three hundred Leagues, of great Renown, but little use; for notwithstanding it the Enemy breaks in at pleasure. In all these Provinces there are Four hundred forty four Cities, and Eleven hundred and fifty Towns of Note; the others are not to be numbred. Thus much of the Soil, Product and Division of *China*.

## C H A P. XIV.

*Of the People of China, their Customs, Inclinations and Studies.*

I. **T**HE People of *China* are white, the more Northward the whiter; both Men and Women suffer their Hair to grow to its full length; it is generally black, and they therefore called by some Nations, The black haired People. Their Eyes are commonly black and small, their Noses little, they look upon ours as deformed, their Beards thin, the black esteemed most beautiful; it is never cut, but they had rather it should all fall off than one hair of the head. They take great pains in dressing it, and have many Barbers who never cut but only serve to order it.

2. They are handsomest whilst very young, particularly in the South. The Women of *Quanchu* are counted the most beautiful, thence the great Men have their Concubines. The Men, as they grow above twenty-five Years of Age loose their Colour, but not so much of their Features, yet grow ugly; they are well made, strong, and inclined to Labour. In Tillage they are very industrious, sometimes plowing with a Plow of three Coulters that makes as many Furrows, and on it carry a Tray with a hole, through which Kidneys-Beans drop, and the Ground is sowed at once; other Grain

is sowed after Plowing. Often he that drives a Beast loaded carries a burden.

3. Nothing that can be of use is lost. There are often seen many Vessels loaden with only Weeks for Candles taken out of the heart of a Russh. Others that carry nothing but Paper for Privies, which must have no Letter upon it, esteeming it a Sacrilege to put any such to that use. They are naturally Merchants. About the Street is sold by Retail, whatever is by Wholesale in Shops. Children sell small things that no Age may be idle. In matters of trust they are most faithful, but in selling the cunningest of Cheats. They will dig out the Flesh of a Fowl, make it up again, and sell the Skin and Bones as an entire Bird; they counterfeit Gammons of Bacon, so that it is hard to discover the Fraud. In fatning, colouring and patching up of old, lame and unsound Horses, none equal them.

4. They are much addicted to Chimistry, and believe he that finds the way to make Silver, has a sure Receipt for to live long. Old Men they think have found out this Receipt, and therefore some will maintain them only in hopes to learn it, and others make themselves gray only to get a maintenance that way.

5. They are affable and courteous, treat Strangers with Civility, give them the upper-hand, lend them Money upon Pawns, but without Use, though they exact it from their own Kindred and Friends, even in Prisons, where the Scum of Nations is, they  
 shew

shew Compassion towards them. All that are condemned to Death are beheaded, or strangled, any other Death is accounted Cruel; when many are condemned, only four or five die, the rest remain in Prison. Humility and Chastity are Virtues held in great account. They raise triumphant Arches in Honour of Chast Women, and bestow publick Encomiums on them.

6. Where they use Ceremony it is endless, but among Friends and Kindred none is used. They are so grave and staid, that no Accident whatsoever can discompose Men of Quality; so that mortal Enemies meet at Feasts without altering their Countenance. They lessen themselves to extol Foreigners, and commend all the Works of *Europe*, even to undervaluing their own. Their curious Workmanship may be seen by what comes from thence, which is never the best or curiousest. They are incomparable at working of Ivory, Ebony, Coral, and Amber, and most exquisite in Gold and Silver. A gold Chain of their making has been seen that had Three hundred Links, and did not weigh seven Ounces, their Gold thread is not so fine as ours. No Vessels of Siver are used, but only porcelane; they have learned to make Clocks to stand on Tables.

7. They are of most ready Wits, whereof I will give one Instance. A Visitor General being long in a Province without executing his Employ, a Friend of his enquiring into the Reason, found he had lost the Seal,

without which no Business could be dispatched; and, knowing the Governor was his Enemy, he advised him to set Fire to his own Palace at Night, and when the Governor came, as of course he must, to see it put out, then to deliver to him the Box in which the Seal is kept, saying, He could in that danger only trust him with the Royal Seal: That if it was the Governor who had caused the Seal to be stole, he would certainly restore it, because of the trust reposed in him, which if he did not, the World would believe it was lost in his Custody; this was put in Execution, and next day the Governor restored the Box with the Seal in it.

8. Their Cloaths, as was before said, are made of Woollen, Linnen, Silk, or Cotton. Two hundred Years before Christ they wore short Sleeves (as the *Japans* descended from them still do) and the fashion lasted while the famous Family of *Honan*, for Four hundred Years, then it was altered to what is used to this Day, is the same throughout the Kingdom, and cannot be changed without the King's leave. The Habit reaches from the Neck to the feet open before, even to the inward Garments without Buttons; but folding over, the Sleeves large and open like those of a Monk's Cool. For a Band they wear a piece of white Taffety a handful broad, which the better sort as soon as soiled throw away. Young Folks wear all Colours, the Commonalty and all Servants black, old Men grave Colours, such as are or have been

Gover-

Governors on Festivals the finest red. The rich change Apparel four times a Year, the poor sort twice.

9. Till seventeen Years of Age they wear the short Hair loose, the rest knotted on the top of the Head. After that Age it is put into a Net of Horsehair with a Cap over it; that of the Lawyers square, the others round; it is made either of Silk or Horsehair, but in Winter of Felt. Much Ceremony is used at the time they first put on the Net. The Rich wear Shoes of Silk, the Poor of Cotton, differing from ours in fashion and costly; Leather is only used for Boots, which are rare. In the same manner the Rich wear Stockins of Damask, or other soft Silk, the meaner Sort of Cotton, but all white. Breeches are common to Men and Women. The latter dress their Hair with Flowers, natural or artificial, except the common Women, who are not allowed to use them, nor to live within the Walls.

10. The Apparel of Men and Women is the same in all other Points; but these have Feet less than can be imagined, and to make them so, they swath them hard from their Infancy. The Custom was taken from a Queen, who having deformed Feet endeavoured by that means to bring them into shape.

11. The Women are very retired, none of any Age is seen in the Street, no Men visit them in their Houses, nor presume to enter into their Apartments. Servants have admittance only whilst very young, Brother

or Father-in-law on no account. The ordinarieſt Women go abroad in Chairs. If they happen to go a foot on account of any Pilgrimage, they cover their Faces: If they travel in Boats, they paſs by each other, without ſpeaking one word. Yet in ſome parts of this great Empire, Women go abroad, but ſuch as are of Quality always after this manner.

12. The Language is thought to be one of the 72 of *Babel*; by their Books it appears to be of Four thousand Years ſtanding. It is called *Quembra*, or the Language of *Mandarines*, becauſe as they ſpread their Command they introduced it, and it is uſed through all the Empire, as Latin in *Europe*. It is very barren, and as it has more Letters far than any other, ſo it has fewer Words, for there are not above 326 that abſolutely differ, and of thoſe that only vary in accent and aſpiration 1228; moſt end in Vowels, the reſt in *M* and *N*: They are all Monſyllables, all indeclinable, as well Verbs as Nouns; ſo contrived, that often a Noun ſerves for a Verb, and the contrary, and ſometimes for an Adverb. Thus it is eaſier to be learned than Latin. It is moſt compendious, and therefore the moſt grateful to the *Chineſes*. It is rather ſweet than harſh, and ſpoke as they do at *Nanking* pleaſing to the Ear, very full of reſpectful Terms. To bid one take a thing in his hand, among us we repeat the Verb take, which they do not, each word ſignifies the Verb and Manner, *Nien*, is to take with two Fingers; *Tſo*, to take

take with them all; *Chua*, with the whole hand downwards; *Teie*, with it opened upwards. So in other Verbs: A Man's Foot they call *Kio*; a Birds, *Chua*; a Beasts, *Tbi*.

13. They use a different Stile in Writing and Speaking; the Letters are as ancient as the Language. They all know them, but not all by the same Name. The Author of them (they say) was *Fohi*, one of their first Kings; at first they were fewer in number, plainer, and in some measure like what they expressed: There are now four sorts of Letters. The ancient still used in Books and by Lawyers, but only for Titles and Seals instead of Crests. The second called *Chicun*, the most generally used. The third *Taipie*, little practised but on Fans, in Letters and Prologues. The fourth, a sort of short hand.

14. There are Sixty thousand Letters; But they use Abbreviations, so that 'tis enough to know Ten thousand to write, read and be learned. If they meet any that is not known, they turn to a Book like our Dictionary, and find it: Only nine strokes serves to form all this multitude of Letters; but several Letters and perfect Figures are joined to signifie different things. This stroke — stands for one, crossed with another stroke it stands for ten, another stroke being drawn under the lower point it signifies the Earth; with another at the top, a King; adding a prick on the left hand between the two first points, a precious Stone; with Dashes before, a Pearl; and all Letters that

G B 3

signifie

signifie precious Stones, must have this last mark; all that signifie Trees must have the Letter that is for Wood adjoined, and so of other things.

15. Good Writing is valued above the best Painting. All written Paper is looked upon as Sacred; if it lies on the Ground they take it up carefully. The manner of Writing is downwards from the top to the bottom, and from the Right towards the Left-hand, as the *Hebrews* and all the People of the *East*. If a word of Respect, as your Lordship, or the like, fall in the middle of a Line, they write not forward, but begin the next Line, because it is not esteemed Manners to join any word to those; if they write the Name of God, it is set above the rest of the Line.

16. They once writ on the Rine of the Barks of Trees, with Iron points, as also on Plates of Metal, which now are highly esteemed. Paper has been invented among them Two thousand Years, and is of so many sorts, and so plentiful, that there is as much in *China* as all the World besides, for goodness none to compare to it. The most usual in Printing, and plentifullest, is made of a Tree (called by them *Cho*, by the *Indians Bombo*) made in the same manner as ours, but the best is of Cotton Rags. Instead of Pens they use Pensils of several sorts of Hair, but the Hares is best: There are no Ink-horns but Stones on which the Ink is ground, as Colours among us; it is also sold in Rags in the nature as we have Spanish Wool, but the

the best is Lamp-black, and they that make it are not accounted Mechanicks.

17. Printing has been used by them Sixteen hundred Years, we said before it was all carved on Wood. The Author writes his Book in the size it must be published, and every Leaf is pasted on a Board, and graved exactly as he writ it; therefore they write and print only upon one side of the Paper, so that every Leaf consists of two, for the Books are sewed along the edges of the Paper, not the middle as we do, the Blanks remain within, and the two Leaves pass as one; the best Wood for this use is Pear-tree. When they would have the Paper black and Letters white, they are carved in Stone, because in the Stone the Letters are cut into the Superficies, and in Wood they make the Superficies. That manner of Printing is only used for Epitaphs, Paintings, Trees, Mountains, and such like things, which are preserved with respect, and are lasting Memorials.



## C H A P. XV.

*A Continuation of the same Subject.*

1. **F**ROM their Childhood they apply themselves to study, the first Books they read are Morals, then the classick Authors which are entirely learned by Heart, next the Masters exposition, who looks not on the Book when he teaches. The Coppies for writing are laid under the Paper, and the learner draws by it, the Paper being transparent. From letters they proceed to composition, such as are approved of are Printed every 3 Years, and learners study them. There are no Universities, every Master teaches all that is requisite for a man to know, as well in learning, as manners and behaviour. The Disciples of quality never go any where without the Master; there are many Schools for the common sort, but no Master can take more Schollars than he can teach himself, for he is not to trust to another. Their Days of recreation are the first 15 in the Year; and some others, but few in the 5th and 7th Moqn. The Masters that serve in great Houses Eat at their patrons Table.

2. They have large and stately Halls, richly adorned, where they examine students, whereof there are great numbers in every City and Town, but chiefly in the Metropolis

polis of Provinces, where they take their Degrees. These buildings for the most part are all of the same form, some bigger than others, but all large; the greatest of our Pallaces is not equal to the least of them, in every one is an infinite number of little rooms, where such as are to be examined, compose each by himself, with a Soldier to attend him, that the more learned may not help the ignorant. The Hall of *Quantung* which is the least, has 6000 of these Cels and the number of students is greater.

3. There attend all the time of the examination, Presidents, Magistrates, Examiners, Clerks, and all sorts of Trades, and all that are there are maintained ind yet and lodging the whole time upon the publick charge. The Order and disposition of all things is much to be admired, formerly Gentlemen were not admitted to take any degree, because not employed in the Government, but they perceiving that only the learned rose, obtained though with difficulty, to be admitted to both; such as are any way infamous, cannot take a degree: The degrees are 3 answerable to ours of Bachelor, Master of Arts, and Doctor; the Chancellor goes about the Towns and Cities to examine the first, the second is done in the Metropolis of each Province, once in 3 Years, in each of these Acts there are above 7000 students, and above 1500 take the degree of Master of Arts. The Doctors are only made at Court, on a sudden

den a Bricklayer or Taylor is set up in state, the marks of this dignity are given them and are a Cap, Gown, Tassels, and Boots, all put on with much Ceremony. The King defrays the whole charge, and every one that takes this degree, stands him in 1000 Ducats.

4. Of those that go to the Court to take their degree, 350 are admitted to that of Doctors; the marks of that honour (except the Boots which are the same in all) differ very much in the value, besides those mentioned, they have a girdle, they wear them all in the employments they get, and the last is still richer, as they are preferred. There is another examination at which the King used to be present, now a *Colao* supplies his place; after it they go to salute the King, who is on his Throne, and gives with his own hand, a *premium* to each of the three first presented; the first of the 3 is superior over all the others, and has a particular name, as has the second and third; this is so great an honour, that soon after the whole Kingdom knows them by those names, and their degree of honour is equal to our Dukes. Out of the 350 are chosen 25, who have Pallaces assigned them, and are subject to the *Colao* that is president of the great College, of him they learn the speculative part of Government. Hence they are preferred to employments superior to Viceroy-ships, only such as are of that College, are admitted to the supream dignity of

of *Colas*: when one of these 25 Doctors is made a Mandarin, ( especially if he be one of the three presented by the King ) there is erected to him in his own Country a triumphal Arch all of Marble, and very stately, with his name on the front.

5. Nothing can be said distinctly of their Sciences, because in reality they know no distinction. Three of their Kings were the masters of the Moral and Speculative learning, under mystical numbers and Symbols, they were also the Legislators. Above 1000 Years before Christ, two other Kings composed the book called *Yequim*, being a comment upon those Symbols; then followed Philosophers, like the Stoicks. The most famous *Confucius* composed 9 Books, which are esteem'd ( chiefly 5 of them ) like our Holy writ, many Doctors comment upon them; he flourished 500 Years before Christ, and aimed at the Reformation of Mankind, and is held in veneration as the universal Master, and a Saint, with Temples dedicated to him. The Government of the City where he was born, remains in his Family; the immediate successor has the title, revenue, and state of a Duke; they are all as soon as born held in great veneration.

6. The 5 principal Books are, *Yequim* that treats of natural Philosophy, fate and predictions; the second, *Xuquim* of Chronology; the third, *Xiquim* Poetically discourses of the Nature of things and Human Affections; the fourth, *Liquim* of Divine Worship; the fifth, *Chunien*, Examples of good and bad Kings.

Kings. There are 4 other Books of the same Author, and another called *Mençur*, that treat of Physicks and Morals; out of these is taken a subject for the compositions of such as are examined; there are also 9 Books of Comments upon those, but only one of them is established by Law.

7. They consider 3 principal objects in the World, Heaven, Earth, and Man, and accordingly their learning is divided into 3 Sciences; that of Heaven treats of the Original of all things; that of the Earth, of its position, product and variety; that of Man, of his manners and affections, to whom they ascribe 5 Moral Virtues, Piety, Justice, Policy, Prudence, and Felicity, respecting 5 Orders of Persons in the Common-wealth, Father, and Son, Husband and Wife, King and Subject, elder and younger Brother, and friends among themselves.

8. They have rules of Grammar, understand Rhetorick, are well skilled in Arithmetick, and have knowledge of Geometry, but know nothing of Dialectica, and Algebra; Astronomy is a profession only allowed to two Persons to study, one in each Court, and they leave it hereditary to their Sons; they reckon 5 Elements, Water, Metal, Fire, Wood, and Earth, and appropriate to them as many Planets, *Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn*. The *Zodiack* they divide into 24 Signs, the Year into 12 Moons, and 354 Days, making a Bissextile every three Years of 13 Moons and 383 Days; it begins with the next Moon to the 5th of *February*. Their  
Musick

Musick consists all of one sound, the *Bonnes* sing after the manner of our plain Song, their Instruments are of several sorts, for the most part noisy, and some like ours, such as are played upon strings, have them of Silk.

9. Poetry was always much esteemed in *China*; all that was published of this sort, used to be sent to the King, they never write any thing reflecting, or immodest, nor have any letter to express the private parts, so that they are never mentioned in any writing, their Verses are in Rhime. Their Painting was without Oyl, or shadows, till they knew and imitated us, and draw well by the life. Their skill in Physick is the greatest, they have ancient Authors that treat of it, ours are there unknown; bleeding, Cupping, Sirrups, Glisters, Issues, nor Potions, are not used there, but only Pills. All the Medicines are simples, as Herbs, Roots, Fruit and Seeds, all dry, and therefore their Apothecaries have no pots; the Doctors write no receipts, but bring along with them a case with all Medicines in good order, and compound them before the Patient; their judgment in the Pulse is singular, they ask no questions of the Sick, but give themselves an account of the Disease, and apply the Remedy; their Cures are singular, not but that there are some ignorant among them.

10. In ceremonies they are impertinent, the manner is to bow the Head to the ground, if to a greater Person, they kneel and bow in like manner, in some cases they rise again and repeat it at least 3 times, commonly 4,

to the King 9. Particular garments are used for visiting, unless among familiar friends; if they meet, and one has the garment on, and the other not, he immediately puts it on, for a servant carries it; it is generally black, Doctors, Magistrates, and Gentlemen that wear the habit of Doctors, are excused from wearing of it.

11. The King when he does reverence to his Idols or Mother, holds before his Face a piece of Ivory, a span and half long, and about 4 Fingers broad, all that speak to him use the same ceremony. If two Mandarines in the street cannot avoid meeting without stopping their Chairs, they joyn their hands, and carry them leisurly to their Heads bowing them, which is done as soon as they see one another, and repeated till they be passed by; if one be inferior to the other, he stops the Chair, or in case he be on Horseback, alights and makes a profound reverence; if they are not Mandarines, they make the usual compliments, if common People they joyn hands, carry them to the Forehead shaking. Servants in great Houses do not bow to their Lords, but at the new Year, or when he has been absent, their sign of respect is to stand upright with their Arms hanging down; Mandarines servants speak to them on their knees, to give or receive any thing with one hand is not courteous betwixt equals, and very rude from inferors to superiors.

12. In their visits they use the *Thie*, which is a long piece of Paper made like a Fan, the breadth

breadth is proportionable to the quality of the Person from one to 16 sheets, the *Colaos* use the least; only one line is writ upon it, and contains 9 letters between friends, among others 6, or 7, the purport of them to this effect, \**Your great friend and perpetual Disciple of your Doctrin,* (here enters the name) *kisses your hand, and comes to do you reverence.* This Paper is in a purse of the same, and that in another made close and curious.

13. The visiter himself carries this Paper and gives it the Porter, who delivers it to his Master; if he receives the visit and not the *Thie*, he is not obliged to pay it, but if it is left only with the Porter, he pays the visit. Great Men, as *Colaos*, *Mandarines*, and Viceroyes seldome visit any body, but as they pass by the Doors, leave their *Thies*; when they will not receive visits, they set up a Paper over the Door specifying, they are not in Town; all visits are made in the morning, and they always treat with Sweetmeats or Fruit, or at least Drink that is *Cha*.

14. When any one is to absent himself for a time, all friends visit and present him, and he is bound at his return to send presents to all that sent him any; they never visit the Sick, but inquire at the Door of their Health; the Person visited sets the *Chairs* himself, and wipes them with his sleeve, all the visitors do the same with his. If there be no distinction of superiority, they take their places according to Age, the Person visited the last; as soon as seated, the *Chá* is brought  
and

and they all Drink. When one speaks of himself, it is with great humility, if they speak of the Son to the Father, they do not say your Son, but the Noble Son; if of the Daughter, the pretious Love; if they inquire about the Sick, they say, How goes the illustrious Sickness; speaking of themselves they do not say, I, but the Schollar, the Disciple, and Persons of mean profession, as a Carryer, they call The great Rod; the Person visited waits upon the visiter to the street, and they part with impertinent Ceremonies, then send Messages to and fro, as if they had not seen one another.

15. They often send presents of Shooes, Stockins, Linnen, Porcelane, Ink, Pencils, and Eatable things of the best. With the present goes a *Tbie*, being a list of the things sent; it is no ill manners to send back all or part; some only send the list of things they design to present, naming very many, as knowing all will not be accepted, and he it is sent to, marks down what he will accept of, others send all the things which are only hired, and so restore what is sent back and pay for the rest; he that receives is obliged to return a present.

16. They use many banquets, which are very costly and last long. There are neither Napkins nor Knives on the Tables, because they Eat as was said of the *Japoneses*, but sitting on Chairs and at high Tables and round them hang cloths in the manner of Pulpit cloths, Dinner is at 7 in the morning, Supper at Evening or Night; upon these

these occasions the Rooms are adorned as our Churches on Holidays; all the time of Eating, there is Musick and Plays acted, some will go to four or more Feasts in one Day; they seem to be of the Opinion of let us Eat and let us Drink, for to morrow we shall Die.

---

## C H A P. XVI.

*Of the Marriages, Burials, Ceremonies, Sacrifices, and belief of the Chineses.*

1. **T**HE *Chineses* have used an indissoluble form of Marriage, by joyning of hands for above 3000 Years; they also allow of Concubines, which are taken after another manner, and commonly bought. They may part when they please, but till they have Children, are servants to the Wife, their Children call her Mother, and do not put on Mourning for them. When the Man dies, the Wife and Children retain the command of the House, and if she dies, the Concubine succeeds; Widdows may marry again, but are more esteem'd if they do not. In choosing Wives they have respect to good qualities, but for Concubines, beauty or good humour.

2. They cannot marry into the Fathers kindred, though many degrees removed, nor with any of the surname, for fear of

H h                      kindred,

and they all Drink. When one speaks of himself, it is with great humility, if they speak of the Son to the Father, they do not say your Son, but the Noble Son; if of the Daughter, the pretious Love; if they inquire about the Sick, they say, How goes the illustrious Sickness; speaking of themselves they do not say, I, but the Schollar, the Disciple, and Persons of mean profession, as a Carryer, they call The great Rod; the Person visited waits upon the visiter to the street, and they part with impertinent Ceremonies, then send Messages to and fro, as if they had not seen one another.

15. They often send presents of Shooes, Stockins, Linnen, Porcelane, Ink, Pencils, and Eatable things of the best. With the present goes a *Tbie*, being a list of the things sent; it is no ill manners to send back all or part; some only send the list of things they design to present, naming very many, as knowing all will not be accepted, and he it is sent to, marks down what he will accept of, others send all the things which are only hired, and so restore what is sent back and pay for the rest; he that receives is obliged to return a present.

16. They use many banquets, which are very costly and last long. There are neither Napkins nor Knives on the Tables, because they Eat as was said of the *Japoneses*, but sitting on Chairs and at high Tables and round them hang cloths in the manner of Pulpit cloths, Dinner is at 7 in the morning, Supper at Evening or Night; upon these

these occasions the Rooms are adorned as our Churches on Holidays; all the time of Eating, there is Musick and Plays acted, some will go to four or more Feasts in one Day; they seem to be of the Opinion of let us Eat and let us Drink, for to morrow we shall Die.

---

## C H A P. XVI.

*Of the Marriages, Burials, Ceremonies, Sacrifices, and belief of the Chineses.*

1. **T**HE *Chineses* have used an indissoluble form of Marriage, by joyning of hands for above 3000 Years; they also allow of Concubines, which are taken after another manner, and commonly bought. They may part when they please, but till they have Children, are servants to the Wife, their Children call her Mother, and do not put on Mourning for them. When the Man dies, the Wife and Children retain the command of the House, and if she dies, the Concubine succeeds; Widdows may marry again, but are more esteem'd if they do not. In choosing Wives they have respect to good qualities, but for Concubines, beauty or good humour.

2. They cannot marry into the Fathers kindred, though many degrees removed, nor with any of the surname, for fear of

H h

kindred,

kindred, but may with the Mothers, if not near related. Maids seldom marry with Widdowers; there are Matchmakers: The Bridegroom sees not the Bride till she is brought home to him, nor knows her name till made sure; Portions are not used, nor does the Husband buy the Wife, as has been falsely reported of them. On the Wedding Day the Brides goods are carryed in procession, and she at the end of it in a Chair, lock'd up, and the key sent before to the Bridegrooms Mother, for he goes on Horseback well attended to fetch her, if by Night, they carry many Lanterns on long Poles, the Inheritance is divided between the Male issue without respect to those by the lawful Wife above the others, yet there are some noble Families where the eldest inherits.

3. The Funerals of the *Chineses* are very costly, they bury all in Coffins, according to every ones ability in value, some cost 1000 Ducats, the Coffins are made of thick planks, varnished with *Charam*, and adorned with gilding, unless some that are made of pretious Wood; most of them keep their Coffins by them in the House.

4. No body is buryed within the Cities; without there are sumptuous Temples for their use, with Country Houses about them in places appointed by their Astrologers, the Tombs are covered with polished Stones, and Beasts carved before them. especially the noble ones, as Elephants and Lions, and elegant Epitaphs upon them. Where ever a Man dies, he must be carryed to his own place

place of burial: When one is given over, they carry him into an outward room to die on a pallet Bed, but some that are of great quality die in their Alcoves. The Son as raving with grief, pulls down the curtains upon the Dead body, then it is put into the Coffin with the robes of his dignity, and so closed, that no ill smell can come out. It is laid in a great room hung with Mourning and a Picture of the Dead Man, the Children sit round upon the straw and in Mourning, the Women are weeping behind Curtains, many Ceremonies are used while the Corps lies there.

5. The Coffin lies sometimes 2 Years in the House for want of Money; the Funeral Pomp is thus, First, there are carryed great statues of Men and Beasts made of painted Pastboard, Pyramids, and other things in triumphal Chariots, adorned and curiously wrought with Silk; if it be a Person of Quality, all those things are burnt when the Coffin is interred, but the common sort only hire them; after this follow *Bonzos* singing and playing on Musick, then other *Bonzos* who never cut Hair nor beard, and live single in communities; these also play on several sorts of Instruments, next another sect of *Bonzos*, who cut their Hair, praying; after them the friends and relations, then Sons and Grandsons in deep Mourning, and barefooted, with little Truncheons about half a yard long in their hands, on which they lean so, that their Heads hang down near the ground; next them

comes the Coffin on a thing so big, it is carryed by 50 Men, with a curious Pall over it, and about it many Lanthorns on Poles; the last is a multitude of Women in Chairs, who are heard to cry.

6. The Mourning is of such course Hemp, it makes the Men look monstrous, Sons for their Fathers wear it 3 Years, and in all that time sit not on Chairs, but little wooden stools, nor dine on a Table, touch Flesh, drink Wine, lie on Bedsteads, go to Feasts, go abroad unless in a close Chair, go to examinations, nor can officiate any publick Employ, and finally (they say) they abstain from Women; Mourning for a Wife lasts a Year, there are for relations of 5 and of 3 Months, and for friends of 3 Days. Every Town has a publick place of buryal for the Poor, some save the trouble, burning the Dead and burying the Ashes; these in the Province of *Suchue* are put into pots close stopped and thrown into Rivers.

7. The Funeral of the Queen Mother in the Year 1614, was very magnificent; to omit the Mourning and lesser circumstances. The King with his own hand strewed on the body, Pearls to the value of 70000 Crowns, and laid on the sides of it 50 bars of Gold, and 50 of Silver; all Persons of quality of both Sexes came to worship her; all Magistrates were ordered to their Tribunals, and to fast 3 Days; the Officers of the Revenue to provide wax perfumes, Images and other necessaries to be burnt, the expence in only these small things amounted to

30000 Ducats; the Royal Colledge was commanded to write Poems fit for that occasion, 1000 Men were posted at each of the nine Gates of the City, thence to the place of buryal, which was 12 miles, a lane of Soldiers to be made, 3000 men carryed the Coffin, 1000 accompanied it, 40000 guarded the buryal place, while the Ceremony lasted, the ways were repaired and railed in, that no body might cross them; at every 20 paces was laid a basket of yellow Earth to be spread about when the Coffin went by; many Tents were set up to rest by the way, and provisions for all that attendance that, amounted to 80000.

8. After many Ceremonies, the Coffin was placed on a Triumphal Chariot with many lights and perfumes; the King accompanied it to the 8th Gate of the Pallace, great was the order and silence observed, the journey was so Ceremonious, it lasted 3 Days. At last the Coffin was removed to a more costly Chariot, they sacrificed a Bull, Aromatick Wine, Perfumes, and many Garments to the Earth, imploring its tutelar Spirits to receive the dead body graciously. The Ceremonies lasted long, the King favoured all that assisted at them, eased the Kingdom of Taxes, set open the prisons, all as an Oblation of filial Love.

9. The *Chineses* follow 3 sects which they endeavour to reconcile; the 2 first natural, the third Idolatrous. The first of the 2 followed by the Lawyers is Antient, adores no Idols, ownes a superior Power, that can punish

nish and reward, but allows it no Temples, Sacrifice, Prayers, or Ministers, speak honourably of it as of a Divine Being, attribute nothing indecent to it, but being blind in their Faith, worship Heaven, Earth, and Man. Only in the two Courts, there are Temples dedicated to Heaven and Earth, where the King in Person sacrifices, and in his absence the Masters of the Rites; in all Cities there are Temples of the tutelar Spirits, where the *Mandarines* sacrifice, as they do to the Spirits of Rivers, Mountains, and 4 parts of the World. There are also Temples of famous Men, and publick benefactors in which are their Images; they ask nothing for the next life, but happiness in this, in fine, all tends to the Government, Concord Plenty, and Exercise of Virtue.

10. The second Sect is of the *Tançus*, the Author of it *Lautu*, a Philosopher who they say was 80 Years in his Mothers Womb, and lived in the time of *Comfusius*; this Sect has many followers, who live together, do not marry, let their Hair grow, wear ordinary Cloaths, only instead of a Cap they wear a small Crown which holds the knot of their Hair at the top. They own one great God, and others lesser but all Corporeal, allow of Heaven and Hell, the Felicity with the body, and even in this World; they feign, that through certain exercises, Men become young again; they say and believe any thing that comes into their fancy, they have Musick and good Instruments, and are therefore called to Funerals

rals and Sacrifices; they pretend to Sorcery, and promise Rain, which always fails to their shame.

11. They also pretend to lay Devils that haunt Houses, and are as successful as in the other; their chief study is a quiet and long Life, but more for the long, which they endeavour to purchase at any rate.

12. The third Sect, (as its Author) is called *Xaca*, he is said to be son of *Maga*, and a dream, for that she dreamed she conceived looking upon a white Elephant, was delivered of him through her side, and died immediatly. *Xaca* did penance for this misfortune on the snowy Mountain, and had there in 12 Years 4 Masters, became learned in the Science of the first causes, and had many Disciples who spread his Sect through all *Asia*. This Doctrine was brought into *China* about the Year of Grace 63, at the instance of the Emperor *Hamin*; the followers of this Opinion once amounted to three Millions, now they are but few.

13. Their Priests wear neither Hair nor beard, adore Idols, believe there is Reward and punishment in the next Life, and live in community 500 together; they are called to Sacrifices and Burials, and wear a sort of Copes, Eat no Flesh, Fish, Eggs, nor drink Wine, have large inclosures in Villages, and live under a superior; others live in Caves, Dens, and on Rocks, some do most rigid penance. Some lock themselves in narrow Houses, or rather boxes of Wood

full of spikes, the points inward, and live in these a Month without being able to lean for the spikes, or Eating; only Drinking *Cha*. But others affirm, they go in provided with lumps of Beef hard baked, which they dissolve in that hot liquor, there is another sort called Vagabonds, that are generally villanous fellows, guilty of all crimes especially Robberies. There are also Nuns of these Orders, their Heads shorn, they are but few, and not enclosed.

14. They believe the transmigration of Souls, that they descend and pass through nine Hells, then return to be Men at best, or else beasts like Men, or, what is worst of all Birds. The wisest of them direct all their study toward the *Prima causa*; after the last death, they believe there is neither reward nor punishment.

15. Of Transmigration, they believe if a Man was courteous, he becomes Man again, if subject to passion, a Lion; if cruel a Tiger; if unchast, a Hog; and if given to stealing, a Bird of Prey. From these proceed many other Sects; it is a Proverb of these three Sects, that the Lawyers govern the Kingdom, the *Taucus*, the Body, and the *Bonzos* the Heart.

16. In their Sacrifices are offered a beast like a Goat, Swine, Oxen, Cocks and Hens, all sorts of Fish, chiefly the Barble, Rice, Grain, and Wine. If the King sacrifice, the offering is divided among *Mandarines*, if great Men, among their Relations, if ordinary People, they Eat it among them.

All other things offered are burnt, as Silk, leaves of Gold and Silver, cut Paper, Candles, Perfumes, &c. there are no Priests appointed for this, every one does it for himself.

17. The *Chinese* are great admirers of Virtue, and have a sort of Commandments written in their Houses, much of the same nature as ours. There are strangers in *China*, who differ in point of belief, but not considerable. We have already mentioned those barbarous Inhabitants of a part of the Island *Hainan*, and others in the Mountains of *Quantung*, *Huchew*, and *Quiangsi*, these follow the Opinions of the rest of the Kingdom. In the Province of *Tunnan* there is a large tract of Land inhabited by a People differing in language and customs, having a King of their own, but tributary to *China*; In some parts there are Mahometans who have their Mosques, but ill observe their law. They marry their Sons to *Chinese* Women, but the Daughters only marry among themselves, because Women follow the opinion of the Husbands, and these never change. Their first coming into *China* was about 800 Years since being called in by a King to assist him in his Wars, and having served well, such as would, were allowed to settle there. There are Jews in the Province of *Honau*, and in the Metropolis of it, *Caifumfu*; they have a neat Synagogue, which shall be described hereafter. For want of Priests they are become very ignorant in their law, and many become Mahometans and Pagans.

## C H A P. XVII.

*Of the Original of the Kingdom of China,  
the Pallace and Government of it.*

1. **T**HERE is no certain account of the Original of this Kingdom, though their Histories begin at the Universal flood. The first three Kings are esteemed Saints; since that time the succession has been in 22 families; this now reigning, has continued 300 Years; the first of it did all that was possible to secure his line; he abolished all Royalties, forbid under severe Penalties, any of the blood Royal to have any hand in Government, and gave all the power to Lawyers who were to attain it by learning and virtue; the Monarchy continues as he left it.

2. They reckon Years from the beginning of the last Reign, the first actions of it are coining of Money, Crowning of the Queen, giving her and the Concubines names, offering great Sacrifices, giving Alms, treating Magistrates, setting open Prisons, turning the Ladies out of the Court, taking in new ones; all the states acknowledging the King, giving him a new name. He is stiled Emperor, the Courtiers call him Son of Heaven, and pay him a respect more than Human.

3. The reason the Ladies are turned out of Court is because many are old, and

the deceased may have had to do with the youag, and therefore the successor must not venture coming where he has been; beautiful Maids are sought for this purpose all over the Kingdom, and the Fathers strive to marry them off, that they may not be carried to Court.

4. The Women turned out, are all sold at the Pallace Gate to the best bidders, who take them for Wives; none but mean People buy them, their Faces and hands are covered, and the buyer sees them not till he carries them home, and takes them for better for worse.

5. There are about 3000 of these Women, who live in four Pallaces; one King tired with choosing, was drawn in a Chariot by Goats, and wherever they stopped, he took up, another chose by the Pictures of the beautifullest.

6. Formerly the Kings were more familiar with their subjects, and visited the Kingdom, giving publick Audience; this custom decayed by degrees, and the common way of doing business is by petition, but still the King gives some publick Audiences Monthly, and at the four seasons of the Year goes to sacrifice in a Temple without the City.

7. The first that introduced this retirement was *Vamlie* Grand-father to him now reigning, he did it because he was very gross, and would not lessen the Royal Majesty, since his time they are not so often seen as formerly. The Temple the King goes to at *Peking*,

is round, all of Marble, and a beautiful structure; that of *Nanking* is long, and has five Isles, born up by many columns, all plain except the Pedestals to show the rarity of them, for that being many in numbers, very high and thick, and all exactly alike, each is made of one Tree. To these Temples there are many Gates adorned with gilded Iron, in them many Altars with Images of the Sun, Moon, Planets, Spirits, Mountains, Rivers, and other things, to signify he, to whom they sacrifice there, is Lord of all. All the rest of the Year besides the times of these sacrifices and audiences, the King continues in his Pallace, and is seen by none but particular persons.

8. Some will judge the Kings of *China* live a confined Life, but their Pallace is a City consisting of many Pallaces, Orchards, and Gardens inclosed within a wall of a vast circumference; there is one Pallace for the King, Queen, and small Children, another for the Queen-Mother, another for the Sons that are marryed, another for the Queens, four for the Ladies, another called the cold Pallace for the old Men; Apartments for Eunuchs, Servants, Mathematicians, and Priests, an infinite number of Courts, or Cloisters, and lesser Apartments for all that live within, which are above 17000.

9. The structure of the Pallace is sumptuous, much after our manner adorned with curious Carving, Painting, and Gilding. A River runs through the Gardens which are adorned with artificial Mounts, and they covered

covered with delightful variety of birds and beasts. All is encompassed by two walls distant from each other, the circumference is about 4 Miles, that of *Nanking* about five; there are 4 Gates that look to the four quarters of the World, and have strong guards of Elephants and Soldiers, of these 3000 always do duty in one of the Courts.

10. Next to the Empress, are six Queens, who upon publick occasions, sit on as many Chairs somewhat below the two Imperial Thrones, then there are 30 that have particular honours allowed them; the last in degree are the Ladies. If the Empress has a Son, he takes place of all others, if not the eldest of any of these Women; there are 12000 Eunuchs, with their proper Officers. The President who answers our Secretary of State, may come to the King without asking leave, another who is supream Judge of the Eunuchs, is also Captain of the guard of 3000 Horse and 6000 Foot, the Eunuchs have all the best Employments, and are for the most part married.

11. In the Court most go on Horseback, few in Chairs, except the great Eunuchs. The Father of the King now reigning, had a most insolent favourite Eunuch, upon the Kings death he kill'd himself, but was drag'd and torn to pieces by the rabble, and the King seized his vast Treasure. Many Fathers geld their Sons to make them capable of this sort of preferment.

12. No Criminal can escape Justice in this vast Empire; their submission to the King  
is

is worthy Admiration ; every Body speaks to him on their Knees with the Ivory ( already mentioned ) before their Mouths. The King's Garments differ not from those of the Subjects in form, but in the costliness, and being embroidered with Dragons which none can wear but he, his Wives, and the Royal Family. It is not easie to know the real value of the King's Revenue, but it is reckoned above One hundred and fifty Millions of Ducats yearly ; Fifty-five are for the King's Expence, the Ninety-five for his Ministers, Examinations, Works and Presents.

---

## C H A P. XVIII.

*Of the Royal Marriages, Nobility, Counsels, and Government of China in Peace and War.*

I. **W**HEN there were many Kings in *China*, they married into those Royal Families. Now there is but one, and he is forbid by Law marrying out of the Kingdom ; he must of necessity marry a Subject. The Great Men will not give the King their Daughters, because they must be first searched, even in those Parts none but a Husband may see, and if not liked they are sent back: Therefore in the Choice, they have no regard to Birth, but Youth, Beauty,

Beauty, good Inclinations and Parts.

2 Such a one being found, two old Women strip her stark naked, and examine as well inward as outwardly the Parts not to be named, then put her into a heat to discover whether her Sweat be offensive. All things answering expectation, she is carried to Court in State, and there instructed in such manner as she may deserve to be called Mother of the Kingdom; for that is the Stile they give their Queens. Some of them have proved incomparable.

3. No such care is taken in marrying the Princes. The Princesses chuse one of Twelve Young Men of Eighteen Years of Age, placed so as they may be seen without seeing the Princesses: But the Husbands are treated so impertinently by the Princesses, that the Nobility avoid them; so that commonly their Husbands are no better born than the Kings Wives.

4. The Nobility were of another Nature when there were Titles and Lordships. Now all depends upon Learning, which makes any Mechanick a Gentleman; the want of it renders a Gentleman base. This is the reason their Nobility is not of long standing; for the Sons of Learned Men being left rich, do not study, and consequently have no Employments, and the Family perishes. Yet they have five sorts of Nobility. First, the Blood-royal thus preserved, the Prince inherits the Crown, the other Sons live in other Cities with Titles, but must not stir thence. Their eldest Sons succeed them,  
the

the others marry the best they can, and so their Children as long as the Family lasts. The Daughters (not looked upon in case of Inheritance) marry with Gentlemen. The second sort consist of those who have Titles, but no Dominions, and are inferior to some Magistrates. The third, the Magistrates. The fourth, the Students, who aim at Degrees. The fifth, those who live upon their Estates, or Merchandice, who if not very rich, are looked upon no better than the Commonalty.

5. The Government is in the Hands of six Councils, so highly respected, it is scarce credible. Each of them has a President and two Assessors, this is the next Dignity to that of the *Colaus*. So that a Viceroy of a Province is happy, if after his Government expires, he reaches to be one of those Assessors. Many more Officers belong to each of these Courts; the first is answerable to our Counsel of State, the second to that of War, the third is of Ceremonies, the fourth of the Revenue, the fifth of the publick Works, the sixth of Criminal Causes. There are also nine other Courts; the first like our Chancery, the second the high Stewards, the third the Master of the Horses, the fourth the Master of the Ceremonies of the Court; the fifth, of particular Rites; the sixth, of the Petitions given the King; the other three of lesser Matters. Every City has its own particular Council, each Metropolis of a Province five distinct Tribunals, Each Town has a private Court.

6. The

6. The great *Mandarines* are carried about Town in Chairs adorned with Ebony and Gold by four Men, with others by to relieve them; before the Chiefest go Men by Pairs with long Staves, always crying out, two others follow these with Tables, on which is writ the quality of the Person carried, after these go six scattering Bamboes, with which they use to bastinate Offenders and others with Fetters and Chains. Near the Chair a Man with a silk Umbrello three times as big as those we use, two just before the Chair carry a small Box with the Royal Seal, on one side a great Fan that shades all the Chair, behind go the Pages and other Attendance on Foot and Horseback.

7. When one of these goes by, all things are taken from the Windows, the Images of Funerals are lowred, the People stop on the sides of the Streets, there is no noise, and he passes without moving his Eyes. When he goes to any City, the ancient Men receive him at the Gate on their Knees. The King bestows Honour on Magistrates Mothers as they rise; and when they die, buries them with Pomp, and alligns them statefully Pallaces while living.

8. The Prisons are large, and commonly near to the Palaces of the *Mandarines* they belong to; they have no Grates to the Street; the Dungeons are terrible; the other Part is in Rows sustained by Pillars with Planks along for Beds, where every one lies with Fetters on his Hands and his Feet, as

it were in the Stocks; over them all run long Chains, so that they cannot turn. The lesser Criminals are more favourably dealt with, but all fare hard; for the Prisons serve to punish as well as to secure Men. The Prisoners have much to do at their Entrance with the Keepers about their Fees, for they pay none at going out.

9. Their Punishments differ not much from ours, but whipping is used before all other Penalties; the Lashes are given on the bare Buttocks and Thighs, as well to Women as Men, and that before the Tribunal, or in the Street when the Crime is done there; no Body values the Shame, but only the Smart. They also have several ways of Racking.

10. Military Science is very ancient among the *Chineses*. They had tedious Wars with their Neighbours, conquered the Island *Ceylon*, and subdued One hundred and Fourteen Kings. They always entertain a vast number of Souldiers; in *Nanking* there are Forty thousand, in *Peking* Eighty thousand, all over the Kingdom above a Million, but they are all Cowards. Yet of late Years they beat the *Japoneses* out of *Corea*, and the *Tartars* out of the Province of *Peking*. They use foolish Reviews, in which, like our Boys, they represent *Tartars* and *Chineses*, and the former are always beaten.

11. Gun-Powder is of most ancient standing among them; of it they make curious and costly Fire-works; they have some Cannon,

tion, but no Skill in the use of it, only shoot at random. Their most usual Arms are Lances, Arrows and Cutlases. There is a sort of Back and Breast Pieces Proof against Arrows. Their Civil Government is very just, because bad Ministers are severely punished, and the King hears Complaints against them. Thus much may suffice for the Affairs of *China*.

---

## C H A P. XIX.

*The Division of the Dominions the Portugueses do, or have possessed in those Parts, commonly comprehended under the general Name of India: Some Remarks on the Customs and Religion of those People, with some Account of the Christians of St. Thomas, and of the Island of Ceylon.*

1. **T**HE Portugues Dominions generally comprehended under the Name of *India*, though dispersed along the Coasts of *Asia* and *Africk* may well be divided into five Parts. The first containing the Islands of that vast Ocean, as those of *Maldivia*, the King whereof, being a Christian, with his Wife and Family resided at *Cochim*; that of *Ceylon*, in which we have the Town of

*Columbo*, and a Right to the Kingdoms of *Jafanapatan*, *Cota* and *Candea* by Donation from their natural Kings; the Island of *Manar*, with its Fort and Fishery of Pearl; Eastward, the Sovereignty of all that *Archipelago*, the *Molucca* Islands, and that of *Macao* on the Coast of *China*.

2. The Second Part lies from *Cape Corrientes* to the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, Peopled by *Moors* along the Coast, and the Inland by Idolatrous and Brutal *Cafres*.

3. The Third is divided from *Persia* by the *Persian Golph*, inhabited by *Moors* of different Opinions.

4. The Fourth contains the Kingdom of *Ormuz*, and neighbouring Parts that Trade thither, especially *Baharem*, so famed for the Fishery of Pearl, that draws all Mankind thither.

5. The Fifth is called *India* within and without *Ganges*. All that lies between *Indus* and *Ganges* which is above 550 Leagues along the Coast, is inhabited by two Nations, Pagans and Mahometans, who for above three Ages have been possessed of that Tract called *Indostan*.

6. In this Fifth Part is included the principal Part of the *Portugues* Patrimony. It begins at *Diu*, a City not inferior to many famous in *Europe*, and was once the Metropolis of *Cambaya*. Almost opposite to it is *Daman*, both which almost shut up the Mouth of the Bay of *Cambaya*, and extend their Command Twenty-four Leagues, in which

which space are many Villages that yield a considerable Revenue.

7. From the River of *Agacaim* to that of *Bombaim*, are Eight Leagues, and in that space the City *Bacaim* with its Forts and Villages, as *Açari*, *Manorá*, *Agacaim*, *Bandora*, *Tana*, *Caranja*, and opposite to it the Island *Salfete*, whose wonderful Structures prove it to have been the Metropolis of that Country and Court of Princes. The Dominions of *Cambaya* once extended thither. The next is *Chaul*, a Place of Importance. Then the Capital of our Empire, that is the Island *Goemante*, which signifies, *Happy Land*, corruptly called *Goa*; and *Trissuari* (signifying Thirty Villages, for so many it contains) which on the Continent commands the Lands of *Salfete* and *Bardes*. There follow on the Coast of *Camaran* towards Cape *Comori*, the Towns of *Onor*, *Braçalor* and *Mangalor*; then in *Malabar*, *Cananor*, *Cranganor*, *Coulam*, and the chief Port of our Fleets *Cochim*. Turning the Cape, appears the Pearl Fishery, and above it the Cities *Negapatan*, *St. Thomas* and other Towns if not Subject to, at least Inhabited and defended by *Portugueses*.

8. The Exterior *India* begins at the River *Ganges*, and reaches to *China* and *Cambodia*, and is terminated by the River *Mecom*. It is inhabited by Heathens worse, if possible, than the others. Here the *Portugueses* have the rich City of *Malaca*, Metropolis of that Kingdom, and the greatest

Place of Trade of all those *Eastern* Provinces.

9. Something has been already said of the Manners of all these People, we will add somewhat in general of *India*, whereof much relates to the greatest Part of *Asia*. Those Heathens have a Book they believe in, and esteem as we do the Holy Scripture. It is writ in Verse, (as they say that understand it) pleasing and ingenious, but it seems strange to us there should be any Harmony in Verses composed of Seventy-five Syllables, for so many an Author say they contain.

10. They believe in one God Creator of all Things, yet allow other increated Gods; that there is Heaven and Hell, and that the Souls of such as die in Sin go into Beasts, and stay there till being purged, they go to Eternal Rest. They esteem Cows as properest for this Transmigration. When one is dying, they bring one to him, and put the Tail into his Hand, that when his Soul departs, it may be near the Door it is to enter at.

11. They allow no Free Will; and some are of Opinion, That the Souls return from Hell into other Bodies till they merit Heaven; and that there is an indifferent Place without Reward or Punishment for such as live indifferently. The Sins they esteem most hainous, are Murder, Theft, Drinking of Wine, taking away another Man's Wife. The First is wiped off with Pilgrimages; the second with Alms; the third with

with Fasting; and the fourth with Sacrifices; some are of Men, the greatest of Cows. Some will lie down under the Wheels of the heavy Carts of their Idols, which crush them to peices. Others wear Irons with Spikes that run into them. Others hang themselves on a Hook, and there sing Verses to their Idols.

12. They maintain Hospitals, where they look after sick Birds and Beasts, and send Men abroad to bring them in, but have no Compassion for Men, saying, Those Afflictions are sent them for their Sins. There are Men employed to buy Birds or other Creatures, only to restore them to their Liberty. They believe God has five Regents that govern the World, and every one of them a Wife, those are called *Xadaxivam*, *Rudra*, *Maescura*, *Visnu*, and *Brahema*; the Wives, *Humani*, *Parvadi*, *Maenomadi*, *Lacami*, and *Exarasvadi*. The first governs the first Heaven, where are all the Planets; the second, the Fire; the third, the Air; the fourth, the Water; the fifth, the Earth. *Brahema*, *Visnu* and *Rudra* are the Chief, and form a Body with three Heads, called *Mahamurte*, signifying, the three Chiefs. Hence it is inferred, the *Indians* had some knowledge, though imperfect, of the Blessed Trinity.

13. They are much addicted to Witchcraft and Superstition, and believe there are Fourteen Worlds, and that this we live in is an Image of that in Heaven. Their se-

veral Families touch not one another, nor eat together. Tradesmen cannot marry out of their own Trade. The most renowned Families among them are the *Raja's*, an ingenious People that rather lose their Lives than their Arms in Battle, The *Bramenes*, who contend for Precedence with the *Raja's*. The *Chatines*, which are the richest Merchants. The *Balalas*, or Country People, held in such esteem, that Kings marry their Daughters to them, saying, *They are the Publick Substance*. From these four Roots spring One hundred ninety-six Branches divided into *Valangas*, that is, of the Right-hand, and *Elanges* of the Left, but none of these are honoured as the other four.

14. Let us say somewhat of the Christians of *St. Thomas*. Four Leagues from *Cochin*, on the *Malabar* Coast, is the City *Cranaganor*, almost encompassed by a River, inhabited by *Christians*, *Gentiles*, *Mahometans* and *Jews*. The whole Kingdom takes Name from the City; it has a great Trade, is frequented by Merchants from *Siria*, *Egypt*, *Persia* and *Arabia*, by reason of the plenty of Pepper brought thither. At the arrival of the *Portugueses* in *India*, it was governed in the form of a Commonwealth, but subject to *Zamori*, whom they cast off, seeing him weakned by our Arms.

15. Their Heathen Rites are the same with those of the other *Malabars*. The Christians called of *St. Thomas*, who inhabit from this City to *Coromandel* and *Melispur*, the place

place where that Apostle was buried, have Churches like ours in *Europe*; on the Altars and Walls Crosses painted, but no other Images; no Bells; the People meet on *Sundays*, to hear Sermons, and other Service. Their head Bishop resides in *Chaldea*, has twelve Cardinals, two Patriarchs, Archbishops, Bishops, and other Prelates and Fathers.

16. The Priests are shorn in the form of a Cross, they consecrate leavened Bread, and Wine made of Rasins for want of other, Baptize after Forty Days, unless there be danger of Death; instead of extream Unction the Priests bless the Sick, use Holy Water, bury after our manner; the Relations and Friends eat together eight Days while the Ceremonies last. If there be no Will the next of Kin inherits; the Widows recover their Portion, but forfeit it if they Marry within a Year.

17. They have all our Holy Scripture in Hebrew and *Caldaick* with Expositions, which they Read in Schools; their Divines interpret it well, chiefly the Prophets, which they study most. They observe the same Lent and Advent as we do. On the Eve of the Resurrection they neither eat nor drink, and keep that Day with great Solemnity; as also the *Sunday of Passor Bonus*, in remembrance that on that Day *St. Thomas* felt our Saviour's side; they observe our very Festivals, as *Sundays*, the *Festivals of our Lord, Lady and Apostles*, and have the same *Bissextile* or  
Leap

*Leap Year* as the *Latines*. Both they and the *Gentiles* keep the Feast of the Apostle on the first Day of *June*. There are Monasteries of Monks and Nuns cloathed in black, and religiously observe their Rules. The Priests observe conjugal Chastity, and marry not a second time. There is no Divorce allowed between Man and Wife.

18. In the Year 1544 came to *Cochim*, *Jacob* a *Caldean* Bishop of *Cranganor*, where being dangerously sick, he sent for the Treasurer *Peter de Sequeyra*, and told him, *Necessity* had obliged him to pawn two Copper-Plates with Characters engraven on them, which were Original Grants and Privileges bestowed on the Apostle *St. Thomas* by the Sovereigns of those Countries, when he Preached there; that he desired him to release them, lest they should be lost if he died, for if he lived he would take them out himself. This Prelate found the only way to lose them, in trusting the *Portugueses*; for *Sequeyra* paid the Two hundred Royals they were pawned for, put them into the Treasury, and they were never more heard of.

19. The Governor *Martin Alfonso de Sousa*, after long search for some Body that could understand them, had found a retired Jew on the Mountain, who said they were writ in the *Caldean*, *Malabar* and *Arabian* Languages, and the Substance of them was, That the Prince then Reigning of his free Gift granted to *Thomas* at *Cranganor*, such a Parcel of Ground to build a Church; for the

the Maintenance whereof he assigned the Fifths of Merchandize.

20. Very much might be said of the Island *Ceylon*, but I will only add a little to what is already said. About Five hundred Years before Christ, a Heathen was King of *Tenacarii*, and lorded it over a great part of the *East*. He banished his Son and Heir *Vigia Raja* for his depraved wicked Life. The young Man took Ship with 700 Men like himself, and put into the Port of *Preature*, between *Triquilimale* & *Iafanapatan* in the Island *Ceylon*, then not inhabited, but abounding in delightful Rivers, Springs, Woods, Fruit-trees, and lighty Birds and Beads; whence the new Planters gave it the name of *Lancoao*, which signifies Paradise, and is still held the delight of all the *East*.

21. The first Town they built was *Montota* opposite to *Manar*, whence they traded with *Cholca Raja*, the nearest King on the Continent; he knowing who this Prince was, gave him his Daughter to Wife, and Women for his Companions, with them he sent Labourers and Workmen to forward that Plantation; the Prince when he saw his Power increase, stiled himself Emperor of the Island. Strangers call these People *Galar*, that is banished Men, because their Original was such.

22. *Vigia Raja* dying without Children, left the Crown to his Brother, in whose line it continued 900 Years, the fruitfulness of the Island and fame of its excellent Cinnamon,

mon, drew thither the *Chineses*, who marrying with the *Galas*, brought another race which to this day are called *Chingalas*, grown very powerful, and most fit for Courtiers, being most subtle and false.

23. The first line being extinct, the Kingdom fell to *Dambadine Pandar Pracura Mahago*, who was treacherously taken by the *Chineses*, after restored, and then slain by *Alagexere*, who in his absence had usurped the Crown; this usurper held it 1 Years, and dying without Issue, and two Sons of *Dambadine*, who were fled for fear of the Tyrant, being found the eldest succeeded, his Name was *Maha Pracura Mahago*, he gave to his Brother the Dominion of the four *Corlas*, and settled his Court at *Cota*, which he built to that effect, by a Daughter married to *Cholca Raja* of the antient blood Royal, he had a Grandson who succeeded him. Afterwards the line failing *Quetz Permal* King of *Isfanapatan*, inherited and called himself *Bocnegaboa*, that is, King by force of Arms, for that he had overcome his Brother, King of the *Corlas*.

24. His Son *Caypura Pandar* succeeded him, and the King of the *Corlas* having killed him, possessed himself of the Crown, and took the name of *Jayira, Procura Magabo*; these two Brothers were of the blood Royal, and the King *Maha Procura* had given them those two Crowns; after the Tyrant, Reigned his Son *Drama Procura Magabo* then living when *Vasco de Gama* discovered *India*; afterwards

terwards about the Year 1500, that Empire was divided between three Brothers, into so many Kingdoms. *Boeneçababo Pandar* had *Cota*; *Reigam Pandar* had *Reigam*; and *Maduze Pandar* had *Ceitavaca*.

25. In the Country of *Dinavaca* which is the Center of this Island rises that vast high Mountain called *Pico de Adam*, because some believed our first Father lived there, and that the print of a foot still seen upon a stone on the top of it, is his; the Natives call it *Amala Saripadi*, that is the Mountain of the footstep. Some Springs running down it, at the bottom form a Rivulet, where Pilgrims wash, and believe it purifies them. The stone on the top is like a Tombstone, the print of the foot seems not artificial, but as if it had been made in the same nature as when one treads in Clay, which makes it be looked upon as miraculous.

26. The Pilgrims of all sorts who come from as far as *Persia* and *China*, being washed, go up to the top, near which hangs a bell which they strike and take the sounding of it as a sign of their being purified, as if any bell being struck, would not sound. The opinion of the Natives is, that *Dramia Raja* Son of an ancient King of that Island, doing F. nance in that Mountain with many Disciples, when he was about to depart at their instance, left that print there as a Memorial; therefore they respect it as a relict of a Saint, and generally call him *Budam*, that is *Wiscen an*.

27. Some

27. Some believe this Saint was *Josaphat*, but it is more likely it was *St. Thomas*, who has left many Memorials in the East, and in the West, in *Brasil* and in *Paraguay*. The natural Woods in this Island are like the curious Orchards and Gardens in *Europe*, and produce Citrons, Lemmons, and sundry sorts of delicious fruits; it abounds in Cinnamon, Ginger, Cordamom, Sugar, Canes, Honey, and Hemp; of Metals, Iron, whereof they make the best Firelocks of all the East; of precious Stones, Rubies, Zafires, Cats-eyes, Topaces, Chrisolites, Amethysts, and Berillus; of valuable beasts, Civet-Cats, and the noblest of the Elephants of all the East; there are excellent Rivers abounding with variety of Fish. All round it are Ports fit for the largest Ships,

28. In all parts of *India* there are Prodigious Wizards. When *Vasco de Gama* sailed upon that discovery, some of them at *Calicut*, showed other People in basons of Water, the three Ships he had with him. When *D. Francis de Almeyda* the first Viceroy of *India*, was coming for *Portugal*; some Witches at *Cochim* told him, he should not pass the Cape of *Good Hope*, and there he was buried. At *Mascate* there are such Sorcerors, that they Eat a thing inwardly, only fixing their Eyes upon it; with their sight draw the entrails of any Human body, and so kill many. One of these fixing his Eyes on a *Bateca*, or Water-Mellon, sucked out all the inside, it being cut open to try  
the

the experiment, was found hollow, and he the more to satisfy the beholders, vomitted it up.

29. To conclude the description of these parts of *Assa*, let us say something of the most exquisite production of Nature it affords; doubtless the most wonderful thing in the World is, a Tree there growing, of which alone are built Ships and Houses, the one loaded, the other stored with all things necessary for Human Life, and on it alone, Men may feed and cloath themselves; having seen no particular account hereof, I will be the more plain in describing it. The Tree is about 50 foot high, on the top grow the leaves like that of a Palm or Date-tree in shape, but more large and beautiful, it bears about 50 of them, and among them about 12 clusters, each containing about 50 of those we call *Cocos*, as big as good Pumpkins, so that one Tree sometimes produces 600, never less than 400 of them.

30. First on the outside is a thick tough shell or rhine, as is over the Walnut-shell, though not of that nature, then a hard shell, and within it a sweet kernel; that outward rhine is spun, and of it all manner of tackle and cordage is made, of the inward shell *Pe* engers, Salts, Flasks, Spoons, and other curiosities, besides being burnt, it is a pleasant sort of Cole, to this shell sticks the kernel which is hollow, white as Snow, about an inch thick, juycy and sweet as Almonds, it serves to season several things, as Milk  
and

and Sugar with us, and Eaten alone, is pleasant, strengthening, but hard of digestion; within that hollow is about half a pint of most pleasant Water, which at certain times congeals and forms a substance like an Apple, (called by the *Indians Pango*) of a delightful taste, as is the conserve of Sugar, of the same Tree, and this same is the seed that produces the Tree.

31. To make Wine, Sugar, Vinegar, and other things of this *Coco*, they suffer not the cluster to grow, but bind the branch hard, when green, with cords made of the same Tree, cut the end of the branch, and put it into a Vessel, into which it bleeds like a Vine. This liquor is called *Sura* and a great quantity of it is gathered; to make Wine they distil it, some is stronger, some weaker, as our Brandy, the hottest they call *Orraca* (and we corruptly *Rack*) to sweeten and colour it, they put in Raisins, and it is a plentiful and pretious Commodity in all that part of *Asia*; Vinegar is made only by leaving that liquor some Days in Earthen Vessels; Sugar by boyling it to a consistence, with this Sugar they make good preserves, one of the kernel of the same *Coco* grated.

32. Oyl is made of the *Coco's* prepared and ground; it serves not only to burn, but to Eat, dress Wounds, cure Colds, and purge, it is a considerable commodity; that mass of *Coco* which has been so pressed or ground, is excellent food for Cattle; so that of the Wood, Leaves and Shells of this Tree

is made the Ship, Sails and Rigging, without any other material, and of the Fruit, Liquors and Preserves are made to load it: Of the Leaves are also made Brooms and Baskets; of the Wood, Darts and Lances not much inferior to Iron; it also bears a sort of Down that serves instead of Tinder. When any of these Trees is cut down, they take off the Head, called *Palmito*, which is of an excellent taste, like to that of our Cardoons. It is therefore not to be admired, that the *Indians* take much pains to raise a Wood of these Trees, and are so much troubled to have them destroyed in time of War.

## C H A P. XX.

*Of the Memory there is of the Preaching the Gospel of Christ in all Asia and its Islands, particularly by the Apostle Saint Thomas in those Parts mentioned in this History, and of the Extirpation and Reparation of the same.*

1. **F**OR the better understanding of what follows, it is necessary to run over the Position of these Countries. Off from the Island *Zocorora* appears on the Coast of *Africk* the Empire of *Ethiopia*, divided on the East from *Asia* by the *Red Sea*, beginning

ning on the *North* at the City *Suanquem*, and ending on the *South* almost at the Mouth of the *Red Sea*. Between that Sea and the *Persian Golph* lies that part of *Arabia*, which is most Fruitful and best Peopled. Ten Leagues from this Shore, and three from that of *Persia*, just within the Mouth of the Gulph, is the Island *Gerum*, and in it the City *Ormuz*, a Kingdom more famous for its Trade than extent. From thence runs along the Coast of *Caramania* subject to *Persia* for the space of Two hundred Leagues, to the City *Diul* seated on the Westernmost Mouth of *Indus*, which River makes one of the sides of that Continent which is properly called *India*, and is in the form of a Lozenge.

2. Of its most distant Angles, the one lies *North* between the Fountains of *Indus* and *Ganges* on Mount *Imaus*; the other *South*, and is the famous Cape *Comori*, the distance between these two Angles is Four hundred Leagues. The other two Angles which lie *East* and *West*, at Three hundred Leagues interval reach the Mouths of the same two Rivers. This vast Continent, called by the Natives *Indostan*, is divided into several Kingdoms and Dominions, as are (to begin at the Mouth of *Indus* where we left off) the Kingdoms of *Gurzarate* or *Cambaya*, *Deccan*, *Bisnagar*; those of *Malabar*, viz. *Canor*, *Calicut*, *Cranganor*, *Cochin*, *Porcà*, *Coulam* and *Travancor*, reaching to the Point of the Cape in 7 deg. 40 min. of N. Lat. From  
the

the Cape, the Coast runs again toward the North till the Mouth of *Ganges*, where taking a great round it makes the Bay of *Bengala*, and runs again towards the South, to the other famous Cape of *Cingapura*, the Southernmost of all the Eastern Continent. Opposite to Cape *Comori* is the Island *Ceylon*, that of *Sumatra* to *Cingapura*: But beginning at Cape *Comori*, Two hundred Leagues of the Coast belong to the Kingdom of *Narsinga*, or *Bisnagar*, the rest to those of *Orissa*, *Bengala*, *Pegu* and *Siam*. Beyond *Cingapura* are those of *Cambodia*, *Tsiompa*, *Cochinchina*, and the *Great China*.

3. The Islands of this great *Archipelago* are innumerable: But not to mention those opposite to *Indostan*, there are *Java*, *Timor*, *Borneo*, *Banda*, the *Molucos*, *Celebes*, *Mazacar*, *Sunda*, *Lequia*, and those of *Japan*, without speaking of many more of Note. It is certain the Gospel was in the time of the Apostles Preached in many of these Provinces, if not in all. For the *Ethiopians* value themselves upon receiving it from a Servant of Queen *Candace* baptized by Saint *Philip*, and from the Evangelist *St. Matthew*. There is no doubt but *Arabia* and *Persia* flourished with many Saints and Martyrs, and the People of *Bazora*, where *Tigris* and *Euphrates* fall into the Sea, have a Tradition that the beloved Disciple preached to them. But the most singular Apostle of those Parts of *Asia* was *St. Thomas*, the memory of whom is still preserved in *Cranganor*, *Conlam*, and

*Meliaspor*, with evident Testimonies that he travelled over all those Countries, even as far as *China*, whence he returned to the Kingdom of *Coromandell*, where he ended his Preaching with his Life.

4. Christianity being now utterly corrupt in some Parts of *Asia*, and quite lost in others, the *Portugues* Arms, accompanied by Apostolical Ministers, went thither to restore it. The first who Baptized in that Part of *Asia* was *F. Peter de Cubillones* of the Holy Order of the Blessed Trinity, and Confessor to the first Discoverer, *Vasco de Gama*.

5. The most successful Labourers after him were in *India* the Vicar *Michael Vaz*, and *James de Borba*, and other Religious of the Order of *St. Francis*. In the *Molucco* Islands, Captain *Francis de Castro*, who converted five Kings in the Island *Mazascar*. Captain *Antony de Payva*, who in the same Island Baptized two Kings and their Courts in one Day. Others are named in their proper Places in this History, and will doubtless be Recorded in the Book of Life.

6. This was the Estate of Christianity in *Asia*, when its new Apostle *St. Francis Xavierius*, of the Society of *Jesus* came thither. He travelled more than is credible, and did more than human Works. He was born of a Noble Family at *Pamplna* in *Navarre* in the Year 1497, studied and taught Philosophy and Divinity at *Paris*, whence he went Companion to *St. Ignatius Loyola*, followed

lowed his Rule, and received Holy Orders at *Venice*.

7. He came to *Portugal* in order to pass into *India* in the Year 1540, and the Reign of King *John* the Third, who sent for him and a Companion from *Rome*. He had the Dignity of Apostolical Nuncio in the *East*; and during the Voyage, and in *India*, was called Holy Father. He Preached in the Island *Zocotora*, at *Goa* and *Travancor*, where he was persecuted. It cost him no less Pains to reclaim the *Portugueses*, debauched with the Riches of *Asia*, than to convert Infidels. In the Island *Ceylon* he Converted the King of *Candea*, went thence to the *Moluco's*, and gained many Souls. After several times traversing the Islands, *India*, and other Parts, he went to *Japan*, and, with the Prince's leave, Preached at *Cangoxima*, and suffered many Afflictions, then went to *Firando*, *Yamanguchi* and *Miaco*, where with great pains he planted the Faith. Then he returned to *Molsea*, after converting the King of *Bungo*, who soon after died a Christian, being called *Francis* in Baptism.

8. Next he prepared to go into *China*, and died at the Entrance of it in the Island *Sancam*, in the Fifty-fifth Year of his Age, and the Eleventh of his Preaching, having first foretold the Day of his Death, which was the second of *December* about midnight; His Body the Year following was translated to *Goa*. He had the Gift of Languages and Prophecy, and was Canonized by Pope *Gregory*

gory the 15th, in the Year 1622. He had many Disciples and Companions, who wrought and endured much, and were held in opinion of sanctity.

9. We have already spoke of the first entrance of Christianity into *Ethiopia*, *India*, *Japan*, *Persia*, and *Arabia*, and of its restoration by the *Portugueses*; now we will say somewhat relating to the same in *China*; there are still undeniable testimonies that *St. Thomas* spread the Evangelical Doctrine there, and though no footsteps of it appeared, the same had happened in all *India*, had not *Thomas* called *Cananeus* an *Armenian* Christian, about the Year 800 come to *Mogodover* or *Patana*, who renewing the Apostles Churches, and building others, resettled the Christian Religion, and gave occasion to the mistake (because both had the same name) in believing they were all the work of the former. The same happened in *China*, as shall be made appear; the time Christianity was forgot in both places, differs not much, for as it appears, *Thomas Cananeus* re-established it in *India* about the Year Eight hundred, so it is plain by what shall be said, that about the Year Seven hundred it began again to take footing in *China*.

10. Let us first speak of the antient and then of the modern testimonies. In the *Caldick* Books of the *Indian* Christians still remaining at *Cranganor*, and particularly in a breviary, there is a lesson to this purpose;

“ By *St. Thomas* the Errors of the Idolatry

“ of

“ of *India* were abolished; by *St. Thomas*  
“ the *Chineses* and *Ethiopiens* were convert-  
“ ed to the Truth; by *St. Thomas &c.* by  
“ *St. Thomas*, were spread in all *India*, the  
“ rays of the Doctrine of Life; by *St. Tho-*  
“ *mas* flew to the *Chineses* the Kingdom  
“ of Heaven. And again in an *Antiphon*, the  
“ *Indians*, *Chineses*, the *Persians* and *Islan-*  
“ *ders*, those of *Siria*, *Armenia*, *Grecia*, and  
“ *Romania*, in commemoration of *St. Thomas*,  
“ offer adoration to thy Holy Name. A-  
mong the *Islanders* may well be reckoned the  
*Japoneses*; in the summary of the Synodical  
Constitutions, and Chapter of those that  
are Canonical, there is a Canon of the Pa-  
triarch *Theodosius*, in which are these words,  
*So also the Bishops of the great Province, as are*  
*most of the Metropolitans of China.* When  
the *Portugueses* entered *India*, the Governor  
of the *Malabar* Mountains, called *Jacob*,  
stiled himself, Metropolitan of *India* and  
*China*; *Paulus Venetus* a true Historian in  
all points, that can now be proved, assures in  
his time, there were in *China* many Christians  
who had sumptuous Churches, and names  
the Cities in which they were. The Fa-  
thers of the Society of Jesus had an account  
of People who worshipped the Cross. The  
cause why the Christians and their Churches  
were quite extinct, and no footsteps of them  
remains, is that they having favoured the  
Tartar when he invaded *China* about Three  
hundred Years since, he being overcome by  
the *Chineses*, many of them were killed,  
the

the rest fled, and all that had been theirs was totally extirpated.

11. In the Year 1625, digging for a foundation near *Siganfu*, Metropolis of the Province of *Xensu*, there was found a flat stone above 9 spans in length, 4 in breadth, and one in thickness; one end of it goes off sharp like a Pyramid, on it is cut a Cross, the ends of it adorned with Flower de luces like that found in the Tomb of *St Thomas* the Apostle, about it are Clouds, and at the foot of it three lines, each containing three *Chiuese* Letters, all the superficies of the stone is full of those Characters, and the edges, only that on these are some *Sirian* Characters, containing the names of the Bishops then in being. The Governor of the Town set it up there, under an Arch within the inclosure of a Temple. The three first lines have these words, "A Monument in Praise and Eternal Memory, of the propogating the law of light; and Truth come from *Judea* into *Cbina*. Then over the rest of the writing is this Title; the Prologue made by the Priest of the Kingdom of *Judea* called *Quimeim*.

12. The Substance of the Inscription is this: "That the most Spiritual, Incomprehensible and Eternal is without beginning or end; That the beginning is three and one without having a beginning. Lord *Oiooyx*; That he formed the four Parts of the World in the figure of  
" a

“ a Cross; That he framed all Creatures  
“ and Man; That Man perverted from his  
“ Innocence, fell into the Snares of Satan;  
“ That hence sprang Three hundred sixty  
“ five Sects; That some assigned Divinity  
“ to Creatures, and others believed all was  
“ a meer nothing; That all was full of  
“ Errors and Confusion; That then the  
“ Messiah, concealing his Majesty by be-  
“ coming Man, appeared to the World;  
“ That an Angel coming to declare the My-  
“ stery to a Virgin, she brought forth the  
“ Holy; That a Star appeared, denoting  
“ his Birth, and those of the Kingdom of  
“ *Pozu* went to offer him Tribute, all sui-  
“ table to what the Twenty-four Saints had  
“ said; That he proposed to the World  
“ the most pure Law, and filled it with  
“ Light and Virtues, opening the way to  
“ Life, and shutting that of Death; That  
“ he overcame the dark Seat, and the Devil  
“ was destroyed, and Man made capable of  
“ ascending to the bright Seats; That at  
“ noon Day he ascended into Heaven, and  
“ there remained Twenty-seven Books of  
“ the Holy Scriptures; That he opened the  
“ Gate of Conversion by the Water that  
“ purifies; That his Ministers used the  
“ Holy Cross, and stayed not in one Coun-  
“ try, nor had Servants, nor looked for  
“ Riches; That they seven times offered  
“ Sacrifice of sweet Odor, wherewith they  
“ helped the living and dead; That every  
“ seven Days they offered and purified the  
“ Heart

“ Heart to receive the Holy Innocence ;  
 “ That no proper Name could be given to  
 “ the true Law, and for want of another they  
 “ called it, *The Law of Light* ; That in the  
 “ Year of *Chinquon Kieica*, there came from  
 “ *Judea* a Man of great Virtue, called *Olo-*  
 “ *puem*, with the true Doctrine ; That this  
 “ was received throughout all the Kingdom,  
 “ and Churches erected ; that afterwards  
 “ some change of Affairs happening, it  
 “ grew weak, but in the Time of the Great  
 “ *Tam*, the Holy Gospel returned to *China* ;  
 “ That in the Year of *Ximbie*, the Priests  
 “ *John* and *Paul* redressed all, and new  
 “ Churches were erected ; That in the  
 “ Reign of the Great *Tam*, the second Year  
 “ *Kienchum*, on the seventh day of the Month  
 “ of *Autumn*, this Stone was set up, *Kingim*  
 “ Governor of the Church of *China* being  
 “ Bishop.

13. By this venerable Piece of Antiquity  
 it appears, that the Christian Faith was  
 planted in *China* about the Year Six hun-  
 dred thirty-one. From it also may be inferr'd,  
 that *St. Thomas* first Preached there, but that  
 Christianity being almost forgot, those Priests  
 of *Judea* and Kings of *China* restored it, as  
 has been shown it happened in *India*. So  
 that what the *Portugueses*, assisted by other  
*European* Religious Men now perform, is a  
 second Re-establishment of the Faith.

14. About the Year 1543, *Fernan Men-*  
*dez Pinto* had this following Information in  
*China*. He was Travelling from the City  
*Mindoo*

*Mindoo* to that of *Peking*; and seeing by the way the Ruins of another, was informed, that about Two hundred Years before it was a most flourishing Place. That a Holy Man coming thither raised some dead to life, and Preached of Jesus Christ, and his Vicar upon Earth; that the Heathen Priests designing to burn him, he quenched the fire, making the sign of the Cross over it; that they stoned him to Death, and being thrown into a River, the Stream stood still five days, the holy Body being born upon the Superficies all the time; that this occasioned the Conversion of many People, of which there was a great number in that Province. Further upon a Mountain was a Stone Cross, which this Writer saw some People Worship, pronouncing these Words: *Christ Jesus; Mary conceived him being a Virgin, brought him forth a Virgin, and remained a Virgin.* These were Disciples descended from a Weaver, called *John*, in whose House that Holy Martyr was entertained. They preserve a Book of his Life, which says his Name was *Matthew Escandel*, by Birth an *Hungarian*, and had been an Heremite on Mount *Sinai*. That History related, that he being taken out of the River and buried nine days after, the City was swallowed up with Four thousand *Bonzes*, who only durst stay in it, the People having abandoned it, by reason of the Earthquakes that happened before.

15. At the same time the same Writer found in the Cities *Sampitay* and *Quiangsi*  
of

of *Cbina*, many Christians who had been converted Twenty-five Years before, which was Sixty Years before the Jesuits entered *Cbina*, which is now One hundred and fourteen Years since. And this is the Reason those Fathers found some Monuments of Christianity, but so obscure that little could be made out by them.

16. The same *Fernand Mendez* relates, That in the City *Timplan*, the Court of the Emperor of *Caminam*, a Borderer on *Cbina*, he found most ancient Monuments of the Christian Faith, and some account of the Holy Scripture. Those People said,  
 “ That the Creation of the World was the  
 “ work of the Will of the Creator; That  
 “ he was not visible, nor to be felt; That  
 “ there were Eighty-two thousand Moons  
 “ since the Earth was separated from the  
 “ Water; That on Earth God had crea-  
 “ ted a most delightful Garden, and pla-  
 “ ced therein the first Man called *Adda*,  
 “ and his Wife *Baragom*: That he forbid  
 “ them the Fruit of the Tree *Hisaforam*,  
 “ and they transgressing this Command, all  
 “ Men became liable to the Punishment of  
 “ that Guilt: That the Man broke the  
 “ Precept, being deceived by the Woman,  
 “ and she by the Serpent *Lupantoo*: That  
 “ for this Disobedience they were cast out  
 “ of that delightful Place: That by reason  
 “ of the Sinfulness of Man, God had drown-  
 “ ed the World; That only one just Man  
 “ with his Family escaped in a Wooden  
 “ House,

“ House, and by them Mankind was resto-  
“ red: That God would punish the Wicked,  
“ and reward the Good: That one *John*,  
“ a Disciple of *Thomas Modeliar*, (a Servant  
“ of God, whom the Citizens of *Digun*  
“ killed, because he preached that God be-  
“ came Man, and suffered Death for the  
“ Sins of Men) had Preached the same in  
“ that Country, and lost his Life for so  
“ doing. *Thomas Modeliar* is the Apostle  
St. *Thomas*. The People of *Calaminam* own  
the Blessed Trinity; when they Sneeze they  
say some Words that declare it, and they  
make the sign of the Cross.”

17. The last Testimony was discovered  
in the Year 1635, but the thing in it self is  
at least as antient as the Stone already spo-  
ken of. - Some Heathens passing through a  
Street in a Village near the City *Civencheu*  
of the Province of *Fokien*, by Night saw  
Lights on some Stones that lay there, and  
turning them up, found on that part which  
had lain next the Ground Crosses carved.  
A Jesuit examining into it, caused the Stone  
on which the greatest Light appeared to be  
fixed in a decent place, as a Monument of  
the Miracle, and of our Religion in those  
Parts.

18. We shall speak of what was done by  
the Religious of the Society of Jesus in order  
to the Reparation of Christianity in this  
Empire in the proper place, and Third  
Tome of this our *Asia*. They entred upon  
this undertaking in the Year 1579, which  
was

was the the last under our *Portugues* Princes who yet expired not without this Glory. In the Year 1583, they Founded the first Church at *Xauking*. The rest of their proceedings we refer to the Third Tome, beginning under the *Spanish* Monarchs, as this has ended with the *Portugueses*.



*The End of the Second Tome.*

